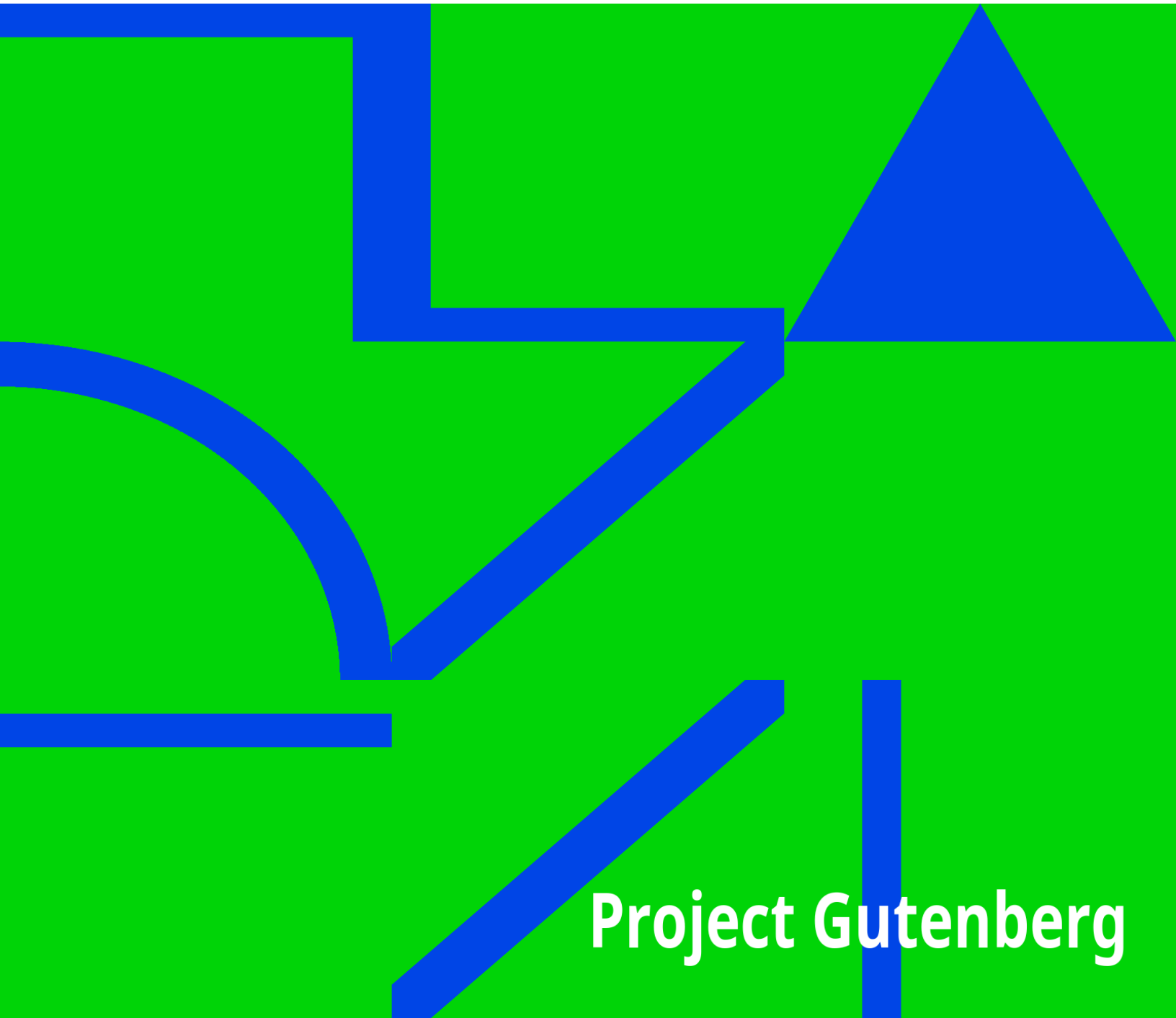
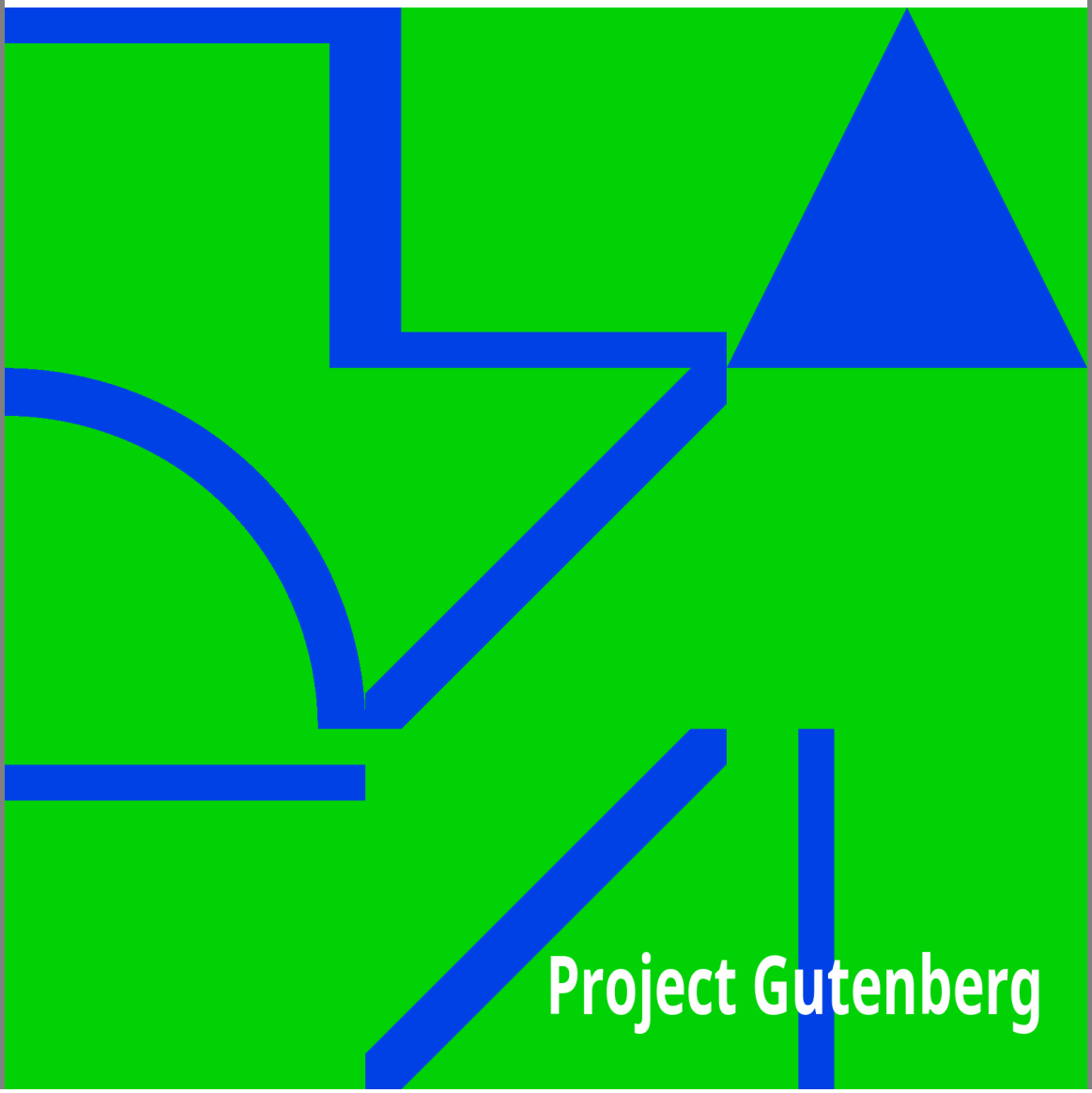
Plain English

Marian Wharton



Plain English

Marian Wharton



The Project Gutenberg eBook of Plain English

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

Title: Plain English

Author: Marian Wharton

Release date: August 21, 2012 [eBook #40550]
Most recently updated: October 23, 2024

Language: English

Other information and formats: www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/40550

Credits: E-text prepared by Mark C. Orton, Anita Hammond, and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team

*** START OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK PLAIN ENGLISH ***

The Project Gutenberg eBook, Plain English, by Marian Wharton

E-text prepared by Mark C. Orton, Anita Hammond,
and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team
(http://www.pgdp.net)

PLAIN ENGLISH

By

MARIAN WHARTON

For the Education of the Workers
by the Workers

PUBLISHED BY
THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE
FORT SCOTT, KANSAS
1917

¶ He who aspires to master the art of expression must first of all consecrate himself completely to some great cause and the greatest cause of all is the cause of humanity. He must learn to feel deeply and think clearly, to express himself eloquently. He must be absolutely true to the best there is in him, if he has to stand alone.

¶ Such natural powers as he may have should be cultivated by the study of history, science and literature. He must not only keep close to the people but remember that he is one of them, and not above the meanest. He must feel the wrongs of others so keenly that he forgets his own, and resolve to combat these wrongs with all the power at his command.

¶ The most thrilling, inspiring oratory, the most powerful and impressive eloquence is the voice of the disinherited, the oppressed, the suffering and submerged; it is the voice of poverty and misery, of rags and crusts, of wretchedness and despair; the voice of humanity crying to the infinite; the voice that resounds throughout the earth and reaches Heaven; the voice that awakens the conscience of a race and proclaims the truths that fill the world with life and liberty and love.

—EUGENE V. DEBS.

FOREWORD

Every generation has added a little to the store of truth of which the human race has possessed itself throughout the long sweep of the centuries. Every truth expressed and preserved by those who lived in the past, is a contribution which enriches the lives of those who live in the present. We, as members of the human race, are not separate atoms independent of the universe, but we are atoms of it. We are the product of all time, and partake of the truth of all preceding generations, in which the power to express ideas and preserve them has existed.

One reason why the race has not profited more largely by the discoveries of previous generations, is the fact that we feel so profoundly the discovery of a truth of any nature, that we are prone to dogmatize it by a rule or set of rules.

This usually results in shutting away from us the real principle of which the rule is but an evidence. A mechanic may learn every detail of every rule for the construction of a steam engine, but if he lacks the understanding of the principles which give rise to the rules, they will avail nothing and his work must fail. If, however, he understands the principles involved, his work will stand the test, though he has no knowledge of rules as such.

In teaching the English language, the rules have been stressed, while the principles have been submerged, so that the teaching of rules has not resulted in the improvement of the student.

The People's College, realizing this, has, through the author of this work, revolutionized the teaching of the fundamental principles that underlie the use of language. The stress is laid upon principles instead of rules, so that the student, whether he remember a rule or not, will never forget the application of these principles to the use of the written and spoken word.

The assertion is ventured that no more practical and effective method can be devised for the rapid and thorough teaching of these principles. Moreover,

the importance of this new departure in method cannot be over-estimated, when we consider that only through the use of language can information be disseminated concerning other branches of learning. This science, then, lies at the very base of all real education, and a mastery of it puts the student in possession of the only weapon by means of which he may master all other sciences.

The author has, with peculiar aptitude, grasped the fundamental character of the foregoing facts and has adapted the study of language to the real principles involved. All the dry rules that are the witnesses of principles in the ordinary text are done away, while the principles evidenced by those rules come forth to the light in practical application, with a beauty of expression and a real utility that render the mastery of the subject an entertaining excursion into the realms of learning, rather than a dry imprisonment of the faculties in an effort to memorize misunderstood rules without apparent reason or real use.

It is the principle behind the rule that has power in it. When this is understood, the method pursued by the author in this course will be universally applied to all branches of learning, and will end forever the imprisonment of children for the useless worship of rules.

The author's grasp of this fact and the exemplification of it, contained in this work are even more far-reaching than the foregoing would indicate. It really means the application of a new viewpoint to life itself. It means the questioning of the utility of authority; the questioning of the utility of institutions; the application, we might say, of such a test as this: Does any rule, does any authority, does any principle, conserve the interests of humanity? If not, away with it. This means rationalism, the use of common sense. It means that at last the race is beginning to consciously direct its own destiny.

It is with a profound sense of the necessity of education as a part of the evolutionary process now in the conscious grasp of the race, and with a conviction of the fundamental importance of the new viewpoint so ably presented by the author that we dedicate this work "To the Education of the Workers by the Workers."

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PLAIN ENGLISH

I.	Language Study	9
II.	Nouns and Verbs	18
III.	Parts of Speech	27
IV.	Nouns	38
V.	Verbs	50
VI.	Inflection of Verbs	58
VII.	Time Forms of Verbs	69
VIII.	Time Forms, Cont'd.	78
IX.	Participles and Infinitives	88
X.	Helping Verbs	97
XI.	Verbs—Common Errors	106
XII.	Pronouns	115
XIII.	Pronouns, Cont'd.	127
XIV.	Adjectives	138
XV.	Adjectives, Cont'd.	148
XVI.	Adverbs	160
XVII.	Adverbs, Cont'd.	169
XVIII.	Prepositions	179
XIX.	Prepositions, Cont'd.	189
XX.	Conjunctions	200
XXI.	Conjunctions, Cont'd.	212
XXII.	Adjective Clauses	222
XXIII.	Independent Constructions	232

XXIV.	Sentence Building	243
XXV.	Sentence Analysis	255
XXVI.	Sentence Building	267
XXVII.	Sentence Building	278
XXVIII.	The Use of Capitals	288
XXIX.	Punctuation	299
XXX.	Punctuation, Cont'd.	310

SPELLING

I.	Definition	17
II.	Vowels and Consonants	26
III.	Diacritical Marks	36
IV.	Digraphs	49
V.	Diphthongs	57
VI.	Syllabification	68
VII.	Syllabification, Cont'd.	77
VIII.	Accent	87
IX.	Compound Words	96
X.	Prefixes and Suffixes	105
XI.	Derivatives	114
XII.	Derivatives, Cont'd.	126
XIII.	Silent E	137
XIV.	Words Ending in Y	146
XV.	Words with ei or ie	159
XVI.	Homonyms	168
XVII.	Derivative Nouns	178
XVIII.	Verbs with Prepositions	187

XIX.	Derivative Prepositions	199
XX.	Derivative Adverbs	211
XXI.	Derivative Adjectives	221
XXII.	Words in able and ible	231
XXIII.	Simplified Spelling	241
XXIV.	Verbs with Suffixes	254
XXV.	Cognate Sounds	256
XXVI.	Words beginning with dis	277
XXVII.	The prefixes in, un and mis	287
XXVIII.	Synonyms	297
XXIX.	Antonyms	308
XXX.	Common Errors	320

PLAIN ENGLISH

Lesson I

Open Letter

Dear Comrade:

You are beginning a course of study in the use of Plain English. We do not know what your previous study may have been, but the object of this course is to give the basic principles and practice of the use of the English Language for the benefit of those who have not had the opportunity of a high school education and possibly have not finished in the grade school.

For this reason we have avoided, as much as possible, the statement of rules and formulas to be learned by rote and have made the few rules which it is necessary to know, grow naturally out of the need for them in the development of expression in language.

We have taken for granted several things in the preparation of this course. First, we assume that you have never studied grammar, or if you have, that you will be glad to review it in simplified form. This course does not follow the lines laid down by technical grammarians. It has been worked out on the basis of plain, common sense. Our purpose is not to make of you a grammarian, versed in the knowledge of rules and reasons, but to give you the power to express yourself more readily, fluently and correctly—in other words to speak and write *good* English.

Second, we assume that you are interested and willing to work and eager to increase your store of knowledge. Your progress in this branch of knowledge will depend, to a large extent, upon your own efforts. We have endeavored to avoid unnecessary and uninteresting rules and make the course as simple, clear and plain as possible; but that does not mean you will not have to work in order to master this study. We trust it will be pleasant and interesting work, bringing you joy as it brings you a growing sense of power.

Probably no two people will use the same plan of work. Your work, to be a pleasure, must express your own individuality. However, we want to make a few suggestions which we know from experience you will find helpful.

1st. Be Systematic. Find some time each day which you can regularly spend in study. Do not be discouraged if it is only fifteen minutes each day. The student who will spend fifteen minutes every day regularly in intensive study can easily complete this course within the prescribed time.

2d. Concentrate. By this we mean that when you study, you should do it to the exclusion of everything else. Keep your mind upon the subject. You may find this difficult at first. Your mind will wander; but you will soon acquire the student habit if you persevere.

3d. Have Faith in Yourself. Do not be easily discouraged. You have the power to master this subject and *you will*. You will find it of immeasurable value to you to be able to speak and write fluently and correctly. Those whom you admire for their ready use of good English were not born with the "gift of gab." They learned how to speak by studying the rules of grammar, the meaning of words, just as you are studying them. What they have done, *you will do*.

4th. Go Slowly and Surely. Do not skim through these lessons. Be sure you understand thoroughly as you go along. Read carefully and *think* for yourself. If there is anything you do not understand at any time, write us and ask about it. These lessons have been carefully prepared and are for your benefit. Make them yours and call upon us freely for help. This is your College and its only ideal is service.

5th. Get a Note-Book. Make your note-book your work-shop. Write in it an outline of each lesson. Fill it with notes, examples, anything which is of interest on the subject. Note down your own frequent mistakes in the use of English. Watch the conversation of your friends; listen to good speakers. Write down the mistakes you notice. Whenever you hear a word which seems particularly good, or when you see one in your reading, write it in your note-book and make it part of your vocabulary. You will find your interest continually growing and also your ability to express the thoughts you yearn to express.

If we can bring to you an increasing joy in life because of a growing power of expression; if we can enlarge your ability to serve the world; if we can, through the study of this wonderful language of ours, open wider the door of opportunity for you,—our comrade,—The People's College will have served its purpose and realized its ideal.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

GOOD ENGLISH—WHAT IS IT?

1. People seem to differ in their idea as to what constitutes "Good English." Have you never seen a man suddenly called upon to make a formal speech or introduced into the company of distinguished men and women? Quite often, he will drop his simple every-day mode of speech and speak in stilted, unnatural language, using all the "big" words he can possibly remember. He no doubt fondly imagines he is making an impression and using "good" English.

The purpose of language is to make one's self understood, and, of course, this can be done in very simple and crude English. The man who breaks every rule of grammar, intersperses his remarks with every variety of slang phrase, may make himself understood, but he is not using *good* English.

2. Good English is that which is good for its purpose and conforms to the standards of usage.

We have one purpose when we write a business letter and quite another when we are writing or speaking of the great issues of life. There is a place for the simple, direct, plain, unadorned language of every-day business life —the life of the work-a-day world—and there is a place also for the beauty and charm of the language of poetry. If we are talking with the man who works beside us of the work of the day, we will naturally use plain, simple, forceful words. But, if we are speaking to our comrades, striving to arouse them out of their lethargy, to stir them to action as men and women, we will just as naturally use the fine and noble words which touch the depths of human emotion—the heights of human endeavor.

3. There are certain rules for the use of English which have grown up through the years, to which we must conform. These are not arbitrary. They have not been made by any man or any set of men. In fact, they are constantly changing, as the common usage of the people forces the changes. For these rules are only the expression of the common usage, and as usage changes, the rules change.

But these changes come slowly, so we can set down in a book the rules which express the established usage of today. The ability to use good English does not mean the ability to use long, high-sounding words. To be a master of good English means to be able to use the word that meets your need and use it correctly.

Do not strive for *effect*, strive for *effective expression*.

USE YOUR DICTIONARY

4. Do you know that the average individual cripples through life with a vocabulary of a few hundred words when he might easily have at his command as many thousands?

We are misers with our words. Here hid away in this book we call the dictionary is a wealth of words, a rich mine of expression, and yet in our every-day conversation we halt and stammer, using meaningless words and phrases largely made up of current slang.

Never let a word pass by that you do not understand thoroughly. Look it up at once in your dictionary and master it then and there. Dollars may be difficult to earn and more difficult to keep, but here is a wealth easily gained and the more you use it the more you possess it.

You will find your dictionary an exceedingly interesting book when you get acquainted with it.

Use it constantly; make it your familiar companion.

OUR LANGUAGE

5. Did you ever stop to think what the world would be if we had no way of communicating, one with another? Think of Helen Keller, shut up in her prison-house of silence. Her only mode of communication with her fellows is through the sense of touch.

Every form of life that has consciousness has some way of expressing its feelings. Every animal, by the movements of its body or the tones of its voice, expresses its emotions of pain, pleasure, rage, hate, joy, hunger and the many passions that sway its life. The child knows without being taught how to express its wants. We understand its cry of hunger, its scream of pain, its laugh of delight. This is the natural language, the language of feeling. It is the universal language that needs no rules and no interpreter. Life on every plane knows and understands it.

WHEN WE BEGIN TO THINK

6. Our feelings and desires are not the only things we wish to communicate. The natural language satisfies a child for a time, but as the child grows he begins to *think*, then he feels the need of a more effective means of expressing himself. You can express your feelings to a certain extent by the natural language. You can make one know that you are glad by the expression of the face, the attitude of the body or the tone of the voice. But could you make anyone understand *why* you are glad, by these signs and gestures?

7. To express thoughts and ideas, man had to devise another sort of language. So the language of *words* grew up out of the need to communicate ideas to other people. As man's ability to think grew, so his language grew. At first, this language was only a spoken language. The ideas of one generation were handed down to the next by the spoken word. Gradually a crude form of writing was invented from which our written language has developed. This has made it possible to put the wisdom of the ages into books for the benefit of the world.

8. Hence, language is the means of expressing thought and feeling. It has grown out of our need for expression.

A word is a symbol of an idea. It is a sound or combination of sounds which we use to represent an idea. The use of words makes it possible for us to readily convey our thoughts to other people.

Through the medium of words we are able to communicate to others our thoughts, not only of the external world about us, but also of the mental world in which we live. We can tell of our loves, our hates, our dreams and our ideals. Animals find the natural language of looks and tones and gestures sufficient because they live almost wholly upon the physical plane. But man lives in a mental world as well as in a physical one, and must have a spoken and written language by which to express his thoughts.

Exercise 1

Select from the following sentences those which it is possible to express by a look or tone or gesture, and those which can not be expressed without words:

1. I am glad.
2. I am glad because men are struggling for freedom.
3. I am hungry.
4. I am hungry for the chance for an education.
5. Come.
6. Come, let us reason together.
7. I am afraid.
8. I am afraid that we must wait long for peace.
9. Go.
10. Go, search the world over for the truth.
11. I am disgusted.
12. I am disgusted with those who will not think for themselves.
13. I am tired.
14. I am tired of these petty squabbles among comrades.

OUR EXPRESSION

9. Our knowledge of language opens up a new world to us. We can communicate with those about us; we can open the storehouse of the

knowledge of the past as recorded in books, or as two of our writers have expressed it:

> Have you ever rightly considered what the mere ability to read means—that it is the key which admits to the world of thought and fancy and imagination—to the company of saint and sage, of the wisest and wittiest at their wisest and wittiest moments—that it enables us to see with the keenest eyes, hear with the finest ears and listen to the sweetest voices of all time? —*Lowell.*

> Strip man of his books and his papers, and he becomes a mere slave, ignorant of his own resources, ignorant of his rights and opportunities. The difference between the free citizen of today and the savage of yesterday is almost entirely a thing of books. The man who dislikes books can never be entirely happy, and he who loves a good book can never be wholly miserable.
>
> —*Hillis.*

Have you never felt that struggle within and the sense of defeat when you have tried to make some one feel as you feel, understand as you understand, see some great truth as you see it, and could not find the words with which to express your ideas?

10. The mastery of words gives; first, *the ability to understand the spoken or written thoughts of others*; second, *the ability to adequately express our own thoughts*; and third, *the ability to think clearly and to grow in our intellectual life*.

A connected chain of reasoning is impossible without the knowledge of the words that express the development of the ideas and the varying shades of meaning. To gain this mastery, you must know the words of our language and their use. Words are the symbols of ideas and perform certain functions in expressing our thoughts. This, simply stated, is all that the study of English Grammar comprises—*the study of English words and their use in the expression of thought and feeling*.

THE THOUGHT AND THE WORD

11. We have found that the invention of words grew out of the ability to *think* and the need for expression. But we first *thought*! So, in order to express yourself clearly you must first *think* clearly. Any thought can be simply and clearly expressed. When you read something difficult of

understanding, where the thought is buried under an avalanche of words, you can be assured the writer was not thinking clearly. He did not have the perfect mastery of his thought. On the other hand, one may have a valuable thought in mind and not be able to express it because he does not have the words at his command. In the one case, we have words and no idea; in the other, the idea and no words.

This study is intended to enable you to master words, the tools of expression. In whatever work you are engaged, it was first necessary to learn to use the tools with which you work. So, you must master the use of English words, the tools of your expression. You can in that way learn to express your thoughts clearly and exactly. You will not need to resort to slang, or to the tiresome repetition of a few words.

The best of everything is none too good for you. It is your right, your heritage, and the best in the English language will bring you into the company and comradeship of the men and women who have striven and toiled for humanity, who will talk to you of dreams and deeds worth while, who will place in your hands the key to a new world.

A COMPLETE THOUGHT

12. When we want to express a thought we use more than one word. Words are the symbols of ideas, but a thought is the expression of the relation between ideas. For example, I say *man*, and you get an idea or an image in your mind of a man, but I have not said anything about any man. But if I say, *Man works*, then I have expressed a thought. I have related the idea of a man and the idea of work and have expressed a complete thought.

So we express our thoughts by *groups of words*. The very smallest group of words which will express a complete thought must, therefore, contain two words. If I say *men*, *fire*, *flowers*, and stop, you wonder what I mean, for I have not expressed a thought. Or, I might say, *work*, *burns*, *bloom*, and you would still be in the dark as to my meaning; but, when I say, *Men work*, *Fire burns*, *Flowers bloom*, you understand, for I have told you my complete thought. I have put two words together in a way to make sense; I have formed a sentence.

13. If we say, *Go* or *Wait*, in the form of a command or entreaty, the single word seems to make complete sense and to form a sentence in itself. But this is only because *you*, who are to do the going or the waiting, is clearly implied. The words *go* or *wait*, by themselves, do not make sense or form a sentence unless they are uttered in the commanding or beseeching tone of voice which makes you understand that *You go* or *You wait* is the intended meaning. With the exception of words used in this way as a command or entreaty, it is always necessary to use at least two words to express a complete thought.

But will any two words make a sentence—express a complete thought?

14. Which of these combinations of words are sentences and which are not?

Busy men.
Men travel.
Snow flies.
Blue sky.
Red flag.
Rustling trees.
Workers strike.
Bees sting.
Grass grows.
Cold winds.
Green fields.
Happy children.

Busy men does not express a complete thought. We are wondering *busy men do what?* But, *men travel* is a complete thought. It makes sense and forms a sentence, and tells us what men *do*. In the words, *busy men*, we have spoken the name of something but have made no assertion concerning it. In the two words, *men travel*, we have spoken the name *men* and we have told what they *do*.

If we were walking down the street together we might say:

The street is crowded to-day.
Does the open road attract you?

See the jostling crowds.

Or if we were discussing the class struggle, we might say:

Two classes have always existed.
To which class do you belong?
Join your class in the struggle.

In every one of these six groups of words we have a complete thought expressed. Each of these groups of words we call a sentence.

15. A sentence is a group of words expressing a complete thought.

Exercise 2

Write in each blank space the word necessary to express a complete thought.

Men.....	.....fade.
Leaves.....	.....bloom.
Water.....	.....run.
Fire.....	.....write.
Women.....	.....grow.
Children.....	.....speak.

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

16. We have found that every sentence must have at least two words, one word to name that about which something is said and another word which does the saying or makes the assertion. In the sentence, *Men work*, we have these two parts; *men* which is the part about which something is said, and *work* which tells what men do.

The part about which something is said is called the subject.

In this sentence, *Men work*, *men*, therefore, is the subject, for it names that about which something is said.

17. The part that asserts or says something about the subject is called the predicate.

Therefore in this sentence, *Men work*, *work* is the predicate. In the following sentences draw a single line under the subject and a double line under the predicate, thus, *Birds fly*.

Ships sail.
Soldiers fight.
Flowers fade.
Horses neigh.
Flags wave.
Snow comes.
War rages.
Winds blow.
Fish swim.

18. We may add other words to the subject or the predicate and so enlarge their meaning, as for instance we may say:

The stately ships sail proudly away.
The war in Europe rages furiously.
The soldiers in the army fight like men gone mad.

Yet in every one of these sentences you will find the subject and the predicate,—*Ships sail*, *War rages*, *Soldiers fight*.

Every sentence must have a subject and a predicate, and it is a very important part of the study of sentences to be able to distinguish quickly and readily the subject and the predicate. Find that about which something is said, and that will always be the subject. Find that which is said about the subject, and that will be the predicate.

Every sentence must contain a subject and a predicate.

The subject of a sentence names that about which something is said.

The predicate tells that which is said about the subject.

Exercise 3

In the following sentences add other words to the subject and to the predicate to enlarge their meaning, then draw a single line under the subject and a double line under the predicate:

Ships sail.
Tides flow.
Stars shine.
Rain falls.
Children play.
Nature sleeps.
Waves break.
War rages.
Birds sing.

Exercise 4

In the following sentences the subject and the predicate have other words added to enlarge their meaning. Find the subject and predicate and draw a single line under the subject and a double line under the predicate, as in the sentence,

The workers of the world build palaces for other people.

1. Our success lies in solidarity.
2. New occasions teach new duties.
3. Two classes exist in the world.
4. Labor creates all wealth.
5. The workers fight all battles.
6. Our time calls for earnest deeds.
7. Knowledge unlocks the door of life.
8. Ignorance bars the path to progress.

9. Few people think for themselves.
10. Hope stirs us to action.

SPELLING

LESSON 1

Spelling is the process of naming or writing in proper order the letters of a word. There is nothing that marks us so quickly as lacking in the qualities that go to make up a good education as our inability to spell the words most commonly used.

Spelling in English is rather difficult. If each letter represented but one sound, spelling would be an easy matter. Every word would be spelled just as it sounds. This is the goal of those who advocate phonetic spelling. Phonetic spelling simply means spelling according to sound. But our alphabet does not have a letter for every sound.

There are some forty-two different sounds used in English words and we have only twenty-six letters in the alphabet. Therefore some letters must do duty for several sounds. Then we have words which contain letters which are not sounded at all when the word is pronounced, so, all in all, spelling is a matter of memorizing.

The best way to become an accurate speller is to read much, to observe closely the forms of words and to write frequently. Always spell any word of which you are uncertain aloud several times and write it out several times. In this way you have aided the memory both through the eye and through the ear. If you are not sure of the spelling of a word do not use it until you have looked it up in the dictionary and made sure.

The words in this lesson are taken out of Lesson 1, Plain English Course. There are thirty in all, five for each day of the week. (1) Look up the meaning in the dictionary. (2) Learn the correct spelling. (3) Learn the correct pronunciation. (4) Use the word in a sentence of your own construction. (5) Use it during the day in your conversation; strive to make it a part of your working vocabulary.

Monday

Mode
English
Grammar
Expression
Complete

Tuesday

Language
Emotion
Group
Mastery
Dictionary

Wednesday

Thought
Symbol
Ability
Idea
Knowledge

Thursday

Subject
Predicate
Vocabulary
Practice
History

Friday

Memory
Sentence
Write
Right
Purpose

Saturday

Propose
Growth
Learn
Teach
Pronounce

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 2

Dear Comrade:

Review Lesson 1 before taking up this lesson. Do not try to learn by rote the contents of these lessons. Our endeavor is to make you see the reason for every rule and definition before they are given. We want you to see unfolding before you the development of language and through this evolution you can catch a glimpse of the developing life of man. Language like customs, religion, government, has grown with the economic advancement of man. As man has evolved on the economic plane, the material plane, as he has improved his means of providing for himself food and clothes and shelter, he has developed a language suited to his needs.

So we can trace the growth of the race as we study the development of language from the sign language of the primitive savage to the language of the philosopher of today by which he makes known to us the story of the stars, and the innermost secrets of our hearts and minds. Civilization began with the invention of the phonetic alphabet and the use of writing. So the study of language becomes not a dull and stupid conning of useless rules and formulas, but an absorbing study of a living, growing, changing thing that mirrors forth the very life of man.

Think while you study. As you look for the definition of words in your dictionary and realize how many shades of meaning we can express in words, remember that this power is a heritage that comes to us from a long past of incessant struggle.

We of to-day are also writing history in words. By our efforts we are adding new words to the language and giving old words a richer meaning. *Brotherhood*, *justice*, for example! The world is coming to understand these glorious words more fully and giving them a new interpretation.

You will see a new beauty and glory in words after you have finished this course and you will have a mastery of this wonderful language of ours.

Watch carefully the use of words in your reading. Especially this week distinguish the nouns and verbs. Use your dictionary constantly and add a few words to your vocabulary every day.

Whenever there is a word used in these lessons which you do not thoroughly understand, look it up at once in your dictionary and master it then and there. Make a list in your note book of the words you look up and at the end of the week go over them again and see if you have them clearly in mind. Watch also the pronunciation of the words. Do not try to do everything all at once, nor should you be discouraged if your progress seems slow. We approach the goal one step at a time and each step takes us nearer and nearer. Just keep steadily at it, Comrade.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

KINDS OF SENTENCES

19. We have found that we use sentences to express our thoughts. But we also find that we use these sentences in different ways for different purposes. Can you notice any difference in the following sentences?

Two classes have always existed.
To which class do you belong?
Join your class in the struggle.

When I say, *Two classes have always existed*, I am making a simple assertion, stating what I know or believe to be true.

When I say, *To which class do you belong?* I am asking a question.

When I say, *Join your class in the struggle*, I am giving a command or making a request.

20. These three kinds of sentences are called assertive, interrogative and imperative.

An assertive sentence states a fact or an opinion.

An interrogative sentence asks a question.

An imperative sentence gives a command, makes a request or expresses a wish.

21. Any of these three kinds of sentences may be exclamatory; that is, it may express surprise, excitement, impatience, or some other emotion. For example:

Hurrah! Freedom is coming!

This is an assertion expressed as an exclamation.

Oh! Why should war continue?

Here we have a question in the form of an exclamation.

Come! Keep your courage up.

In this, we have a command, an imperative sentence, expressed in the form of an exclamation.

An exclamatory sentence expresses surprise, excitement or some other emotion.

In these three forms of sentences, the assertive, the interrogative and the imperative, together with the exclamatory, we are able to express every thought and feeling which demands expression, either for practical or artistic purposes.

The sentence is the basis of spoken and written language and as we trace its development we trace the history of the evolution of man and the growth of his power of expression, as he has developed his powers of mind.

22. Every sentence must begin with a capital letter.

Every assertive and imperative sentence should end with a period.

Every interrogative sentence should end with a question mark.

The word in an exclamatory sentence which expresses strong emotion is followed by an exclamation point. The sentence itself if in interrogative form should be followed by a question mark; if in the assertive or the imperative form it may be followed either by an exclamation point or a period.

Exercise 1

Mark the assertive sentences among the following with an *a* in the blank space. Mark the interrogative sentences with a *q* for question; the imperative sentences with a *c* for command; and the exclamatory with an *e* for exclamation.

1. ..... Books are the true levelers.
2. ..... Put not your trust in princes.
3. ..... To err is human; to forgive divine.
4. ..... What are the rights of a child?
5. ..... Seize common occasions and make them great.
6. ..... Not until all are free, is any free.
7. ..... Freemen! Shall not we demand our own?
8. ..... Is a world of happiness but a Utopian dream?
9. ..... He who will not work, shall not eat.
10. ..... Strike at the polls for freedom!
11. ..... Do the majority want social justice?
12. ..... A friend is the hope of the heart.
13. ..... How beautiful is the vision of peace!
14. ..... Acquire the thinking habit.
15. ..... Is it glorious to die for our country?
16. ..... Lo! Women are waking and claiming their own!
17. ..... Claim your right to the best.
18. ..... What is the highest good?
19. ..... Workers of the world, unite!
20. ..... To remain ignorant is to remain a slave.

WORDS—THEIR USES

23. We have learned from our study that we use sentences to express our thoughts. These sentences are made up of words; therefore we call words *parts of speech*. Words are only fractions or parts of speech, and it is by combining them into sentences that we are able to express our thoughts.

There are many thousands of words in the English language. It would be impossible for us to study each word separately. But these words, like people, are divided into classes, so we can study each class of words. These thousands of words are divided into classes much as people are, or rather as people ought to be; for words are divided into classes according to the work which they do. In the Industrial Commonwealth there will be no upper or lower class, but men will be divided into groups according to the work which they do. There will be various industrial groups, groups of agricultural workers, groups of clerical workers, etc. So words are divided into classes according to the work which they do in helping us to express our ideas.

24. Words are divided into kinds or classes according to their use in sentences.

There are eight of these classes of words, called parts of speech.

THE NAMES OF THINGS

25. What a word *does* determines what part of speech it is. When primitive man, long ago, first began to use words, in all probability the first words which he invented were those used to name familiar objects about him. He invented a word for *man*, *boy*, *tree*, *animal*, etc. Gradually, all the things he met in his daily life received a name. About one half of the words in our language are of this class, the *names* of things.

Every word which is used as a name of something is called a *noun*. This word *noun* is derived from the Latin word which means *name*, so it is quite the same thing as saying *name*. Notice the following sentences:

Boys run.
Fish swim.
Horses neigh.

Soldiers march.
Flags wave.
Flowers fade.
Girls study.
Winds blow.
Men work.

All of the words used like *boys*, *girls*, *fish*, *horses*, *soldiers*, *flag*, *winds*, *flowers* and *men*, are the names of objects, therefore all of these words are *nouns*. The subject of a sentence is always a noun or a word used as a noun. However, we may use in a sentence many nouns besides the noun which is used as the subject, the noun about which the statement is made. We will study the use of these nouns later in our lessons.

The famous palace of the kings of the Moors, at Granada, in Spain, was called the Alhambra. We have six nouns in this sentence, *palace*, *kings*, *Moors*, *Granada*, *Spain* and *Alhambra*, but the noun *palace* is the noun which is the subject—the noun which is the name of that about which something is said. *Palace* is the subject; and *was called* is the predicate in this sentence.

26. A noun is a word used as the name of something.

Now we want to learn to distinguish every word that is used as a name. Pick out the nouns as you read your books and papers until you are able to tell every word which is used as a noun, the name of something.

In the following paragraph, the nouns are printed in italics. Carefully study these nouns:

The *fire* in the *grate*, the *lamp* by the *bedside*, the *water* in the *tumbler*, the *fly* on the *ceiling* above, the *flower* in the *vase* on the *table*, all *things* have their *history* and can reveal to us *nature's* invisible *forces*.

Exercise 2

Underscore every noun in the following quotation:

The whole history of the earth has been one of gradual development, of progress, of slow and painful climbing through the ages. Not only have the hills and the mountains, the rivers and the stars, the trees and the cattle, the beasts and the birds, been developing; but man himself—his mind and his body—has been developing. Men are marvelous little creatures; they have weighed the sun in their balances, measured the stars and analyzed the light and beauty of the rainbow; they have sounded the depths of the ocean; they have learned how the sun and the mountains were born and the rivers were laid in their mighty beds; they have learned how the seas became salt, what the stars are made of. They have learned so much, and yet when it comes to matters of time and space, and law and motion, they still know so little. The only man who is conscious of his ignorance is he who has learned a great deal. —*McMillan.*

WORDS THAT ASSERT

27. After the primitive man had invented names for the things about him, probably his next step was to invent words of action. He very naturally wanted to tell what all of these various things *did*. So the words that tell what things do, the words of action, the words that assert, came into the language. A child follows much the same development. As you can readily observe, it first names the objects about it, then learns the words that tell what these objects do.

So the words that tell what things *do*, become the second class of words. These words we call *verbs*. The word *verb*, like the word *noun*, is taken into our language from the Latin. In Latin, the word *verbum* means *the word*; and the verb is practically *the* word in a sentence, for we cannot have a sentence without a verb. You may string a number of words together, but if you do not have an asserting word, you will not have a sentence.

Notice the following sentences:

Men work.
Flowers fade.
Snow flies.
Winds blow.

In these sentences, the words *work*, *fade*, *flies* and *blow*, are the words used to assert or say something of the subject, hence they are the verbs in these sentences.

28. Sometimes it takes more than one word to express the action or make the assertion. Notice the following sentences:

The men are working.
The boy has been studying.

In the first sentence it takes two words, *are working*, to make the assertion; in the second, three are required, *has been studying*. These groups of words are called *verb phrases*.

29. A verb is a word that asserts.

A verb phrase is a group of words used as a single verb.

The verb is perhaps the most difficult part of speech to master. It is not hard to find the verb in short sentences, but in longer sentences it is sometimes difficult.

For example:

The sun shines.
The man walks.
The boys strike.

We very easily see that *shine*, *walk* and *strike* are the verbs in these sentences. But let us add other words, as for example:

The sun shines brightly.
The man walks for his health.
The boys strike the dog.

Now we are very apt to confuse the verb with the words which state *how* and *why* the action is performed, or the *object* towards which the action is directed. But in these sentences, *shine* and *walks* and *strike* are still the verbs, just as in the first sentences. The verb asserts the action; the other words merely give additional information about *how* or *why* or *upon what* the action is performed.

30. Another thing which makes it difficult for us to distinguish verbs in English is that the same word may be used both as a noun and as a verb; but always remember that words are separated into classes according to the work which they do. When a word is used as a *name* it is a *noun*; when it is used as an *asserting* word it is a *verb*. Note the following sentences:

The *play* made the child tired.
The children *play* in the yard.

In the first sentence *play* is a noun, the subject of the verb *made*. In the second sentence *play* is the verb, telling what the children *do*. Always classify words according to the work which they perform in the sentence. This will help you very much in finding your verb.

31. Then we have some verbs which do not assert action but express rather a connection or relation between the subject and some other word or words. For example:

The dog belongs to the man.
The girl is happy.

In these sentences *belongs* and *is* are the verbs. *Belongs* asserts or shows the relation between *the dog* and *the man*. *Is* shows the relation between *the girl* and *happy*. If we simply say *girl* and *happy*, we do not show any connection between them or make any statement relating the two, but when we say, *The girl is happy*, we are asserting something, and the word *is* makes the assertion.

Or when we say, *The girl was happy*, or *The girl will be* or *may be happy*, in each of these cases, it is the verb or verb phrase *was* or *will be* or *may be*, that asserts or shows the relation between the subject *girl* and the descriptive word *happy*. You will observe that the verbs *will be* and *may be* are composed of more than one word and are *verb phrases*.

We will study the verb in succeeding lessons, but let us remember from this lesson that the word or group of words that makes the assertion in the sentence is the verb. Remember too that every sentence must contain a verb.

Get this basic principle firmly fixed in mind that what a word *does* decides what it *is*—to what part of speech it belongs, and that every class of words fulfills its own function in sentence building.

32. Remember:—

Every sentence must have a subject and a predicate.

Every sentence must express a complete thought.

Every sentence must contain a verb.

A noun is the name of something.

A verb is a word that asserts.

What a word does determines what it is.

Study carefully the following quotation. The verbs are printed in *italics*.

> Slowly, painfully, *proceeds* the struggle of man against the power of Mammon. The past *is written* in tears and blood. The future *is* dim and unknown, but the final outcome of this world-wide struggle *is* not in doubt. Freedom *will conquer* slavery, truth *will prevail* over error, justice *will triumph* over injustice, the light *will vanquish* the darkness; and humanity *will rise* in the glory of universal brotherhood.
>
> —*Warren*.

Exercise 3

Underscore all verbs and verb phrases in the following quotation:

> **The Dream of Labor:** Ours is not the cause of one class, of one sex, of one tribe, of one city, of one state, of one continent.
>
> It is the wish for a better world where Man shall be Man; where the beast shall become subdued; where everything shall lead to complete development; where the good of each shall be bound up in the good of all; where all shall feel the sorrows of each and shall run to his rescue.
>
> A glimpse of this ideal takes us into the Land of Promise, where peace and plenty shall reign supreme; where brothers shall no longer battle among themselves, but for one another; where the atmosphere shall be laden with love, the love that saves; where the hate that kills shall be unknown; where heart and brain shall work together and

shall make life better and more complete; where the fullness of life shall be for all and where men and women shall be as happy at their work as little children at their play.

The mere glimpse into that land makes life worth living, makes work worth doing, makes dreams worth dreaming, gives us hope and faith—the faith we need in the labor for our cause, the faith which shall help us win.

—*Oscar Leonard.*

Exercise 4

We have found that there are a number of words in English which may be used either as nouns or verbs, depending upon the function they serve in the sentence. In the following sentences underscore the nouns with a single line, the verbs with two lines:

1. They *man* the boats.
2. The *man* has a boat.
3. The women *pass* this way.
4. They held the *pass* for hours.
5. Little children *work* in the mines.
6. The *work* of the world is done by machinery today.
7. The armies will *cross* the bridge.
8. He built a *cross* of rude stones.
9. The leopard cannot *change* its spots.
10. We will force a *change* in the law.

Exercise 5

In the following poem, mark every noun and every verb and verb phrase. You will find the verb phrases in several places divided by the word *not*, as in *I do not obey*. *Do obey* is the verb phrase. We will learn to what part of speech *not* belongs a little later.

I DO NOT OBEY, I THINK.

"Captain, what do you think," I asked,
"Of the part your soldiers play?"

The Captain answered, "I do not think
—
I do not think, I obey."

"Do you think your conscience was
meant to die,
And your brains to rot away?"
The Captain answered, "I do not think
—
I do not think, I obey."

"Do you think you should shoot a
patriot down,
And help a tyrant slay?"
The Captain answered, "I do not think
—
I do not think, I obey."

"Then if this is your soldier's code," I
cried,
"You're a mean, unmanly crew;
And with all your feathers and gilt
and braid,
I am more of a man than you;

"For whatever my lot on earth may be
And whether I swim or sink,
I can say with pride, 'I do not obey—
I do not obey, I think.'"

—*Ernest Crosby.*

SPELLING

LESSON 2

The twenty-six letters in the English alphabet are divided into vowels and consonants. A vowel is a letter which represents a sound of the human voice but slightly interrupted by the vocal organs. The vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o* and *u*. All of the remaining letters of the alphabet are consonants. A consonant is a letter which represents a sound of the human voice greatly obstructed by the vocal organs.

Consonant is from the Latin *con*, meaning *with*, and *sono—I sound*. So it means literally *I sound with*.

The consonants are produced by union of the breath with the vocal organs. The consonant sounds are so called because they are always "sounded with" a vowel; they are used only in combination with vowels in forming words or syllables.

In English a consonant alone never forms a word or a syllable. Sound the different consonants *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *h*, *j*, *k*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *q*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *v*, *x* and *z*, by themselves and you will see how the sound of the breath is obstructed or changed by the use of the vocal organs—the lips, the tongue, the teeth, etc. —in making these various sounds.

W and *y* are sometimes vowels and sometimes consonants. *W* and *y* are vowels when they are used with another vowel representing a vowel sound as in *awe*, *new*, *joy*, *eye*, etc. *Y* is sometimes used as a vowel by itself as in *by*, *cry*, etc. *W* and *y* are consonants when they are used at the beginning of a syllable or before a vowel in the same syllable as in *wine*, *twine*, *yield* and *year*.

Look up the meaning of the words in this week's lesson. Master the spelling and use them in sentences of your own construction.

Monday

Reason
Evolution
Justice
Thorough
Beauty

Tuesday

Assertive
Review
Surprise
Basis
Separate

Wednesday

Interrogative
Period
Capital
Capitol
Function

Thursday

Example
Contain
Imperative
Question
Speech

Friday

Method
Various
Familiar
Industry
Alphabet

Saturday

Travel
Sense
Cents
Sail
Sale

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 3

Dear Comrade:

In this lesson we are taking up a short study of the different parts of speech. In later lessons we will study each part of speech more thoroughly but this lesson covers the ground quickly and briefly. It is sufficient, however, to form a basis for our understanding of the evolution of language.

You will see, as you study this lesson, how each part of speech has been added to meet a growing need. There are many, many thousand words in the English language, but they can all be grouped under these eight parts of speech, for they all answer in some way to one of these great needs.

The object in studying grammar, as in studying any other science, is not to fill one's mind with a great many unrelated facts—facts which may or may not prove useful to one hereafter. The object of all study is to develop one's power of observation and one's ability to think. Added to this must be the practical ability to make use of this knowledge. Here the study of grammar has an advantage over the study of every other science. It deals with words, something which we use every day.

You do not need any laboratory or expensive apparatus in order to study grammar. All that you need lies ready to your hand. And in addition to this the knowledge which you gain is something which is of practical use to every man and woman no matter what their work, no matter what their place or position in life may be.

Remember that dogmatism has no place in the study of grammar. "Grammarians are the guardians, not the authors, of language." We do not say, "You should say this or that, or you violate a rule of grammar," but we say "The common usage among those who use good English is thus and so." If we do not believe that the common usage is the best usage, then we follow the democratic method of seeking to change the common usage into that which we consider the more sensible way. Thus, those who advocate

simplified spelling have not sought to pass a law whereby every one should be compelled to spell words exactly as they sound, but they have striven to influence our writers and people in general to use this more sensible way of spelling words.

So *think* while you study. Do not try to learn rules and formulas. See *why* the rules and formulas exist. Once having seen this you do not need to learn them—you know them already. The study of any language is an intellectual discipline of the highest order.

So apply yourself diligently to this most interesting study and you will see that the result of this application will affect your daily life in every particular.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

WORDS ADDED TO NOUNS

33. When man began to invent words to express his ideas of the world in which he lived, we have found that probably the first need was that of names for the things about him. So we have nouns. The second need was of words to tell what these things *do*, and so we have verbs. But primitive man soon felt the need of other classes of words.

The objects about us are not all alike. For example, we have a word for man, but when we say *man* that is not sufficient to describe the many different kinds of men. There are tall men, short men, white men, black men, strong men, weak men, busy men, lazy men. There are all sorts of men in the world, and we need words by which we can describe these different types and also indicate which man we mean.

34. So we have a class of words which are called adjectives. *Adjective* is a word derived from the Latin. It comes from the Latin word *ad*, meaning *to*, and the Latin word *jecto*, which means *to throw*; hence an adjective is a word *thrown to* or *added to* a noun.

If you will stop to think for a moment, you will see that it is by their qualities that we know the things about us. Some men are strong, some are weak, some are tall, some are short. These qualities belong to different men. And we separate or group them into classes as they resemble each other or differ from one another in these qualities. Things are alike which have the same qualities; things are unlike whose qualities are different. Apples and oranges are alike in the fact that both are round, both are edible. They are unlike in the fact that one is red and one is yellow; one may be sour and the other sweet. So we separate them in our minds because of their different qualities; and we have a class of words, *adjectives*, which describe these various qualities.

35. We use adjectives for other purposes also. For example, when we say *trees*, we are not speaking of any particular trees, but of trees in general. But we may add certain adjectives which point out particular trees, as for example: *these* trees, or *those* trees, or *eight* trees or *nine* trees. These adjectives limit the trees of which we are speaking to the particular trees pointed out. They do not express any particular qualities of the trees like the adjectives *tall* or *beautiful* express, but they limit the use of the word *trees* in its application. So we have our definition of the adjective.

36. An adjective is a word added to a noun to qualify or limit its meaning.

Exercise 1

Underscore all of the adjectives in the following quotation. Notice also the nouns and verbs in this quotation.

> Yet fearsome and terrible are all the footsteps of men upon the earth, for they either descend or climb.
>
> They descend from little mounds and high peaks and lofty altitudes, through wide roads and narrow paths, down noble marble stairs and creaky stairs of wood—and some go down to the cellar, and some to the grave, and some down to the pits of shame and infamy, and still some to the glory of an unfathomable abyss where there is nothing but the staring, white, stony eye-balls of Destiny.
>
> They descend and they climb, the fearful footsteps of men, and some limp, some drag, some speed, some trot, some run—they are quiet, slow, noisy, brisk, quick, feverish,

mad, and most awful in their cadence to the ears of the one who stands still.

But of all the footsteps of men that either descend or climb, no footsteps are so fearsome and terrible as those that go straight on the dead level of a prison floor, from a yellow stone wall to a red iron gate.

—From *The Walker*. *Giovannitti.*

WORDS ADDED TO VERBS

37. From our study, you see how our classes of words grew out of man's need of them in expressing his thoughts. And notice also how the many thousands of words in our language can all be grouped under these few classes. We *name* the things about us; we invent words to tell what these things *do*; we have another class of words which *describe* the things which we have named; and now we come to a fourth class of words for which we also find great need.

When we come to tell what things *do*, we find that we need words which will tell us *how* or *where* or *when* these things are done. Notice the following sentences:

The men work busily.
The men work late.
The men work now.
The men work here.
The men work hard.
The men work well.
The men work inside.
The men work more.

We would have a complete sentence and express a complete thought if we said simply, *The men work*, but each of these words which we have added, like *busily*, *hard*, *late*, etc., adds something to the meaning of the verb. These words add something to the action which is asserted by the verb, for they show *how* and *when* and *where* and *how much* the men work.

38. We call this class of words *adverbs*, because they are added to verbs to make the meaning more definite, very much as adjectives are added to nouns. Adverb means literally *to the verb*.

An adverb will always answer one of these questions: *how? when? how long? how often? how much? how far?* or *how late?* If you want to find the adverbs in your sentences just ask one of these questions, and the word that answers it will be the adverb.

39. An adverb may be used also with an adjective. Notice the following sentences:

The book is *very* long.
Too many people never think.

Notice here that the adverbs *very* and *too* modify the adjectives *long* and *many*.

40. Adverbs may also be used with other adverbs. Notice the following sentences:

He speaks *very* distinctly.
He walks *too* slowly.

Here the adverbs *very* and *too* are used with the adverbs *distinctly* and *slowly*, and add to their meaning. We will study more fully in later lessons concerning both the adjective and the adverb, but we can see by this brief study why adverbs were added as a class of words, a part of speech, for they are absolutely necessary in order to describe the action expressed by verbs, and also to add to the meaning of adjectives and other adverbs. Hence we have our definition of an adverb.

41. An adverb is a word that modifies the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

Exercise 2

Underscore all adverbs in the following sentences:

1. He will not come today.
2. Here and now is the day of opportunity.
3. Very slowly, but even then entirely too rapidly, the fire crept forward.

4. The room was very quiet and still.
5. He was too weary to go farther.
6. One must learn to feel deeply and think clearly in order to express himself eloquently.
7. Ferrer stood there, so calmly and so bravely facing the firing squad.
8. He was condemned to death because he stood uncompromisingly and courageously for the education of the masses.
9. Ferrer understood thoroughly that the schools of today cleverly and effectively adapt their teaching to maintain the present system of society.
10. He said "The school imprisons the children physically, intellectually and morally."

WORDS USED IN PLACE OF NOUNS

42. Now we come to study another class of words which are also very necessary in order to express our ideas. Suppose you had just arrived in a strange town and you wanted to find the way to a friend's house. You inquire of a stranger, "Can you tell me who lives in the house on the corner?"

Notice the words *you* and *me* and *who*. You could not call the stranger by name for you do not know his name, and hence you say *you*. And if you used your own name instead of *me*, he would not recognize it, and you would both be puzzled to find a substitute for that little word *who*.

If you knew the stranger and he knew your name, you might say, "Can Mr. Smith tell Mr. Jones what person lives in the house on the corner." But this would sound very stilted and unnatural and awkward. So we have these little words like *you* and *me* and *who*, which we use *in place of nouns*. These words are called pronouns. This word is taken from the Latin also. In the Latin the word *pro* means *in place of*. So the word pronoun means literally in place of a noun.

43. A pronoun is a word that is used in place of a noun.

These pronouns are very useful little words. They save us a great deal of tiresome repetition. Notice the awkwardness of the following:

> The workers will succeed in gaining the workers' freedom if the workers learn solidarity.

And yet this would be the way we would have to express this idea if we did not have pronouns. Instead we say:

> The workers will succeed in gaining their freedom if they learn solidarity.

44. We will study the pronoun in detail in later lessons, but we can readily recognize these words which are used in place of nouns. The most common pronouns are:

I
you
he
she
it
we
they
me
him
her
us
them
my
your
his
her
its
our
their
that
which
who

whose
whom
what

Exercise 3

Underscore the pronouns in the following story:

A man in South Africa picked up a small piece of stone. It was dirty and rough.

"Make me beautiful," said the stone.

"I shall have to hurt you," said the man.

"Well, if it hurts me, I will bear it," said the stone.

So the man took it to a clever craftsman, who put it into a tight vise, and cut it with his sharp instrument.

"Oh!" cried the stone.

And he ground it till the dust fell all about it.

"Oh!" cried the stone.

And he polished it very hard.

"Oh!" cried the stone.

And then he set it in a crown and sent it to the Queen. On a sunny day she wore her crown, and the stone—it was a diamond—sparkled in long rays of crimson and green and yellow and silvery white. And all the people greeted their queen. She showed them her crown and they praised the beautiful stone.

The training was hard, but the improvement was glorious.

PREPOSITIONS

45. Notice the following sentences:

I want the book *on* the box.
I want the book *under* the box.
I want the book *in* the box.
I want the book *beside* the box.
I want the book *behind* the box.

I want the book *beyond* the box.

Do you notice any word in these sentences which does not belong to any of the classes of words which we have studied? *I* is a pronoun, *want* is a verb, *the* is an adjective, *book* is a noun, *the* is an adjective, *box* is a noun; but the words, *on*, *under*, *in*, *beside*, *behind* and *beyond* are not nouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs or pronouns.

Yet would it be possible to express the meaning in these sentences without these words? Read the sentences without them, and you will see that no one could tell the relation which you wish to express between the *book* and the *box*. And you will notice too that each word expresses a different relation, for it means one thing to say *on the box* and another thing to say *in the box*, and so through the list.

46. The words which are used to show this relation are called *prepositions*. The groups of words introduced by the preposition, like *on the box* and *in the box*, and so on, are called prepositional phrases. The noun which follows a preposition as *box* follows the prepositions *in*, *on*, *beside*, *beyond*, etc., is called the *object* of the preposition.

Preposition is a word which comes into our language from the Latin. It is formed from the Latin *pre*, which means *before*, and the Latin verb which means *to place*, so preposition means literally *to place before*. It is given this name because it is placed before the noun or pronoun which is its object. Therefore our definition of a preposition is as follows:

47. A preposition is a word that shows the relation of its object to some other word.

48. Either a noun or a pronoun may be the object of a preposition. Notice the following sentences:

Bring the book to me.
Lay the book on the table.
He will speak to you.
I will speak to the man.

In these sentences the noun *table* is the object of the preposition *on*; the pronoun *me* is the object of the preposition *to*; and in the last two sentences the pronoun *you* and the noun *man* are the objects of the preposition *to*.

49. There are not many prepositions in the language and they are easily learned and easily distinguished. Here is a list of the most common and the most important prepositions. Use each one in a sentence.

at
across
around
about
among
above
against
along
behind
beside
between
below
beyond
by
before
beneath
down
for
from
in
into
off
on
over
to
toward
under
up
upon

with
within
without

Exercise 4

Underscore the prepositions in the following sentences:

He went to the door and looked out upon the field.
Over the river and through the woods, to Grandfather's house we go.
He saw them in the distance as they were coming toward him.
They went along the road, across the bridge, and hid among the trees at the foot of the hill.
They came from Minneapolis down the river by boat.
The war between the classes is a struggle against exploitation.
The army was intrenched behind the barricades before dawn.
His claim was within the law but without justice.

CONJUNCTIONS

50. We have found that the preposition is a very important connective word. It connects two words and shows what one of them has to do with the other, but the preposition is not the only connective word which we use in English. We have another part of speech which performs an important function as a connective word. Notice the following sentence:

Men and women struggle for their rights.

Can you find a word in this sentence which is a connective word besides the preposition *for*? Did you notice that little word *and*? The noun *men* and the noun *women* are both subjects of the verb *struggle*, and they are joined by this little connective word *and*. If we did not have this word we would have to use two sentences to express our thought, thus:

Men struggle for their rights.
Women struggle for their rights.

But with the use of this connective word *and* we can combine these two sentences and express it all in one sentence:

Men *and* women struggle for their rights.

This word is used in a different manner from the preposition. The preposition connects two words and makes one modify the other. When we say, *Get the book on the table*, the phrase *on the table* designates the book just as much as if we had said, *Get the green book*. So the use of the preposition enables us to show the relation between two words and to make one word describe or modify the other.

51. This little word *and* in the sentence, *Men and women struggle for their rights*, is a connective word also, but it connects two words that are used in the same way, so it is a different sort of connective word from the preposition. Words used in this way are called *conjunctions*. Conjunction is a word which is taken from the Latin, being made up of the Latin word *con*, which means *together*, and the Latin verb *juncto*, which means *to join*. So conjunction means literally *to join together*.

52. A conjunction is a word that connects sentences or parts of sentences.

Notice the following sentence:

The class struggle is waged on the political field and on the industrial field.

Here we have the conjunction *and* connecting the two phrases *on the political field* and *on the industrial field*. Without the use of this connective word, we would have to use two sentences to express these two thoughts:

The class struggle is waged on the political field.
The class struggle is waged on the industrial field.

53. So a conjunction may be used to connect phrases as well as words.

Now notice the following sentences:

He will speak. I will listen.
He will speak, *and* I will listen.
He will speak, *but* I will listen.
He will speak, *if* I will listen.
He will speak, *therefore* I will listen.
He will speak, *because* I will listen.
He will speak, *until* I will listen.

54. These *sentences* are joined by different conjunctions, and the conjunction used alters the meaning of the sentence.

The conjunction is a very useful part of speech. Without it we would have many disconnected sentences requiring tiresome repetition of the same words. Like prepositions, there are not many conjunctions in English and they are readily recognized.

55. We will study about these conjunctions at length in later lessons. If you consult the following list of those most commonly used, you can easily pick out the conjunctions in your reading:

and
as
as if
after
although
as soon as
because
besides
before
but
either
for
hence
in order that
lest
neither
nor
or

since
still
so
then
though
that
than
therefore
till
until
unless
while
whether
yet

The seven classes of words which we have studied make up all of our sentences. The hundreds of words which we use in forming our sentences and expressing our thoughts belong to these seven classes. They are either nouns, pronouns, verbs, adverbs, adjectives, prepositions or conjunctions.

Exercise 5

Underscore the conjunctions in the following sentences. Notice whether they connect words or phrases or sentences.

1. We cannot win unless we are organized.
2. Books and music are true friends.
3. Men, women and children work under conditions neither proper nor just.
4. We must educate and organize.
5. The workers on the farms and in the factories must be united.
6. Winter has come and the birds are going South.
7. We have been ignorant, therefore we have been exploited.
8. We must learn before we can teach.
9. We do not understand the situation, because we do not know the facts.
10. Do you know whether these statements are true or false?

IT CAN BE DONE

Somebody said that it couldn't be done,
But he, with a chuckle, replied
That "maybe it couldn't," but he would be one
Who wouldn't say so till he tried.
So he buckled right in, with a trace of a grin
On his face. If he worried he hid it.
He started to sing as he tackled the thing
That couldn't be done—and he did it.

Somebody scoffed, "Oh, you'll never do that;
At least no one ever has done it."
But he took off his coat and he took off his hat,
And the first thing we knew he'd begun it;
With the lift of his chin, and a bit of a grin,
Without any doubting or quiddit,
He started to sing as he tackled the thing
That couldn't be done—and he did it.

There are thousands to tell you it can not be done;
There are thousands to prophesy failure;
There are thousands to point out to you, one by one,

The dangers that wait to assail you.
But buckle right in, with a lift of your chin,
Then take off your coat and go to it;
Just start in to sing as you tackle the thing
That "can not be done,"—and you'll do it.

INTERJECTIONS

56. There is another class of words which we use *with* sentences, but which are really not *parts* of the sentences. They are emotional expressions which seem to belong more to the natural language than to the invented language. For example:

Oh! You hurt me!
Aha! Now I have you.

Oh, used in this way, is very apt to sound like a groan, and *aha* like a shout of triumph. These words do not really belong in the construction of the sentence. The sentence would be complete without them, but they are thrown in to express the emotion which accompanies the thought. We call expressions such as these *interjections*. Interjection is from the Latin and means literally *thrown into the midst of*. It comes from the Latin word *inter*, which means *between*, and the Latin verb *jecto*, *to throw*, so it literally means *to throw between*.

Some of these words imitate sounds, as for example:

Bang! There goes another shot.
Ding-dong! There goes the first bell.

We do not use interjections very frequently in writing on scientific subjects that express deep thought, but you will find them often used in poetry,

fiction, oratory or any emotional writing. Therefore we have our definition of an interjection:

57. An interjection is an exclamatory word or phrase used to express feeling or to imitate some sound.

58. Following is a list of commonly used interjections. Use them in sentences of your own.

oh
hello
bravo
ahoy
aha
hurrah
bow wow
ssh
alas
hist
whirr
pshaw
fie
whoa
ding-dong
rub-a-dub

Exercise 6

Mark the interjections in the following sentences. Notice those which express emotion and those which imitate sound.

1. Oh! Is it possible.
2. Hurrah! We have good news at last.
3. Whirr! Whirr! goes the giant machine.
4. Come! Keep up your courage.
5. What! I cannot believe it.
6. Courage! We shall yet win.

7. Bravo! Let those words ring down the centuries.
8. Ding-dong! the bells ring out the hour!

SPELLING

LESSON 3

Since there are forty-two elementary sounds used in the formation of our words and only twenty-six letters to represent these sounds, some of these letters must necessarily represent more than one sound.

Of the forty-two elementary sounds, eighteen are vowel sounds, but we have only five vowels with which to represent these sounds, so each vowel has several different sounds.

Therefore we must have a key to pronunciation to indicate the various sounds which are represented by these letters used in forming the words. When you look up words in your dictionary you will find the vowels marked by certain signs to indicate the pronunciation. These signs are called diacritical marks.

The following table gives the diacritical marks for the vowels. Study this table and learn to pronounce the words you look up. When you have determined the correct pronunciation of the word, repeat it over to yourself aloud a number of times until you have accustomed your ear to the correct pronunciation.

Different dictionaries use different keys to pronunciation. This table is taken from the dictionary which we are using in connection with this course—Winston's New Universal Self-Pronouncing Dictionary.

Key to Pronunciation

ā as in *late*, *fade*.
ä as in *mar*, *father*.
ȧ as in *mask*, *dance*.
a as in *cat*, *had*.
aw as in *awl*, *fall*.
ē as in *he*, *feet*.
ẽ as in *her*, *verge*.

e as in *let*, *men*.
ī as in *line*, *time*.
i as in *tin*, *little*.
ō as in *vote*, *home*.
ô as in *orb*, *form*.
o as in *lot*, *odd*.
oi as in *oil*, *join*.
o͞o as in *moon*, *school*.
oo as in *cook*, *foot*.
ou as in *out*, *house*.
ū as in *mute*, *unit*.
u as in *nut*, *drum*.

The spelling lesson for this week is composed of words containing the different vowel sounds. Look up in your dictionary and mark all the *a's* in Monday's lesson, all the *e's* in Tuesday's lesson, all the *i's* in Wednesday's lesson, all the *o's* in Thursday's lesson, and all the *u's* in Friday's lesson. In Saturday's lesson note the use of *w* and *y* as vowels.

Monday

Pause
Adjective
Lazy
Quality
Advance

Tuesday

Resemble
Descend
Adverb
Interjection
Complete

Wednesday

Limit

Define
Distinct
Imprison
Civilize

Thursday

Form
Footsteps
Proof
Report
Common

Friday

Union
Under
Unusual
Summer
Commune

Saturday

Comply
Employ
Vowel
News
Lawful

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 4

Dear Comrade:

We are studying in this lesson a most interesting part of our language, the words that are the names of things. If we could trace these names of things and the order and time of their coming into the language of men we would have a progressive history of mankind. Way back yonder in the dim dawn of history, men lived upon fruit and nuts. They had no knowledge of the use of fire and could not use foods that required cooking. They communicated with one another by signs. Then they discovered fire and invented the bow and arrow. They could now use fish and flesh for food and they commenced to use articulate speech. This stage has been called the Middle Stage of Savagery. With the invention of the bow and arrow, began the third stage of savagery which merged into the first stage of barbarism with the invention of pottery.

There are three stages of barbarism before we come to the beginning of the era of civilization which begins with the use of the phonetic alphabet and the production of literary records. All tribes that have never attained the art of pottery are classed as savages and those who possess this art but have never attained a phonetic alphabet and the use of writing are classed as barbarians. Civilization began with the spoken and written language and it has been well said that all that separates us from savagery is a wall of books. It is upon the accumulated wisdom of the past that we build. Without this we would be helpless.

So these various names of things have come to us with developing evolving life. As the men of the past gained a knowledge of the use of fire, as they learned to bake the clay and make various utensils; to heat and forge the iron into weapons; to conquer nature in all her phases, to feed the race, to clothe the race, to shelter the race more adequately, our language has grown in volume, strength and beauty.

The study of words and their uses is of great importance to you. Master the few rules necessary and watch your words daily. We are living in an age full of wondrous things and yet many of us have almost as limited a vocabulary as the men of those bygone days, who had never dreamed of the marvels that are commonplace to us.

As you use your dictionary watch closely the meaning of the words and choose the words that most aptly express your ideas. Listen to good English spoken as often as you can. *Read* good English. Mark the difference between good and bad English and gradually you will find yourself using good English naturally and continually.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE

CLASSES OF NOUNS

59. We have learned that the words in a sentence are classified according to the work which each word does. The words which assert are called verbs; the words which are the names of things are called nouns. But now we shall see that these words are again divided into classes according to the *special* work which they perform. Just as we may gather the people of the world into one great class, the working class, then classify them according to the industry in which they work, thus some are farmers, some teachers, some factory workers; then each class may be subdivided according to the special work which they perform, as truck farmers, high school teachers, machinists, etc.

So we find that nouns are divided into classes according to their meaning in the sentence.

In the sentence, *Lincoln was a man of the people*, we have two nouns referring to the same person, *Lincoln* and *man*, but they are different kinds of names. The word *man* is a name that may apply to any one of a million persons but the name *Lincoln* applies to one person only. Some nouns, then, represent a thing as being of a certain kind or class, without showing which

particular one is meant. Other nouns are names given to designate a particular individual. These are called *common* and *proper* nouns.

60. A proper noun is a special name meant for only one person, place or thing.

All other nouns are common nouns.

A common noun is a name which belongs to all things of a class of objects.

Every proper noun should begin with a capital letter.

Indicate the proper nouns in the following list by drawing a line under the letters that ought to be capitals:

king
month
city
france
dog
virginia
war
wilson
november
doctor
colonel
napoleon
chicago
governor
independence day
freedom
ocean
atlantic ocean
thanksgiving
thanksgiving day
uncle william
thursday

week
general sherman
karl marx
union
labor
united mine workers
newspaper
the daily call

Write the special or *proper* names of several individuals in each of the following classes:—as city,—Chicago, New York, etc.

River, king, author, country, state, inventor, martyr, month, book, college.

COLLECTIVE NOUNS

61. Some nouns are the names of groups or collections of things and are called collective nouns.

Many soldiers taken together form collectively an *army*—a number of sheep form a *drove*. Many of these group or collective nouns will readily occur to your mind.

A collective noun is one that in the singular form, denotes a number of separate persons or things.

Exercise 1

Opposite each of the following collective nouns, write the name of the individuals represented by the collection; as an army of *soldiers*; a swarm of *bees*; a flock of *birds*.

A gang of.....
A committee of.....
A herd of.....
A drove of.....
A hive of.....

A corps of.....
A suite of.....
A group of.....
A class of.....
A multitude of.....

Fill the following blanks with appropriate collective nouns.

A.....of horses.
A.....of sailors.
A.....of wolves.
A.....of savages.
A.....of singers.
A.....of girls.
A.....of ships.
A.....of quail.
A.....of birds.
A.....of workers.

ABSTRACT NOUNS

62. When primitive man began to name the objects about him, doubtless he first named the things which he could see, hear, taste, smell and touch,—the objects which he could perceive by the five senses. Then gradually he came to understand that these objects had certain qualities which he could consider apart from the object itself.

He hunted among the stones to find those which were suitable for making his arrow-heads. For this purpose he needed the hardest stone which he could find, so *hardness* became something which he could think of as something apart from the object itself.

He saw the men about him and found a name for them. Then he knew that some men were stronger than others, so *strength* was a quality which he could consider apart from the man himself.

These men performed certain actions; they ran, they climbed,—so *running* and *climbing* became actions which he could think of as something apart

from any individual.

He noted too that men lived in certain conditions; for example, some men were free, some were slaves, so he came to think of *slavery* and *freedom* as conditions which could be thought of as something apart from the individual.

So we draw away, or separate certain ideas; the *quality* from the thing which has it and the *action* from the thing which does it and the *condition* from the thing which is in it. These nouns which are used to describe these qualities, actions or conditions are called *abstract* nouns. Abstract is a word derived from the Latin *abs*, *away from*, and *tractus*, *drawn*, so it literally means *drawn away from*.

The nouns which are names of things which we can see, hear, taste, smell and touch or perceive by any of the five senses are called *concrete* nouns.

63. A concrete noun is the name of an object which may be perceived by one or more of the five senses.

An abstract noun is the name of a quality, a condition or an action.

64. You remember we found in the study of adjectives that we have a class of adjectives which are used to describe the qualities of objects, as for example—*good*, *noble*, *honest*, *true*, *wise*, etc. Since abstract nouns are the names of qualities, many of our abstract nouns are formed from adjectives. Study carefully the following list of adjectives and nouns. Note that the word is an *adjective* when it is used with a noun to *describe* certain qualities. It is a *noun* when it is used by itself to *name* that quality.

	Adjectives	**Abstract Nouns**
1.	honest	honesty
2.	pure	purity
3.	true	truth
4.	strong	strength
5.	wise	wisdom

6.	good	goodness
7.	bold	boldness
8.	just	justice
9.	silent	silence
10.	wide	width
11.	patient	patience
12.	stupid	stupidity

65. You will notice that another use of abstract nouns is to name actions. The verb is the part of speech which expresses action, therefore many abstract nouns are formed from verbs. Notice the following list:

	Verbs	**Abstract Nouns**
1.	learn	learning
2.	invent	invention
3.	choose	choice
4.	defend	defense
5.	try	trial
6.	judge	judgment
7.	read	reading
8.	please	pleasure
9.	elect	election
10.	move	motion

66. An abstract noun is also the name of a condition. These nouns are derived from the concrete noun which is the name of the person or thing which is *in* the condition.

Concrete Nouns	**Abstract Nouns**

1.	slave	slavery
2.	friend	friendship
3.	thief	theft
4.	man	manhood
5.	child	childhood
6.	leader	leadership
7.	hero	heroism
8.	martyr	martyrdom

Exercise 2

Form abstract nouns from the following adjectives, verbs and nouns.

long
simple
rapid
lovely
loyal
fresh
prove
sing
run
behave
believe
reflect
write
child
agent
infant
rascal
clerk
president
coward

NUMBER FORM

67. So we find that we classify our nouns according to the special work which they do. Now sometimes we find it necessary to change the form of the noun to make it express our thought. Thus we say, *book*, *man*, *boy*, *knife*, when we wish to express the idea of only one of each object mentioned. But when we wish to express the idea of more than one of them, we say, *books*, *men*, *boys*, *knives*.

We say, *The boy calls*; *the boys call*. The form of the noun *boy* is changed by adding an *s* to it. The meaning has also changed. *Boy* denotes one lad; *boys* denotes two or more lads. Any change in form and meaning of words is called *inflection*. The change to denote more than one object is called *number*. The word *boy*, denoting *one* is in the *singular number*; the word *boys*, denoting *more than one* is in the *plural number*.

68. Inflection is a change in the form of a word to denote a different application or use.

Number is the form of a noun which shows whether it denotes one or more than one.

The singular number denotes one thing.

The plural number denotes more than one thing.

There are a few rules governing the formation of plurals which we must know, and these rules are of great assistance in correct spelling.

69. Most nouns form their plural by adding *s*—thus:

boat	day	book	boy
boats	days	books	boys

Long ago in early English all plurals were formed by adding *es*, and you will read in the first translation of the Bible, for instance, such words as

bird-es, *cloud-es*. Later the *e* was dropped and *s* added to the singular without an increase of syllables. But when the singular ends in an *s* sound, the original syllable *es* is retained, for two hissing sounds will not unite.

70. So nouns ending in *s*, *x*, *z*, *sh* or soft *ch*, form the plural by adding *es* to the singular. These words end with a sound so much like that of *s* that we cannot pronounce the plural easily without making another syllable. Thus:

class	tax	topaz	wish	ditch
classes	taxes	topazes	wishes	ditches

71. In words ending with the *s* sound but with a final *e*, only *s* is added to form the plural, but in pronouncing the word we then have two syllables, thus:

house	place	size	cage	niche
houses	places	sizes	cages	niches

72. Letters, figures, signs, etc., are made plural by adding an apostrophe and the letter *s* ('s), thus:

Cross your t's and dot your i's.
Do you know the table of 4's?

While most of our nouns form their plural in this regular way by adding *s* or *es*, there are some nouns that form their plural by some other change in the form of the word.

73. Notice the following list of words and their plurals:

fly
flies
city
cities

key
keys
day
days
story
stories
enemy
enemies
tray
trays
boy
boys

These nouns all end in *y*, yet they form the plural differently. Some simply add *s* and the rest change the *y* to *i* and add *es*. Can you discover the reason?

Wherever the *y* is preceded by a vowel, as *e* in *key*, *a* in *tray*, *o* in *boy*, the plural is formed by adding *s*. But when the *y* is preceded by a consonant, as *l* in *fly*, *r* in *story*, *t* in *city*, and *m* in *enemy*, the *y* is changed to *i* and *es* added in forming the plural.

If the singular ends in *y* after a consonant, change *y* to *i* and add *es* in the plural.

74. There are thirteen nouns ending in *f* and three in *fe* which form the plural in *ves*. They are:

beef	beeves
calf	calves
elf	elves
half	halves
leaf	leaves
loaf	loaves
self	selves
sheaf	sheaves

shelf	shelves
staff	staves
thief	thieves
wharf	wharves
wolf	wolves
knife	knives
life	lives
wife	wives

All other nouns in *f* or *fe* are regular; adding only *s*, to form the plural.

75. About forty nouns ending in *o* after a consonant form the plural in *es*. The most common ones are:

buffalo
cargo
potato
tomato
negro
veto
cargo
echo
calico
embargo
hero
mulatto
mosquito
motto
tornado
volcano
torpedo
flamingo

Most nouns ending in *o* form the plural regularly, adding only *s*, as *pianos*, *banjos*, *cameos*, etc.

76. A few words form their plurals by a change in the word and without adding *s* or *es*.

The most common of these words are:

man	men
goose	geese
ox	oxen
woman	women
foot	feet
mouse	mice
brother	brethren
tooth	teeth
child	children
louse	lice

77. Proper nouns, when made plural, generally follow the same rule as common nouns. Thus we write:

> All the Smiths, the Joneses, both the Miss Johnsons, one of the Dr. Davidsons, and the Mrs. Wilsons, were present.

But to prevent the confusion and misunderstanding which might arise in changing the form of a proper noun, we do not change its form in writing the plurals; for example:

> There were eight Henrys, kings of England.
> The two Marys reigned in the kingdom.

It would be confusing to say *eight Henries*, the *two Maries*.

The title is made plural when several are referred to, thus:

Mr. Hayes	The Messrs. Hayes
Miss Smith	The Misses Smith

78. The title is made plural when used with several names, thus:

Messrs. Brown and White.
Generals Lee and Grant.
Drs. Long and Larson.

79. In the case of nouns formed of two or more words, when the compound word is so familiar that the parts are not thought of separately the *s* is added to the whole compound word, as *four-in-hands*; *forget-me-nots*; *court-yards*; *spoonfuls*; *green-houses*; etc. But when one of the parts is more important than the others, the *s* is added to the more important part, thus:

mothers-in-law
commanders-in-chief
hangers-on
men-of-war
by-standers
attorneys-at-law
passers-by
step-sons

80. We have many words in our language taken from other languages. They do not form the plural in these languages as we do, and some of these words retain their foreign plurals. Some of the most commonly used of these nouns are the following:

Singular	**Plural**
alumnus	alumni
analysis	analyses
axis	axes

datum	data
erratum	errata
ellipsis	ellipses
appendix	appendices
bacterium	bacteria
basis	bases
crisis	crises
parenthesis	parentheses
radius	radii
terminus	termini
hypothesis	hypotheses
larva	larvae
madame	mesdames
memorandum	memoranda
phenomenon	phenomena
stratum	strata
thesis	theses

81. The following nouns are treated as singular: *news*, *pains* (meaning care), *acoustics*, *mathematics*, *economics*, *ethics*, *molasses*, *physics*, *politics*, and other nouns ending in *ics* except *athletics*. With these always use the s-form of the verb. For example:

The news *is* distorted. Not, The news *are* distorted.
Economics *is* an important study. Not, Economics *are*, etc.

82. The following nouns are always plural:

alms
annals
amends
antipodes

bellows
billiards
clothes
dregs
eaves
fireworks
hysterics
measles
mumps
matins
nippers
nuptials
oats
premises
proceeds
pincers
riches
rickets
suds
scissors
thanks
tidings
tongs
trousers
vitals
victuals
vespers

With all these nouns always use the form of the verb which is used with the plural subject. Thus:

Alms are given.
Riches are easily lost.

83. The following nouns have the same form for both plural and singular, *corps*, *cannon*, *deer*, *grouse*, *heathen*, *hose*, *means*, *odds*, *series*, *sheep*,

species, *swine*, *vermin*, *wages*. You can tell whether the singular or plural is meant by the meaning of the sentence. For example:

The cannon is loaded. Here we are speaking of *one* cannon.

The cannon used in the war are of tremendous size. Here we know are meant all the big guns used in the war.

When you say, *The sheep is lost*, we know you mean *one* sheep, but when you say, *The sheep are in the pasture*, we know you mean the entire drove.

84. When preceded by a numeral, the following nouns have the same form for both singular and plural. Without the numerals, the plural is formed by the adding of *s*; *brace*, *couple*, *dozen*, *hundred*, *pair*, *score*, *thousand*, *yoke*. For example:

Thousands enlisted.
Three thousand enlisted.
Dozens came at my call.
Two dozen came when I called.

GENDER

85. All of the changes we have studied so far have been for the purpose of indicating number; but among the nouns that name living beings, many change to show to which sex the object named belongs. These nouns change in form to distinguish between the masculine and the feminine. This is called *gender*.

Gender is the distinction in words that denotes sex.

The nouns that denote females are called feminine nouns.

The nouns that denote males are called masculine nouns.

86. The feminine form is generally made by the addition of *ess* to the masculine form. Thus:

prince	princess
master	mistress
host	hostess
count	countess
tiger	tigress
lion	lioness
actor	actress
god	goddess

87. Names of things without sex are, of course, of neither gender, and are called *neuter nouns*. Neuter means literally *neither*. Such nouns as *mountain*, *iron*, *river*, *chair*, are neuter.

Sometimes the feminine is an entirely different word from the masculine. Thus:

king	queen
lord	lady
man	woman
youth	maiden
sir	madam
stag	hind

88. Many nouns that denote living beings apply alike to male and female, and are said to be of *common gender*. As woman enters more and more into the business world and pursues the same occupations as man, the change in form to denote the feminine is used less frequently, and what we have called the masculine form is used for both sexes, thus:

Poet, *waiter*, *doctor*, *editor*—these nouns are used for both men and women.

POSSESSIVE FORM

89. There is just one more change made in the form of a noun, and that is when we wish to show who or what owns or possesses a thing. Thus we write:

John's book.
The boy's hat.

And since this form of the noun denotes possession, it is called the *possessive form*. Some grammarians call this the possessive case.

The possessive form of nouns is made by adding an apostrophe and *s*, ('s); thus, *day's*, *lady's*, *girl's*, *clerk's*.

To plural nouns ending in *s* add only an apostrophe; thus, *days'*, *ladies'*, *girls'*, *clerks'*.

When plural nouns do not end in *s*, their possessive forms are made by adding the apostrophe and *s*, the same as singular nouns, thus:

They make *men's* and *women's* shoes.

90. In words which end with a sound that resembles that of *s*, the apostrophe with *s* forms an additional syllable. Thus:

James's (pronounced James-ez.)
Mr. Lynch's (pronounced Lynch-ez.)

The only exception to the rule occurs when the addition of another *s* would make too many hissing sounds, then we add the apostrophe alone. Thus:

For goodness' sake.
In Jesus' name.

91. In forming the possessive of compound nouns, the possessive sign is always placed at the end, thus:

My son-in-law's sister.
The man-of-war's cannon.

92. When we wish to show that a thing belongs to two or more persons who are joint owners of it, we add the possessive sign to the last word only, thus:

Carson, Price and Scott's store.
Mason and Hamlin's pianos.

If it is a separate ownership that we wish to denote, we place the possessive sign after each name, thus:

Bring me John's and Mary's books.
Lee's and Grant's armies met in battle.

Remember that the noun has just *three* changes in form, one for the plural number, one to denote gender and one for the possessive form. Watch carefully your own language and that of your friends and note if these changes are correctly made.

Exercise 3

Write the plural form of each of the following:

ax
beef
chief
hero
knife
T
hoof
man-of-war
axis
basis
cherry

leaf
son-in-law
Mr. Smith
thief
Doctor Wood
alley
buffalo
chimney
staff
Frenchman
Miss Brown
ox
spoonful
alto
calf
cargo
two
3
tooth
foot
turkey

Exercise 4

Underscore the nouns in the following:

How many abstract nouns?

How many concrete?

How many singular?

How many plural?

FIVE AND FIFTY
Charlotte Perkins Gilman

If fifty men did all the work
And gave the price to five;
And let those five make all the rules—
You'd say the fifty men were fools,
Unfit to be alive.

And if you heard complaining cries
From fifty brawny men,
Blaming the five for graft and greed,
Injustice, cruelty indeed—
What would you call them then?

Not by their own superior force
Do five on fifty live,
But by election and assent—
And privilege of government—
Powers that the fifty give.

If fifty men are really fools—
And five have all the brains—
The five must rule as now we find;
But if the fifty have the mind—
Why don't they take the reins?

Exercise 5

Select all the nouns in the following. Write their singular, plural and possessive forms. Decide whether they are abstract or concrete, common or proper or collective, masculine, feminine or neuter.

Brother!

Whoever you are, wherever you are on all the earth, I greet you.

I extend to you my right hand.

I make you a pledge.

Here is my pledge to you:—

I refuse to kill your father. I refuse to slay your mother's son. I refuse to plunge a bayonet into the breast of your sister's brother. I refuse to slaughter your sweetheart's lover. I refuse to murder your wife's husband. I refuse to butcher your little child's father. I refuse to wet the earth with blood and blind kind eyes with tears. I refuse to assassinate you and then hide my stained fists in the folds of *any* flag.

Will you thus pledge me and pledge all the members of our working class?

—*Kirkpatrick.*

SPELLING

LESSON 4

Some of our consonants also have more than one sound. We have also certain combinations of consonants which represent one sound. This combination of two letters to represent one sound is called a digraph, as *gh*, in *cough*, *ch* in *church*. A digraph may either be a combination of two consonants or of two vowels or of a vowel and a consonant. The following table contains the consonants which have more than one sound:

c—k as in *cat*
c—s as in *vice*
g—j as in *ginger*
g—*hard* as in *go*
s—sh as in *sure*
s—zh as in *usual*
s—*soft* as in *also*
s—z as in *does*
x—*soft* as in *extra*
x—gz as in *exist*

The following table gives the digraphs most commonly used:

ng—as in *ring*, *tongue*
ch—as in *church* and *much*
ch—k as in *chasm*
ch—sh as in *chagrin*
th—as in *then*, *those*
th—as in *thin* and *worth*
ce—sh as in *ocean*
ci—sh as in *special*
dg—j as in *edge*
gh—f as in *rough*
ph—f as in *sylph*
qu—kw as in *quart*
qu—k as in *conquer*

sh—as in *shall*
si—sh as in *tension*
si—zh as in *vision*
ti—sh as in *motion*

The use of these digraphs gives us a number of additional sounds. Notice the use of the consonants which have more than one sound and also the digraphs in the spelling lesson for the week. Mark the consonants and digraphs.

Monday

Commence
Certain
General
Gradual
Sugar

Tuesday

Soldier
Season
Pleasure
Exact
Exercise

Wednesday

Singular
Chemistry
Chapter
Machine
Changing

Thursday

Theory
Thither

Ocean
Racial
Budget

Friday

Philosophy
Enough
Quorum
Bouquet
Phonetic

Saturday

Permission
Asia
Attention
Marshall
Martial

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 5

Dear Comrade:

We want to say just a word about the lesson assignment. This has been arranged on a schedule of days merely to assist you in systematizing your time and making the most of the leisure at your disposal. It is not intended that you should slavishly follow it. We thoroughly believe in individuality and all that contributes toward its development. But we are also confident that many foolish things are done in the name of liberty. Whenever we set ourselves to the performance of any task we necessarily limit our activities in some other direction. Power comes by concentration of force. Whenever we combine with others for the accomplishment of any purpose, it becomes necessary to have some plan of action and we give and take for the end which we have in view. The musician because he follows the law of harmony in music has not given up his liberty. He has only found a new freedom which enables him to make glorious music where only discord reigned before. System in our work does not mean loss of liberty or of individuality but only finding a channel through which individuality can flow into the great ocean of real freedom.

So use this suggestive lesson assignment to meet your own need and find expression for your real individuality in full freedom.

This is the first of several lessons concerning verbs. The verb is perhaps the most difficult part of speech to thoroughly master, so do not be discouraged if there are some parts of this lesson you do not understand. Succeeding lessons will clear up these difficult points. Keep your eyes open as you read every day, and be careful of your spelling and pronunciation.

Some of us mis-spell the common words which we see and use every day. In a student's letter we recently noted that, with our letter before him in which the word was printed in large type and correctly spelled, he spelled College, *Colledge*.

Do not be satisfied with half-way things or less than that which is worthy of you. Demand the best for yourself. Read aloud this little verse from the Good Grey Poet, Walt Whitman:

"O, the joy of a manly self-hood;
To be servile to none, to defer to none, not to any tyrant known or unknown,
To walk with erect carriage, a step springy and elastic,
To look with calm gaze or with a flashing eye,
To speak with a full and sonorous voice out of a broad chest,
To confront with your personality all the other personalities of the earth."

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

THE WORD THAT ASSERTS

93. You remember when we studied sentences we found that we could not have a sentence without a verb or a word that asserts. The life of a sentence is the verb, for without the verb we cannot assert, question or command. It was on account of this importance that the Romans called the verb, *verbum*, which meant the word. Verbs, like nouns, are divided into classes.

94. In some of our sentences the verb alone is enough to make a complete assertion, but in other sentences we use verbs that need to be followed by one or more words to complete the assertion. Notice the following sentences:

The boy ran.
The boy found the ball.
The earth revolves.
The earth is round.

Do you notice any difference in the verbs used in these sentences? Notice that the verbs *ran* and *revolves* make the complete assertion about their subjects. Notice the verbs *found* and *is*. These are not complete without the addition of the words *ball* and *round*. If we say *The boy found*, *The earth is*, you at once ask, *The boy found WHAT? The earth is WHAT?* The sense is

incomplete without the addition of these words *ball* and *round*. A part of the thought is unexpressed; but when we say *The boy found the ball*, *The earth is round*, the sense is complete.

So we have two classes of verbs, *COMPLETE AND INCOMPLETE VERBS*.

95. An incomplete verb is one that requires the addition of one or more words to complete its meaning.

The word or words added to an incomplete verb to complete its meaning are called the complement.

A complete verb is one that requires no complement to complete its meaning.

96. You can readily tell when a verb is complete and when it is incomplete by asking the question *What?* If you put the question *what* after the verb, and it makes a sensible question the verb is *incomplete*. For example:

Farmers raise—*what?*
The employer discharged—*what?*
We were—*what?*
The earth is—*what?*

If the question *what?* does not make sense after the verb, then the verb is *complete*. For example:

The sun shines.
Water flows.
Men work.

The question *what* after these verbs would not make sense, as:

The sun shines—*what?*
Men work—*what?*
Water flows—*what?*

So these verbs are *complete* verbs.

97. The same verb, however, may be complete or incomplete, according to the way in which it is used. For example:

The corn grows.
The farmer grows corn.

In the sentence, *Corn grows*, *grows* is a complete verb. You could not say *The corn grows—what?* for it does not grow anything. It merely grows, and the verb *grows* in this sense is a complete verb. But in the sentence, *The farmer grows corn*, you are using the verb *grows* in a slightly different sense. It is an *incomplete verb*, for you do not mean, *The farmer grows*, but you mean that *the farmer grows CORN*.

Exercise 1

In the following sentences, underscore the complete verbs with one line, the incomplete with two lines. Ask the question *what?* after each verb to determine whether it is complete or incomplete.

He returned today.
He returned the book.
The rose smells sweet.
He smelled the rose.
The trees shake in the wind.
The wind shakes the trees.
The ship plows through the waves.
The farmer plows the field.
The birds sing sweetly.
They sang the Marseillaise.
He worries over the matter.
The matters worry him.
The table feels rough.
He feels the rough surface.
It tastes bitter.
He tasted the bitter dregs.

Exercise 2

Use the following verbs in sentences as both complete and incomplete verbs, as for example, *The snow melts. The sun melts the snow.*

melts
write
stopped
answer
rings
fall
see
strike

INCOMPLETE VERBS

98. Do you notice any difference in the two verbs in the following sentences:

The boy found the ball.
The earth is round.

In the sentence, *The boy found the ball*, the word *ball* tells *what* the boy *found*. The verb *found* expresses action; it tells what the boy *does*. *Boy* is the subject of the action—the one who performs the action. The word *ball* is the *object* of the action. It shows the receiver of the action. In the sentence, *The earth is round*, *is* does not express action. The earth is not doing anything, it simply *is*. The verb *is* expresses a state or condition and is incomplete, for you do not know what state or condition is expressed until we add the other word or words which describe the state or condition.

Notice the following sentences:

The earth is round.
The earth is our home.
The earth is a sphere.
The earth is large.

The words *round*, *sphere*, *home* and *large*, describe the earth which is the subject of the verb *is*.

99. So we have two classes of incomplete verbs, the verbs that express action and the verbs that express state or condition. The verbs which express action are called *transitive* verbs. Transitive is a word derived from the Latin, and means literally *passing over*.

100. So a transitive verb describes an action which *passes over* from the subject to the object. As for example in the sentence, *The player struck the ball*, *struck* is a transitive verb—a verb of action—describing the action of the subject, *player*, which passes over to the object, *ball*. Therefore we have our definition of a transitive verb:

A transitive verb is one that has a complement showing who or what receives the action expressed by the verb.

The complement or word that denotes the receiver of the action expressed by a transitive verb is called the object.

When you look up the meaning of verbs in your dictionary, you will find some verbs marked *v.i.*, and some verbs marked *v.t. V.t.* is the abbreviation for *verb transitive*. Whenever you find a verb marked *v.t.*, you know that it is a transitive verb, a verb of action, one which requires an object to complete its meaning. *V.i.* is the abbreviation for *verb intransitive*. Some grammarians use the term *intransitive* to include both *complete* and *copulative* verbs. We have used the terms complete and incomplete because they are much simpler and clearer in describing the two general classes of verbs, but you will remember that when you find verbs marked *v.i.* in the dictionary that these include *complete* and *copulative* verbs.

101. Now notice these sentences:

The earth is round.
The earth is a sphere.

In these sentences the verb *is* does not express action, but *connects* or *couples* the complements *round* and *sphere* with the subject *earth*. Verbs used in this way are called *copulative* verbs, from the word *copula*, which means to *complete* or to *connect*. The words *round* and *sphere* are not the objects of the verb, for they do not describe the receiver of any action. They

are the words which describe the state or condition expressed in the verb *is*, and are called the attribute complement of the verb.

You note that this complement may be either an adjective or a noun. In the sentence, *The earth is round*, the adjective, *round*, is used as the complement; in the sentence, *The earth is a sphere*, the noun, *sphere*, is used as the complement. So we have our definition of copulative verbs.

102. Verbs that express state or condition are called copulative verbs.

The word or words that complete the meaning of an incomplete verb expressing state or condition, are called the complement, or attribute complement.

There are only a few of these copulative verbs. All forms of the verb, *be*; like *am*, *is*, *are*, *was* and *were*, and the verb phrases like *must be*, *can be*, *will be*, *shall be*, *have been*, *had been*, etc.; and the verbs *seem*, *appear*, *become*, *look*, *feel*, *taste*, *sound* and *smell*, are the principal copulative verbs.

Exercise 3

Study carefully the following sentences. Note whether the complement of the copulative verb is an adjective or a noun. Draw one line under each *adjective* used as a complement and two lines under each *noun* used as a complement.

The day is beautiful.
I am weary and tired.
The men were soldiers.
The tasks seem endless.
All men must be free.
The workers have been slaves.
The burden becomes heavier every day.
The children feel happy and care-free.
Evolution is the development of life.
Grammar is the study of words and their use.

Knowledge is freedom.
The music sounds sweet on the midnight air.
He looks well today.
The dregs taste bitter.
The incense smells sweet.

Exercise 4

Complete the following sentences by adding an object or a complement.

1. Perseverance in your study will bring.....
2. The great need of the working class is.....
3. We shall never acknowledge.....
4. By the sweat of no other's brow shalt thou eat.....
5. The Revolutionary fathers founded.....
6. The workers demand.....
7. Labor's only road to freedom is.....
8. Life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness are.....
9. If you struggle, you will gain.....
10. An incomplete verb requires.....
11. The complement of a transitive verb is called.....
12. The complement of a copulative verb may be either.....or.....

103. There are two classes of verbs, complete and incomplete.

A complete verb is one that requires no complement.

An incomplete verb is one that requires a complement to complete its meaning.

Incomplete verbs are of two kinds: 1. Those that express action; 2. Those that express state or condition.

Incomplete verbs that express action are called transitive verbs.

Incomplete verbs that express state or condition are called copulative verbs.

The complement or the word that denotes the receiver of the action expressed in a transitive verb is called the object.

The word or words that complete the meaning of a copulative verb are called the complement, or attribute complement.

The same verb may be complete or incomplete, according to the way in which it is used.

Exercise 5

In the following sentences draw a single line under the complete verbs and a double line under the incomplete verbs. Then determine whether the incomplete verbs are transitive or copulative verbs, and draw a line through the object or the complement.

1. Some plants are poisonous.
2. A rolling stone gathers no moss.
3. Perseverance brings success.
4. Delays are dangerous.
5. A man's actions show his character.
6. He looks well and feels stronger.
7. The snows come and the flowers fade.
8. Labor creates all wealth.
9. Labor must be free.
10. The boy writes well.
11. The man wrote a letter.
12. The skies are clear.
13. The hail destroyed the wheat.
14. No man is ever too old to learn.
15. Competition makes enemies.
16. Co-operation makes friends.
17. Competition breeds hatred.
18. Co-operation breeds good will.
19. Competition ensures war.
20. Co-operation ensures peace.

Exercise 6

In the following quotation all of the verbs are printed in *italics*. Determine whether they are complete or incomplete verbs. If incomplete, determine whether they are transitive or copulative verbs. Draw a line under the object of every transitive verb and two lines under the complement of every copulative verb. Remember that sometimes we have several words combined into a verb phrase and used as a single verb. Watch for the verb phrases in the following, as for example: *must be*, in the sentence, *Labor must be free*.

> The history of man *is* simply the history of slavery. Slavery *includes* all other crimes. It *degrades* labor and *corrupts* leisure. With the idea that labor *is* the basis of progress *goes* the truth that labor *must be* free. The laborer *must be* a free man.
>
> There *is* something wrong in a government where honesty *wears* a rag and rascality *dons* a robe; where the loving *eat* a crust while the infamous *sit* at banquets.
>
> *Talk* about equal opportunity! Capitalism *ties* a balloon to the shoulders of the rich child; it *ties* a ball and chain to the feet of the poor child; and *tells* them that they *have* an equal opportunity!
>
> Once the master *hunted* for the slaves, now the slave *hunts* for a master.

Exercise 7

Mark the verbs in the following poem. Often in poetry words are omitted which in strict grammatical construction should be expressed. As for example in the fourth line of this poem *which are*, is omitted before the word *bought*. In prose this would read, *The pews which are bought by the profits*, etc. So the word *bought* is a part of the verb phrase, *are bought*. In the last line of the third stanza there is another omission before the word *planning*. The meaning is, *while they are planning slaughter*. *Planning* is a part of the verb phrase *are planning*. And in the last line *is* is omitted before the word *beloved*. *Is beloved* is the verb phrase. Determine whether the verbs in this poem are complete, transitive or copulative, and mark the objects and the complements of the transitive and the copulative verbs.

WHO IS A CHRISTIAN?

Ella Wheeler Wilcox

"Who is a Christian in this Christian land
Of many churches and of lofty spires?
Not he who sits in soft, upholstered pews
Bought by the profits of unholy greed,
And looks devotion while he thinks of gain.

Not he who sends petitions from the lips
That lie to-morrow in the street and mart.
Not he who fattens on another's toil,
And flings his unearned riches to the poor
Or aids the heathen with a lessened wage,
And builds cathedrals with an increased rent.

Christ, with Thy great, sweet, simple creed of love,
How must Thou weary of earth's "Christian" clans,
Who preach salvation through Thy saving blood
While planning slaughter of their fellow men.

Who is a Christian? It is one whose life
Is built on love, on kindness and on faith;

Who holds his brother as his other self;
Who toils for justice, equity and peace,
And hides no aim or purpose in his heart
That will not chord with universal good.
Though he be a pagan, heretic or Jew
That man is Christian and beloved of Christ."

SPELLING

LESSON 5

We often have two vowels used in the same syllable as a single sound, as *ou* in *round*, *oi* in *oil*, etc.

A diphthong is a union of two vowels to represent a single sound different from that of either alone.

Sometimes we have two vowels used together in a combination which is really not a diphthong for they do not unite in a different sound. Only one of the vowels is used and the other is silent as *ai* in *rain*, *oa* in *soap*, etc.

The most common diphthongs are:

ou as in *sound*.
ow as in *owl*.
oi as in *oil*.
oy as in *boy*.

In the spelling lesson for this week mark the words in which the combination of vowels forms a diphthong. In some of the words the combination of vowels does not form a diphthong for only one of the vowels is sounded. Draw a line through the silent letter.

Monday

Straight
Aisle
Search
Breadth
Defeat

Tuesday

Exploit

Ceiling
Height
People
Feudal

Wednesday

Brought
Shoulder
Group
Compound
Trouble

Thursday

Royal
Coarse
Course
Broad
Flower

Friday

Laughter
Haunted
Plaid
Invoice
Chair

Saturday

Guide
Build
Grieve
Sieve
Renown

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 6

Dear Comrade:

We have this week another lesson in verbs. Do not be discouraged if you do not understand it all at once. Little by little, it will grow clearer and you will master this important word.

The verb may seem involved to you, but a little application will soon make it clear. It is the most important word in the language to master. It almost seems as though the verb were a living, thinking thing. It changes outward form to accommodate itself to its subject in the number form and person form change. If it is entertaining a subject in the singular it adopts one dress; if it is entertaining a plural subject, more than one, the verb wears a different dress.

So also if the subject is the first person, the person speaking, or the second person, the person spoken to, or the third person, the person spoken of, the verb accommodates itself to the subject. The verb is the most agreeable thing for it changes its form to agree with its subject! So watch your verb and see that it agrees.

Refer constantly to your list of irregular verbs given in this lesson for we so often make mistakes in the use of these verb forms.

Then, too, the verb kindly changes its form to accommodate itself to the time of the action—action in the present, in the past, in the future—action completed before the present time—before some time past—or before some future time—and action progressing and not yet completed in the present, in the past or in the future. Then it can also change to show whether its subject is acting or being acted upon. Isn't the verb a wonderfully accommodating member of the co-operative commonwealth of words?

And can you not see hidden under all this, a marvelous development in the intellectual needs of men from the day of the savage's signs and grunts to

the day when we can express such shades of meaning? This tool of expression, language, has had a wonderful evolution side by side with the evolution of the other tools by which man expresses his creative genius; from the forked stick with which man scratched the soil to the great machine-driven plow of today; from the simple threshing flail to the monster threshing machine of modern times.

There is nothing so wonderful as man's ability to express himself. Add a little to your knowledge every day and the sum total will soon surprise you.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

INFLECTION—CHANGES IN FORM

104. You remember that nouns have certain changes in form to indicate changes in use. Verbs also have several changes in form to correspond with changes in their use or meaning. Notice the following sentences:

I think.
I thought.
I work.
I worked.

What is the difference in the meaning of *I think* and *I thought*? of *I work* and *I worked*? When we say, *I think*, or *I work*, we mean that the action is now, to-day, in the present; but when we say, *I thought*, or *I worked*, we mean that *now* is not the time of the action, but that the action was performed sometime in the past. So we have a change in the verb form to denote *time*. The simple form of the verb, like *think* or *work*, is used to denote *present time*. When we wish to express *past time* we do it by changing the form of the verb. Now note the following:

I, We, You, They, The men	}	call send fall

		bring hide
He, She, It, The man	}	calls sends falls brings hides

Now let us write this in another way.

Present Time

	Singular			*Plural*		
1st person—	I call.			We call.		
2nd person—	You call.			You call.		
3rd person	He She It The man	}	calls.	They, or The men	}	call.

105. You notice in this table we use the expressions *first person*, *second person*, and *third person*. *I* and *we* indicate the person or persons speaking and are called the first person. *You* indicates the person or persons spoken to and is called the second person. *He*, *she*, *it*, *they*, and the person or persons or things spoken of, are called the third person.

We use the word *you* when speaking to one or more than one now-a-days. It used to be that when speaking to a single person, people said *thou*, and in speaking to two or more they said *you*. But we today have dropped the old form *thou*, and use *you* for both singular and plural.

106. Now note, in the above table, that there is only one form change in the verb, and this is in the *third person singular*. We say *I call*, *You call*, *We*

call, *They*, or *The men call*, but we say *He*, or *the man calls*, in speaking of one person or thing. So we change the form of the verb with any subject which denotes the third person and the singular number. This form is made by adding *s* to the simple form of the verb, therefore we may call it the *s-form* because it always ends in *s*.

Remember that this *s-form* is used to express present time with a third person, singular subject. *BE CAREFUL NOT TO USE THIS FORM WITH ANY PLURAL SUBJECT.* There is no other change in the verb form in expressing the present time in any verb, except in the verb *be*.

107. This little verb *be* is one of the most troublesome verbs in our language, and since it is used in forming verb phrases, it will be well to commit the following table to memory. Watch closely your use of this bothersome little word. Note that it has a change in form for the *first person singular*, as well as for the third person singular. All other verbs have just the one change, the *s-form* for the third person singular. The verb *be* has a form also to use with the first person singular, the pronoun *I*.

Present Time	**Past Time**
Singular	*Singular*
1. I am.	1. I was.
2. You are.	2. You were.
3. He is.	3. He was.
Plural	*Plural*
1. We are.	1. We were.
2. You are.	2. You were.
3. They are.	3. They were.

108. The present time form is the form which expresses present time. It is expressed by the simple form of the verb with the exception of the third person singular, which is expressed by the *s-form*.

PAST TIME

109. To express *past time* we change the form of the verb. Notice the following:

I She He It The man	}	called sent fell brought hid	We You They The men	}	called sent fell brought hid

Notice that these various forms of the verb which express past time are all made by changes from the simple form, which expresses present time. You will also notice that these five verbs used in the above table all form their past time form in different ways. For example, *call* adds *ed*; *send* changes the final letter from *d* to *t*; *fall* changes the vowel in the middle of the word from *a* to *e*; *bring* changes both the vowel and the final letter from *bring* to *brought*; *hide* drops the final letter *e*.

110. Verbs whose past time forms are made by adding *d* or *ed* to the simple form are called regular verbs.

Verbs whose past time forms are made in some other way than by adding *d* or *ed* are called irregular verbs.

111. There are about two hundred of these irregular verbs which form their past time in the following ways:

1. By change in the vowel letter, as *fall*, *fell*; *write*, *wrote*; *see*, *saw*; *sing*, *sang*; *come*, *came*.

2. By dropping the final vowel; as *hide*, *hid*; *slide*, *slid*; *bite*, *bit*.

3. By dropping a vowel from the middle of the word; as *bleed*, *bled*; *feed*, *fed*; *lead*, *led*.

4. By changing the final letter or letters; as *send*, *sent*; *lose*, *lost*; *spend*, *spent*.

5. By changing the vowel and final letters; as *bring*, *brought*; *seek*, *sought*; *catch*, *caught*.

6. By changing the vowel sound and adding *t* or *d*; as *sleep*, *slept*; *feel*, *felt*; *flee*, *fled*.

There are some irregular forms which we must learn and be exceedingly careful in their use. Study the list in this lesson.

Exercise 1

Write the *present* and *past* time forms of the following verbs as the verb *think* is written in the table given below.

think
ride
have
give
write
ask
make
try
speak
run
see
do

Present Time	**Past Time**
Singular	*Singular*
1. I think	1. I thought
2. You think	2. You thought
3. He thinks	3. He thought

Plural	*Plural*
1. We think	1. We thought
2. You think	2. You thought
3. They think	3. They thought

112. Be very careful not to use the *s-form* except for the third person singular. Be especially careful in the use of different forms of the verb *be*. It is in the use of this verb that we so frequently make mistakes. Watch your own language and the conversation of your friends and note these mistakes and correct them in your own mind. These common blunders in the use of English mark us as careless or uneducated by everyone who hears us speak. We have fallen into bad habits oftentimes and make these mistakes when we know better, and only constant watchfulness for a time can overcome the habit. After a time we learn to speak correctly without effort, and then these mistakes made by others offend the ear like a false note in music.

Exercise 2

Cross out the wrong form in the following:

They *was—were* not here.
The clouds *has—have* gathered.
People *is—are* indifferent.
The train *was—were* on time.
The men *was—were* armed.
Our school building *is—are* inadequate.
The workers *earn—earns* their wages.
The voters *elect—elects* the President.
They *do—does* as they please.
We *was—were* there on time.

DOING DOUBLE WORK

113. We have found now three forms of the verb, the *simple form*, the *s-form*, and the *past time form*, and, in addition, the *I-form*, or the first person

form of the verb *be*. There are no other real verb forms, but there are two other changes made in the form of the verb when it ceases to be used as the predicate, the asserting word of the sentence, and becomes, in part, another part of speech.

Notice in the following sentences:

Making shoes is his work.
He enjoys making shoes.

In each of these sentences the word *making*, from the verb *make*, is used as a noun. In the first, *Making shoes is his work*, *making* is used as the subject of the sentence. In the second, *He enjoys making shoes*, *making* is used as the object of the verb *enjoys*. But *making* is not like the ordinary noun, for it has an object *making—what?—making shoes*. *Shoes* is the object of the action expressed in *making*. A noun never takes an object; so while the word *making* is used as a noun, it is also partly a verb. It is a form of the verb used as a noun, but keeping in part its verb nature, partaking of the nature of two parts of speech at the same time.

Hence these forms of the verb are called *participles*. Participle means *partaker*.

The participle may also be used as an adjective. Notice the following:

The *crying* child came toward us.
The *rescuing* party arrived.

In these sentences *crying* and *rescuing* are formed from the verbs *cry* and *rescue*, and are used as adjectives to describe the noun *child* and the noun *party*. So a participle is a mixed part of speech. It is partially a verb, but is not a true verb. A true verb is always used as the predicate, the asserting word in the sentence and *always* has a subject. The participle *never* has a subject; it may have an object, but not a subject.

114. There are two forms of the participle. The active form or the present form as it is sometimes called, ends in *ing*, as, *waiting*, *walking*, *saying*. It

expresses action, existence, or possession as going on at the time mentioned in the sentence.

115. The other form of the participle is the passive form or the past form of the participle. This ends in *ed* in the regular verbs, and has various forms in the irregular verbs. It is formed in regular verbs by adding *d* or *ed* to the simple form, hence has the same form as the past time form, as for example, present time form, *call*—past time form, *called*—past participle, *called*. You will find the past participle forms of irregular verbs in the list of irregular verbs given in this lesson, as for example—present time form, *go* —past time form, *went*—past participle, *gone*.

116. You will find as we study the verb phrases in later lessons that these participles are used in forming verb phrases. As for example:

He is coming.
They are trying.
He has gone.

A participle is a word derived from a verb, partaking of the nature of a verb and also of an adjective or a noun.

LET US SUM UP

117. Verbs have five form changes.

Simple	S-Form	Past Time	Present Part.	Past Part.
call	calls	called	calling	called
go	goes	went	going	gone

Exercise 3

Write in columns like the above the five forms of the following verbs:

do
try
give
hope
live
rob
have
think
sing
get
wave
lose
come
make

Exercise 4

Study carefully the following quotation. You will find in it all five of the form changes of the verb—*the present time form*, *the s-form*, *the past time form*, *the present participle* and *the past participle*. In the verb phrases *had been filled*, *has survived*, *has gone*, *has proved* and *be dismayed*, you will find the past participle used in forming the verb phrase. We will study these verb phrases in later lessons.

In the verb phrases, *was stumbling*, *was groping*, *is conquering*, *are carrying*, the present participle is used in forming the verb phrases. *Could reconcile* is also a verb phrase. We will study these verb phrases also in later lessons.

The present participles, *struggling*, *persevering* and *regaining* are used as adjectives. Study them carefully and find the words which they describe. The present participles *imagining*, *learning* and *suffering* are used as nouns. Note their use.

The past participles *rebuffed*, *self-reproached*, *discouraged* and *promised* are used as adjectives. Find the words which they modify. There are several

present time forms, several *past time forms*, and several *s-forms*. Find them and study carefully their usage.

OUT OF THE DARK

By Helen Keller

America's famous blind girl, who has come to see more than most people with normal eyes.

> Step by step my investigation of blindness *led* me into the industrial world. And what a world it *is*. I *faced* unflinchingly a world of facts—a world of misery and degradation, of blindness, crookedness, and sin, a world *struggling* against the elements, against the unknown, against itself. How *could* I *reconcile* this world of fact with the bright world of my *imagining*? My darkness *had been filled* with the light of intelligence, and, *behold*, the outer day-lit world *was stumbling*, *was groping* in social blindness. At first, I *was* most unhappy, but deeper study *restored* my confidence. By *learning* the *suffering* and burdens of men, I *became* aware as never before of the life-power which *has survived* the forces of darkness—the power which, though never completely victorious, *is* continuously *conquering*. The very fact that we *are* still carrying on the contest against the hosts of annihilation *proves* that on the whole the battle *has gone* for humanity. The world's great heart *has proved* equal to the prodigious undertaking which God *set* it. *Rebuffed*, but always *persevering*; *self-reproached*, but ever *regaining* faith; undaunted, tenacious, the heart of man *labors* towards immeasurably distant goals. *Discouraged* not by difficulties without, or the anguish of ages within, the heart *listens* to a secret voice that *whispers*: "*Be* not *dismayed*; in the future *lies* the *Promised* Land."

List of Irregular Verbs

Here is a list of the principal irregular verbs—the present and past time forms and the past participle are called the principal parts of a verb.

(Those marked with an *r* have also the regular form.)

Present T.	**Past T.**	**Past Part.**
abide	abode	abode
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke, *r*	awaked
be or am	was	been
bear	bore	borne

beat	beat	beaten
begin	began	begun
bend	bent, *r*	bent, *r*
bereave	bereft, *r*	bereft, *r*
beseech	besought	besought
bet	bet	bet
bid	bid or bade	bid (den)
bind	bound	bound
bite	bit	bit (ten)
bleed	bled	bled
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
breed	bred	bred
bring	brought	brought
build	built, *r*	built, *r*
burn	burnt, *r*	burnt, *r*
burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought
cast	cast	cast
catch	caught	caught
chide	chid	chid (den)
choose	chose	chosen
cling	clung	clung
clothe	clad, *r*	clad, *r*
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept
cut	cut	cut
deal	dealt, *r*	dealt, *r*

dig	dug, *r*	dug, *r*
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamt, *r*	dreamt, *r*
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
dwell	dwelt, *r*	dwelt, *r*
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
flee	fled	fled
fling	flung	flung
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
forsake	forsook	forsaken
get	got	got (ten)
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grind	ground	ground
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung, *r*	hung, *r*
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hew	hewed	hewn, *r*
hide	hid	hidden

hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
kneel	knelt, *r*	knelt, *r*
knit	knit, *r*	knit, *r*
know	knew	known
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit, *r*	lit, *r*
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
mistake	mistook	mistaken
mow	mowed	mown, *r*
pay	paid	paid
plead	pled, *r*	pled, *r*
put	put	put
quit	quit, *r*	quit, *r*
read	read	read
rend	rent	rent
rid	rid	rid
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung

rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
saw	sawed	sawn, *r*
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
seek	sought	sought
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
shake	shook	shaken
shape	shaped	shapen, *r*
shave	shaved	shaven, *r*
shear	sheared	shorn, *r*
shed	shed	shed
shine	shone, *r*	shone, *r*
shoe	shod	shod
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown, *r*
shrink	shrank	shrunk (en)
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
slay	slew	slain
sleep	slept	slept
slide	slid	slid (en)
sling	slung	slung
slink	slunk	slunk
slit	slit	slit

smite	smote	smitten
sow	sowed	sown, *r*
speak	spoke	spoken
speed	sped	sped
spend	spent	spent
spill	spilt, *r*	spilt, *r*
spin	spun	spun
spit	spit	spit
split	split	split
spoil	spoilt, *r*	spoilt, *r*
spread	spread	spread
spring	sprang	sprung
stand	stood	stood
stave	stove, *r*	stove, *r*
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
stink	stunk	stunk
strike	struck	struck
strike	struck	stricken
stride	strode	stridden
string	strung	strung
strive	strove	striven
strew	strewed	strewn, *r*
swear	sworn	sworn
sweat	sweat, *r*	sweat, *r*
sweep	swept	swept
swell	swelled	swollen, *r*
swim	swam	swum

swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
thrust	thrust	thrust
tread	trod	trod (den)
wake	woke, *r*	woke, *r*
wear	wore	worn
weave	wove	woven
wed	wed, *r*	wed, *r*
weep	wept	wept
wet	wet, *r*	wet, *r*
whet	whet, *r*	whet, *r*
win	won	won
wind	wound	wound
work	wrought, *r*	wrought, *r*
wring	wrung	wrung
write	wrote	written

SPELLING

LESSON 6

Every vowel or every vowel combination pronounced as one vowel sound indicates a syllable (excepting final *e* in such words as *fate*, *late*, *rode*, etc.) Take the word *combination*, for example. In this word we have four syllables, thus: *Com-bi-na-tion*.

A syllable is that part of a word which can be uttered distinctly by a single effort of the voice. Remember that each syllable must contain a vowel or a vowel combination like *oi* or *ou*, which is pronounced as one vowel. Sometimes the vowel alone makes the syllable as in *a-lone*, *e-qual*, etc. The final *e* in words like *late*, and *fate* is not sounded. It is silent, we say.

All words ending in silent *e* have the long vowel sound, with a very few exceptions. Words without the final *e* have the short vowel sound as for example: *fate*, *fat*; *mate*, *mat*; *hide*, *hid*; *rode*, *rod*.

In dividing words into syllables the consonant is written with the preceding vowel when that vowel is short. If the vowel is long the consonant is written with the next syllable, as for example, de-fine and def-i-ni-tion. In de-fine the *e* is long therefore *f*, the consonant following, is written with the next syllable, *fine*. In def-i-ni-tion the *e* has the short sound, therefore the *f* is written with the *e* in the syllable, *def*.

When there are two consonants following the vowel, divide between the consonants, as for example, *in-ven-tion*, *foun-da-tion*, etc. Never divide a digraph, that is, two consonants which are sounded together as one sound, as for example, *moth-er*, *catch-er*, *te-leg-ra-pher*, etc.

In writing words containing double consonants like *dd*, *ll*, *ss*, divide the word into syllables between the double consonants, as for example, *per-mit-ted*, *ad-mis-sion*, *sad-dest*, etc.

Monday

Important
Accommodate
Person
Correspond
Action

Tuesday

Difference
Notice
Indicate
Remember
Irregular

Wednesday

Mistake
Conversation
Correctly
President
Ordinary

Thursday

Participle
Passive
Various
Phrase
Quotation

Friday

Imagine
Confidence
Humanity
Faith
Future

Saturday

Whisper
Thought
Ability
Knowledge
Genius

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 7

Dear Comrade:

I wonder if you have ever thought as to how our language grew.

We get the words in our language from many sources. The English language today is a development of the early Anglo-Saxon. England was called originally Angle-land which was gradually shortened into England. So we have in our language what are called pure English or Anglo-Saxon words. These words form the bulk of our every day vocabulary, being simple, strong, forceful words. Then we have in our English many foreign words which we have adopted from other languages. There are many Latin and Greek words; these we use in our more elegant speech or writing.

There is an interesting bit written by Sir Walter Scott in his novel of early England, "Ivanhoe," which illustrates the manner in which words have come into our language and also the difference in speech which marks the working class and the exploiting class. As those who do the work of the world rid themselves of the parasites who have appropriated the produce of their labor, through the ages, they will demand that which belongs to them —the best—the best in language as in everything else.

> "'... I advise thee to call off Fangs and leave the herd to their destiny, which, whether they meet with bands of traveling soldiers, or of outlaws, or of wandering pilgrims, can be little else than to be converted into Normans before morning, to thy no small ease and comfort.'
>
> "'The swine turned into Normans to my comfort!' quoth Gurth. 'Expound that to me, Wamba, for my brain is too dull and my mind too vexed to read riddles.'
>
> "'Why, how call you these grunting brutes running about on their four legs?' demanded Wamba.
>
> "'Swine, fool, swine,' said the herd; 'every fool knows that.'
>
> "'And swine is good Saxon,' said the jester; 'but how call you the sow when she is flayed, and drawn, and quartered, and hung by the heels like a traitor?'
>
> "'Pork,' answered the swineherd.

"'I am glad every fool knows that too,' said Wamba; 'and pork, I think, is good Norman-French, and so when the brute lives and is in charge of a Saxon slave, she goes by her Saxon name; but becomes a Norman and is called pork when she is carried to the castle-hall to feast among the nobles. What dost thou think of that, friend Gurth, ha?' ... "

So you see even in words the distinction is made between those who produce and those who possess.

But the day is at hand when those who work shall also enjoy. We have fought for religious and political freedom. Today we are waging the battle for industrial freedom. It is *your* struggle. Study—prepare yourself to do battle for your rights.

Yours for Freedom,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

FUTURE TIME

118. We have learned how to express present time and past time, by changes in the form of the verb. But we very often desire to make a statement in which we do not express either present or past time, thus we may say:

We shall enjoy our rights some day.
He will join us in the struggle.

We do not mean to say that we do enjoy our rights now, in the present, or that we did in the past, but that we *shall* enjoy our rights some time in the future. In the second sentence, *will join* expresses the same idea of future time. To indicate future time, we do not make a change in the verb form, but we use *shall* and *will* with the simple form of the verb.

119. We denote future time by use of a verb phrase made by placing *shall* **or** *will* **before the simple form of the verb.**

120. The rule of some grammarians is to use *shall* always in the first person, the person speaking, to denote future time, and *will* with the second person, the person spoken to, and with the third person, the person spoken of, to

denote future time. But common usage does not always follow the rules of the grammarians, and, in the course of time, affects and changes these rules. So our common usage of today uses *will* in the first person to express future time, as well as *shall*.

This rule of grammarians marks a nicety of speech and conveys a distinction of meaning which it really seems worth while to retain. The idea of the grammarians is that when we use *will* with the first person and *shall* with the second or third person, we express a *promise* or *determination*. Thus if I say, *I shall go*, I simply mean that my going will be in the future. But if I say, *I will go*, I either mean that I am promising to go or that I am expressing my determination to go. So also if we use *shall* in the second and third persons. If we say, *You will go* or *He will go*, we are simply stating that the going will be in the future, but if we say, *You shall go*, or *He shall go*, we mean that we promise or are determined that you or he shall go.

To be technically correct this distinction should be observed. *Shall* in the first person, and *will* in the second and third express simple futurity. *Will* in the first person and *shall* in the second and third express promise or determination. But in every day conversation this distinction is not observed, and many of our best writers do not follow this rule.

Exercise 1

Mark the future time forms in the following sentences:

1. I shall speak of liberty.
2. I will never give up.
3. I shall write to him.
4. He shall not starve.
5. We shall expect you.
6. They shall suffer for this.
7. I shall go to New York.
8. He will call for me.
9. The hungry shall be fed.
10. You will soon see the reason.
11. You shall never want for a friend.

12. They shall some day see the truth.
13. We will not fight against our class.
14. We will stand together.

PERFECT TIME

121. Past, present and future, being the three divisions of time, one would naturally expect that when we had found how to express these three forms, we would be through, but if you stop to think, you will find that there are other verb phrases of which we have need.

When we wish to speak of action as completed at the present time, we do not say:

> I study my lessons every day, *but*, I have studied my lessons every day.
> *Not*, You work for him every day, *but*, You have worked for him every day.
> *Not*, He sees her frequently, *but*, He has seen her frequently.

Can you not readily see the difference in the meaning expressed in *I work every day*, and *I have worked every day*? In the first sentence you express a general truth, *I work every day*, a truth which has been true in the past, is true in the present, and the implication is that it will continue to be true in the future. But when you say, *I have worked every day*, you are saying nothing as to the future, but you are describing an action which is completed at the present time. This is called the *present complete* or *present perfect* time.

122. Perfect means complete, and present perfect describes an action perfected or completed at the present time. So it is possible for us to express a necessary shade of meaning by the present perfect time form.

123. The present perfect time form describes an action completed at the present time, and is formed by using the present time form of *have* and the *past* participle of the verb.

Present Perfect Time

Singular	*Plural*
1st. I have seen.	We have seen.
2d. You have seen.	You have seen.
3d. He has seen.	They have seen.

124. Review in the last lesson how to form the past participle. Remember that it is one of the principal parts of the verb. In regular verbs the past participle is the same form as the past time form. In irregular verbs the past participle is quite often different from the past time form, as for example: *go*, *went*, *gone*; *do*, *did*, *done*, etc.

Watch closely your irregular verbs and see that you always use the past *participle* with *have* or *had*; never use the past *time* form with *have* or *had*.

PAST PERFECT

125. When you desire to express an action complete at some definite past time, you do not say:

We finished when they came, *but*, We had finished when they came.
Not, They went when we arrived, *but*, They had gone when we arrived.
Not, I worked six months when he began, *but*, I had worked six months when he began.

Can you see a difference in the meaning expressed in these sentences: *I worked six months when he began*; and *I had worked six months when he began*? This last sentence describes an action completed or perfected before some definite past time.

126. Past perfect time denotes an action perfected or completed at some definite past time. It is formed by using *had* and the past participle of the verb.

Remember always, with irregular verbs, to use the *past participle*. Never use the *past time form* with *had*.

Past Perfect Time

Singular	*Plural*
1st. I had seen.	We had seen.
2d. You had seen.	You had seen.
3d. He had seen.	They had seen.

Exercise 2

Correct the following sentences in which the past time form is used instead of the past participle. Look up the word in the list of irregular verbs and use the past participle instead of the past time form.

1. I have saw it often.
2. He had shook his fist.
3. She has sang for us.
4. The boat has sank here.
5. He has spoke the truth.
6. They had stole the books.
7. He has swore to the truth.
8. He had took the wrong road.
9. She has tore her dress.
10. He had threw the ball away.
11. The girl had wore the dress.
12. He had wrote the letters.
13. He had drank too much.
14. He had rode the horse.
15. The sun has rose.
16. He has bore his part.
17. They have began already.
18. The wind has blew all night.
19. It had broke when it fell.
20. He has chose the right.
21. You have did your duty.
22. He has ate his breakfast.

23. A heavy rain has fell.
24. They had gave it to me.
25. He has became rich.
26. It has grew rapidly.
27. He has knew it always.
28. He has mistook her for another.

FUTURE PERFECT TIME

127. We find also that we need a verb phrase to express time *before* some other future time, to describe an action that will be finished, perfected, or completed, before some other future action. Thus,

I shall have gone before you arrive.
You will have earned your money before you get it.
I shall have worked thirty days when pay-day comes.

Can you not see a difference in saying, *I shall work thirty days when pay-day comes*, and *I shall have worked thirty days when pay-day comes*? The first sentence expresses simple future time, or what you will do when pay-day comes; the second describes an action which will be completed or perfected *before* pay-day comes. So there is quite a difference in the meaning of the future and the future perfect time.

128. The future perfect time form expresses or describes an action that will be perfected or completed before some other future time. It is formed by using *shall have* **or** *will have* **with the past participle.**

Be careful to use the past participle. Never use the past time form with *shall have* or *will have*.

Future Perfect Time

Singular	*Plural*
1st. I shall have seen.	We shall have seen.
2d. You will have seen.	You will have seen.

3d. He will have seen. They will have seen.

LET US SUM UP

129. We have three time forms, *present*, *past*, *future*.

Present	**Past**	**Future**
I see	I saw	I shall see.

Each of these three time forms has a *perfect* form; that is, a time form which expresses an action as completed or perfected at the present time, or before some definite past or future time.

Present Perfect Time	**Past Perfect Time**	**Future Perfect Time**
I have seen	I had seen	I shall have seen

130. It is wonderful how a knowledge of words and their uses enables us to express so many shades of meaning. It is like our development in observing colors. You know the savage always admires vivid reds and greens and blues. He does not yet see the beautiful shades and gradations of color. We enjoy the delicate pinks and blues and all the varying shades between the primal seven colors of the spectrum. And as we develop our artistic ability we see and enjoy all the beauties of color.

In music too, we observe the same development. The barbarian enjoys loud, crashing, discordant sounds which he calls music, but which to the educated ear are only harsh noises. The trained musician catches the delicate overtones and undertones and finds deepest ecstasy in sounds which the uneducated ear does not even catch. So as we study words and their uses, we find ourselves able to express shades of meaning, to paint our word

pictures, not in gaudy, glaring chromo-tints, but in the wondrous blending of color that reveals the true artist.

Now get these modes of expressing time firmly fixed in your mind.

131. Let us get all we have learned about verbs into a summary and have it clearly in mind.

VERBS—SUMMARY

Two Classes

Complete—		Taking *no* complement.
Incomplete—	{	Verbs of action requiring object.
		Copulative verbs requiring complement.

Inflection—Changes of Form

Simple Form	*S-Form*	*Past Time*	*Present Part.*	*Past Part.*
see	sees	saw	seeing	seen

TIME FORMS

Present

Singular	*Plural*
1. I see.	We see.
2. You see.	You see.

3. He sees. They see.

Past

Singular	*Plural*
1. I saw.	We saw.
2. You saw.	You saw.
3. He saw.	They saw.

Future

Singular	*Plural*
1. I shall see.	We shall see.
2. You will see.	You will see.
3. He will see.	They will see.

Present Perfect

Singular	*Plural*
1. I have seen.	We have seen.
2. You have seen.	You have seen.
3. He has seen.	They have seen.

Past Perfect

Singular	*Plural*
1. I had seen.	We had seen.
2. You had seen.	You had seen.
3. He had seen.	They had seen.

Future Perfect

Singular	*Plural*
1. I shall have seen.	We shall have seen.
2. You will have seen.	You will have seen.
3. He will have seen.	They will have seen.

Exercise 3

Read carefully the following quotation. All of the verbs and verb phrases are written in *italics*. Study these carefully and decide whether they indicate present, past, future, present perfect, past perfect or future perfect time. The verb phrases—*is seizing*, *is put*, *is praised*, *is defended*, *can see*, *must have*, *are owned*, and *are conducted*, do not belong to any of these six forms. They are verb phrases used in ways which we shall study later. All of the other verbs or verb phrases belong to one of the six time forms which we have studied. Classify them.

The Working Class Must Strike the Blow

You *remember* Victor Hugo's story of the devil-fish; how the monster *put* forth one tentacle after another and *coiled* it around his victim; how the hero *recalled* that there *was* but one vulnerable spot in his brute enemy; how at the strategic moment he *struck* a blow at that spot, and the terrible demon of the deep *shuddered*, *released* his grasp and *fell* dead.

Capitalism *is* a monster which *is seizing* the body politic. One tentacle *is put* forth to grasp the major part of the earnings of the working class; another *has seized* the working-woman; another *reaches* forth to the child; another *has fastened* upon

government and *has made* that the instrument of the powerful classes; still another *has turned* the pen of the journalist into a weapon by which the injustice of Capitalism *is praised* and *is defended*; and still another *has seized* the pulpit, *has silenced* those who *profess* to speak for God and man, or *has turned* their phrases into open apology and defense for the crimes of Capitalism!

But there *is* one vulnerable spot in Capitalism. If the working class of the world *can see* that spot and *will strike*, they *shall be* free.

The fundamental wrong, the basic injustice of the Capitalist System, *is* that the resources of land and machinery, to which all the people *must have* access, in order to live and labor, *are owned* by the few and *are conducted* by the few for their private profit.

This *is* the social tragedy, the monstrous wrong of our time.

—*J. Stitt Wilson.*

Exercise 4

Select two verbs out of the following poem and write their six time forms, in the same manner as the time forms of the verb *see* are given in section 131.

A MAGIC WORD

There's a little word below, with letters three,
Which, if you only grasp its potency,
Will send you higher
Toward the goal where you aspire,
Which, without its precious aid, you'll never see—
NOW!

Success attends the man who views it right.
Its back and forward meanings differ quite;
For this is how it reads
To the man of ready deeds,

Who spells it backwards from
achievement's height—
WON!

TENSE

The grammatical term for the time form of the verb is *TENSE*, which is derived from a Latin word meaning *time*. The present time-form of the verb is called the *present tense*; the past time-form, the *past tense*; the future time-form, the *future tense*; the present perfect time-form, the *present perfect tense*, etc.

Exercise 5

Write each of the following four sentences in the six time-forms, or tenses, —present, past, future, present perfect, past perfect and future perfect, as follows:

Present—Labor *creates* all wealth.
Past—Labor *created* all wealth.
Future—Labor *will create* all wealth.
Present Perfect—Labor *has created* all wealth.
Past Perfect—Labor *had created* all wealth.
Future Perfect—Labor *will have created* all wealth.

1. Hope stirs us to action.
2. Human progress is our business.
3. The majority demand justice.
4. The workers fight all the battles.

SPELLING

LESSON 7

The division of words into syllables is quite important as an aid to pronunciation. It is also a very important matter to understand in our written speech for it is often necessary to divide a word at the end of a line. If the word is not properly divided, it is much more difficult to read and understand. The hyphen is used to divide words into syllables when carrying a portion to the next line.

When you must divide a word at the end of a line divide it only between syllables. Never divide a word of one syllable, no matter how long it may be. If you cannot get all of it on the line, write it all on the next line. Do not divide a short word of two syllables if you can avoid it and never divide such a word when it leaves only one letter on the line or only one letter to be carried over to the next line, as for example: *luck-y*, *a-loud*, etc.

When two or more vowels are used together to make one sound they should never be separated by the hyphen, as for example, joy-ous, anx-ious, trail, dis-course, de-feat, boor-ish.

When two or more vowels placed together are not used to form one sound then these vowels may be divided, as for example, *tri-al*, *co-or-di-nate*, *he-ro-ic*.

Look up the words in this week's lesson in the dictionary carefully and divide into syllables. Notice specially the division of words into syllables where the word contains a diphthong and where it contains two vowels written together which are not diphthongs. Notice also the words which have a single vowel as the first or last syllable.

Monday

Museum
Creatures
Peaceable

Accruing
Already

Tuesday

Persuade
Trivial
Plague
Alert
Inquiry

Wednesday

Piteous
Patriot
Poetry
Evil
Business

Thursday

Obey
Breathe
Society
Ether
Sociable

Friday

Idealism
Pledge
Ache
Acre
Pronunciation

Saturday

Idle

Idol
Mutual
Wealthy
Neighbors

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 8

Dear Comrade:

You have often read the words *organic* and *inorganic* but did you ever stop to think of the meaning of these words? We say a body is organic—a rock is inorganic; one grows from within, the other is built from without. A tree is organic; it grows. A house is inorganic; it is built. The house was never a baby house, growing from a tiny house to a large one. But the tree was once a baby tree, a sapling, and grew branch by branch to its present height. So we have two classes of things—those which grow and those which are made.

Language belongs to the class of things which grows. It is organic. We have even used the same terms in speaking about language that we use in talking of a tree. We use the words ROOT, STEM and BRANCH to describe its growth.

Language, too, has its different terms of life like a tree, its youth, its maturity, its old age, its death.

So we have dead languages like Latin and Greek—languages which are no longer living,—no longer serving mankind. But these dead languages have left living children, languages that have descended from them.

The Italian language for example is the child, the descendant of the classical Latin. We have many words in our English language from these dead languages. About five-sevenths of the words in our English are from these classical languages. The remaining two-sevenths are from the Anglo-Saxon. We use the Anglo-Saxon words more frequently, however, in our every day speech.

And it is interesting to note that our best poetry—that which stirs our blood and touches our hearts—is written in the strong forceful Anglo-Saxon words.

These words we are studying have been through some interesting experiences as they have passed from race to race down to us and the history of life is mirrored in their changes. How much more interesting they seem when we know something of their sources, just as we are more interested in a man when we know something of his boyhood and youth and the experiences through which he has passed.

You may think that the study of verbs is rather difficult and involved, but it is more simple in English than in any other language. There are fewer changes in the verb form in order to express time and person. Do not rely on the memorizing of the rules. Rules never made one a fluent speaker. Write sentences in which the correct form is used. Read aloud from the best authors until the sound of the words is familiar and they come readily to the tongue. We have used for the exercises in these lessons excerpts from the best authors.

Study these exercises carefully and note the use of the different verbs especially, this week. Verbs, like all else, are yours to command. Command them.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

PROGRESSIVE VERB PHRASES

132. We have learned how to form the three principal time forms, *present*, *past* and *future* and the perfect or completed form of each of the three, *present perfect*, *past perfect* and *future perfect*. And still we have such a wonderful language that we can express other shades of meaning in *time*.

133. There is still another phase of action which we must have a verb phrase to express. Suppose you want to describe something you are now doing and are continuing to do, something not yet completed. To say, *I do it now*, is not satisfactory. Instead we say, *I am doing it now*.

You have by the verb phrase, *am doing*, described a progressive action, an action *going on* in the present. You may also want to describe what you

were doing yesterday, an action that continued or *progressed* in the past. You would not say, *I built the house yesterday* but, *I was building the house yesterday*. Again you may want to describe an action which will be *progressing* or going on in the future. You do not say, *I shall build the house next week* but, *I shall be building the house next week*.

So we have progressive verb phrases.

134. The present progressive describes an action as continuing or progressing in the present.

It is formed by using the present time form of the verb *be* and the present participle.

You remember that the present participle is formed by adding *ing* to the simple form of the verb.

Present Progressive

Singular	*Plural*
1st. I am seeing.	We are seeing.
2d. You are seeing.	You are seeing.
3d. He is seeing.	They are seeing.

135. The past progressive time form describes an action which was continuing or progressing in the past. It is formed by using the past time form of the verb *be* and the present participle.

Past Progressive

Singular	*Plural*
1st. I was seeing.	We were seeing.
2d. You were seeing.	You were seeing.
3d. He was seeing.	They were seeing.

136. The future progressive describes an action which will be progressing or going on in the future. It is formed by using the future time form of the verb *be* and the present participle.

Future Progressive

Singular	*Plural*
1st. I shall be seeing.	We shall be seeing.
2d. You will be seeing.	You will be seeing.
3d. He will be seeing.	They will be seeing.

137. The perfect time forms also have a progressive form. There is a difference of meaning in the *present perfect* and its progressive form. You say for instance, *I have tried all my life to be free*. You mean you have tried until the present time and the inference is that now you have ceased to try. But, if you say, *I have been trying all my life to be free*, we understand that you have tried and are *still* trying.

138. So we have the present perfect progressive which describes an action which progressed in the past and continued up to the present time. It is formed by using the present perfect form of the verb *be* and the present participle.

Present Perfect Progressive

Singular	*Plural*
1st. I have been seeing.	We have been seeing.
2d. You have been seeing.	You have been seeing.
3d. He has been seeing.	They have been seeing.

139. The past perfect progressive describes an action which was continuing or progressing at some past time. It is formed by using the past perfect time form of the verb *be* and the present participle.

Past Perfect Progressive

Singular	*Plural*
1st. I had been seeing.	We had been seeing.
2d. You had been seeing.	You had been seeing.
3d. He had been seeing.	They had been seeing.

140. The future perfect progressive describes an action which will be progressing at some future time. It is formed by using the future perfect time form of the verb *be* and the present participle.

Future Perfect Progressive

Singular	*Plural*
1st. I shall have been seeing.	We shall have been seeing.
2d. You will have been seeing.	You will have been seeing.
3d. He will have been seeing.	They will have been seeing.

Exercise 1

In the following sentences mark all the progressive forms, and note whether they are present, past, future, present perfect, past perfect or future perfect.

1. The old order is passing.
2. Men will be struggling for freedom so long as slavery exists.
3. The class struggle has been growing more intense as wealth has accumulated.
4. The workers are realizing their power.
5. He had been talking for an hour when we arrived.
6. Next Monday I shall have been working for one year.
7. The workers will be paying interest on war debts for generations to come unless they repudiate.
8. While Marx was writing his books, he lived in abject poverty.

9. The Industrial Relations Commission has been investigating industrial conditions.
10. Ferrer was martyred because the Modern Schools were educating the people.
11. The nations of Europe had been preparing for war for many years.

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

141. Notice carefully the following sentences; select the subjects in these sentences which show *who* or *what* performed the action; select the subjects that show *who* or *what* receives the action. Do you notice any difference in the meaning of these sentences? Do you notice any difference in their form?

The engine struck the man.
The man was struck by the engine.

The system enslaves men.
Men are enslaved by the system.

Leaders often betray the people.
The people are often betrayed by leaders.

Let us look carefully at the first two sentences. You remember when we studied transitive verbs we found that every transitive verb had an *object* which was the receiver of the action expressed in the verb. Now you notice in this first sentence, *The engine struck the man*, we have the transitive verb *struck*. *Engine* is the subject of the verb and *man* is the object of the verb, the receiver of the action expressed by the verb *struck*.

Now in the sentence, *The man was struck by the engine*, we have the same thought expressed but in a different manner. The word *man*, which was the object of the verb *struck* in the first sentence, has now become the subject of the sentence, and we have changed our verb form from *struck* to *was struck*. In the first sentence of the subject, *engine* was the *actor*. In the second sentence, *The man was struck by the engine*, the subject of the sentence, *man*, is the *receiver* of the action expressed in the verb.

142. So we have thus changed the verb form from *struck* to *was struck* to indicate that the subject of the verb is the receiver of the action. *Struck* is called the active form of the verb because the subject of the verb is the actor. *Was struck* is called the passive form of the verb because the subject receives the action. Passive means *receiving*. In the passive form the subject is the receiver of the action expressed in the verb.

143. You remember that complete verbs have no object or complement, therefore it would follow that they cannot be put in the passive form for there is no object to become the receiver of the action. Take the complete verb, *sleep*, for example. We do not *sleep* anything, hence *sleep* has no passive form for there is no object which can be used as the subject, the receiver of the action.

Only transitive verbs can be put into the passive form. Remember that a transitive verb in the passive form is one that represents its subject as receiving the action.

The present, past, future and all the perfect time forms of transitive verbs can be changed from active to passive. The progressive time forms can be changed into the passive, but it makes an awkward construction and should be avoided as much as possible. Occasionally, however, we find it worth our while to use these forms, as for example:

The book is being written by the man.

This is the passive form of the present progressive, *The man is writing a book*.

The book was being written by the man.

This is the passive form of the past progressive, *The man was writing the book*.

144. The future progressive passive is awkward, and the present and past progressive forms are the only forms we find used in the passive. The best writers use them sparingly for we can usually say the same thing by using the active form of the verb and have a sentence which sounds much better.

Exercise 2

All the verbs in the following sentences are *transitive* verbs in the *active* form. Rewrite each sentence, putting the verb into the *passive* form and making the *object* of the *active* verb the *subject* of the *passive* verb; as, for example, the first sentence should be rewritten as follows:

War on Russia was declared by Germany on August 1, 1914.

1. Germany declared war on Russia, August 1, 1914.
2. Who will sign the Emancipation Proclamation of the Proletariat?
3. Marx and Engels wrote the Communist Manifesto.
4. Spain murdered Francisco Ferrer, October 13, 1909.
5. We celebrate the first of May as International Labor Day.
6. The people of Paris stormed the Bastille, July 14, 1789.
7. Wat Tyler was leading the English workers in rebellion against the King when the Mayor of London stabbed him in 1381.
8. The Inquisition burned Bruno at the stake for heresy in 1600.
9. The Paris Commune followed the German siege of Paris in 1871.

SUMMARY

145. Now let us take the verb *see* and name all the time forms which we can describe with the changes in the verb forms which we have learned to make and also with the verb phrases which we can construct with the help of the verbs, *be*, *have*, *shall* and *will*.

First, we want to express the present, what is happening now, and we want to put it in both the active and passive forms, so we say:

PRESENT TIME

Active	**Passive**
Singular	*Singular*
I see.	I am seen.
You see.	You are seen.

He sees.	He is seen.
Plural	*Plural*
We see.	We are seen.
You see.	You are seen.
They see.	They are seen.

Note that the only change in the verb form in the present ACTIVE is the *s-form* for the third person singular. In the present passive the only change is the special form of the verb *be* for the first and third persons, singular.

When we want to tell what occurred yesterday or some time in the past, stated in the active and passive form, we say:

PAST TIME

Active	**Passive**
Singular	*Singular*
I saw.	I was seen.
You saw.	You were seen.
He saw.	He was seen.
Plural	*Plural*
We saw.	We were seen.
You saw.	You were seen.
They saw.	They were seen.

We have one other division of time which we must express—the future. Primitive man doubtless lived principally in the present, but with the development of memory and the means of recording events by a written language, he was able to make the deeds and achievements of the past a vital part of his life. But not until the faculty of thinking developed was the mind able to project itself into the future and make tomorrow the hope of today. Future time expresses hope, desire, growth.

FUTURE TIME

Active	**Passive**
Singular	*Singular*
I shall see.	I shall be seen.
You will see.	You will be seen.
He will see.	He will be seen.
Plural	*Plural*
We shall see.	We shall be seen.
You will see.	You will be seen.
They will see.	They will be seen.

Then you remember we had to devise a way of describing an action perfected or completed at the present or at some time in the past or at some time in the future—so we have present perfect, past perfect and future perfect.

PRESENT PERFECT

Active	**Passive**
Singular	*Singular*
I have seen.	I have been seen.
You have seen.	You have been seen.
He has seen.	He has been seen.
Plural	*Plural*
We have seen.	We have been seen.
You have seen.	You have been seen.
They have seen.	They have been seen.

PAST PERFECT

Active	Passive
Singular	*Singular*
I had seen.	I had been seen.
You had seen.	You had been seen.
He had seen.	He had been seen.
Plural	*Plural*
We had seen.	We had been seen.
You had seen.	You had been seen.
They had seen.	They had been seen.

FUTURE PERFECT

Active	Passive
Singular	*Singular*
I shall have seen.	I shall have been seen.
You will have seen.	You will have been seen.
He will have seen.	He will have been seen.
Plural	*Plural*
We shall have seen.	We shall have been seen.
You will have seen.	You will have been seen.
They will have seen.	They will have been seen.

146. But these are not all the phases of time which we can express. We have progressive, continuous action. So each of these six time forms has a progressive form.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Active	Passive
Singular	*Singular*
I am seeing.	I am being seen.

You are seeing.	You are being seen.
He is seeing.	He is being seen.
Plural	*Plural*
We are seeing.	We are being seen.
You are seeing.	You are being seen.
They are seeing.	They are being seen.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Active	**Passive**
Singular	*Singular*
I was seeing.	I was being seen.
You were seeing.	You were being seen.
He was seeing.	He was being seen.
Plural	*Plural*
We were seeing.	We were being seen.
You were seeing.	You were being seen.
They were seeing.	They were being seen.

Only the Present and Past Progressive forms have a passive form. The rest of the Progressive forms are expressed in the active forms only.

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

Singular	*Plural*
I shall be seeing.	We shall be seeing.
You will be seeing.	You will be seeing.
He will be seeing.	They will be seeing.

PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE

Singular	*Plural*
I have been seeing.	We have been seeing.
You have been seeing.	You have been seeing.
He has been seeing.	They have been seeing.

PAST PERFECT PROGRESSIVE

Singular	*Plural*
I had been seeing.	We had been seeing.
You had been seeing.	You had been seeing.
He had been seeing.	They had been seeing.

FUTURE PERFECT PROGRESSIVE

Singular	*Plural*
I shall have been seeing.	We shall have been seeing.
You will have been seeing.	You will have been seeing.
He will have been seeing.	They will have been seeing.

Exercise 3

Write the four following sentences in their active and passive forms, as the sentence, *War sweeps the earth*, is written.

1. Education gives power.
2. Knowledge frees men.
3. Labor unions help the workers.
4. The people seek justice.

Present	*Actve*	War sweeps the earth.
	Passive	The earth is swept by war.

Past	*Active*	War swept the earth.
	Passive	The earth was swept by war.
Future	*Active*	War shall sweep the earth.
	Passive	The earth shall be swept by war.
Pres. Per.	*Active*	War has swept the earth.
	Passive	The earth has been swept by war.
Past Per.	*Active*	War had swept the earth.
	Passive	The earth had been swept by war.
Fut. Per.	*Active*	War shall have swept the earth.
	Passive	The earth shall have been swept by war.

Exercise 4

Underscore all the verbs and verb phrases in the following quotation. Write all the time forms of the transitive verb, *lose*, as the time forms of the verb *see* are written in the foregoing table.

> When we study the animal world and try to explain to ourselves that struggle for existence which is maintained by each living being against adverse circumstances and against its enemies, we realize that the more the principles of solidarity and equality are developed in an animal society, and have become habitual to it, the more chance it has of surviving and coming triumphantly out of the struggle against hardships and foes. The more thoroughly each member of the society feels his solidarity with each other member of the society, the more completely are developed in all of them those two qualities which are the main factors of all progress; courage, on the one hand, and, on the other, free individual initiative. And, on the contrary, the more any animal society, or little group of animals, loses this feeling of solidarity—which may chance as the result of exceptional scarcity or else of exceptional plenty—the more the two other factors of progress, courage and individual initiative, diminish; in the end they disappear, and the society falls into decay and sinks before its foes. Without mutual confidence no struggle is possible; there is no courage, no initiative, no solidarity—and no victory! —*Kropotkin.*

SPELLING

LESSON 8

In pronouncing words of more than one syllable we always lay a little greater stress upon one syllable of the word; that is, that syllable receives the emphasis of the voice so as to make it more prominent than the other syllables. This is called accent, and the syllable which receives the special stress is called the accented syllable.

Accent is the stress of the voice upon one syllable of the word.

You will notice when you look up the pronunciation of words in your dictionary that a little mark called the accent mark is placed after the accented syllable, as for example: di-vide'.

Many words differ in meaning according to which syllable receives the accent. Our spelling lesson for this week contains a number of these words.

These words, when accented on the first syllable, are nouns; when accented on the second syllable, they are verbs.

Monday

Con' tract	Con tract'
Pro' test	Pro test'
Rec' ord	Re cord'
Im' port	Im port'
De' tail	De tail'

Tuesday

Con' vert	Con vert'

Con' flict	Con flict'
Prog' ress	Pro gress'
Im' press	Im press'
Ref' use	Re fuse'

Wednesday

Con' test	Con test'
Con' duct	Con duct'
Proj' ect	Pro ject'
Des' ert	De sert'
Ex' tract	Ex tract'

Thursday

Con' trast	Con trast'
Con' sort	Con sort'
Reb' el	Re bel'
Con' script	Con script'
Pres' ent	Pre sent'

Friday

Com' pound	Com pound'
Re' tail	Re tail'
Com' press	Com press'
Im' print	Im print'

Com' bine	Com bine'

Saturday

Con' fine	Con fine'
Sus' pect	Sus pect'
Com' mune	Com mune'
Ex' port	Ex port'
In' crease	In crease'

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 9

Dear Comrade:

You have been studying several weeks now in this Plain English Course and we trust you are enjoying the unfolding of the powers of expression. We have been necessarily studying rules to some extent but you have seen how these grew out of the need for expression. We have been breaking the sentence up into its different parts. First we had the names of things and now we are studying the words used to tell what these things *do* and *are*—namely verbs. And as our life has grown complex and our powers of thinking diversified covering the whole range of time, past, present and future, we have had to invent many forms of the verb to express it all.

Now do not try to commit these facts concerning the verb to memory. You are not studying English in order to know rules. You are studying English that you may be able to say and write the things you *think*. So first of all, *think*, *think*! That is your inalienable right! Do not accept anything just by blind belief. Think it out for yourself. Study until you see the '*why*' of it all. "Independent thinking has given us the present, and we will forever continue to make tomorrow better than today. The right to think is inalienable, or a man is a machine. Thought is life or a human soul is a thing."

And do not lack the courage of your own thoughts. *You* do not need to cringe or apologize to any man. "Our life is not an apology but a life." Dare to think and dare to express and live your thought.

Did you ever read Emerson's definition of genius? "To believe your own thought, to believe that what is true for you in your private heart is true for all men,—that is genius." Then he says, "We dismiss without notice our own thoughts, because they are ours. Tomorrow a stranger will say with masterly good sense, precisely what we have thought and felt all along and we shall be forced to take with shame our own opinion from another."

Have you not experienced this? How often we hear some one express a truth and we say to ourselves, "That is just what I have long believed but I have never dared say so." We have been so taught all our lives to depend on some outside power and discredit the power within ourselves, that we pay no attention to the thoughts that are ours for who are we that we should dare to think and perchance disagree with those who have assumed authority over us! But that is precisely what we should dare to do—to think and to do our own thinking always. Who dares place anything before a man!

So *think* as you study these lessons and use these rules and formulas simply as means to an end, as tools to aid you in expressing these thoughts.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

PARTICIPLES

147. We have found that the verb has five forms, made by internal changes in the verb itself,—the present time form, the s-form, the past time form, the present participle and the past participle.

We have also found that we can express various time forms by verb phrases formed by using the helping verbs, *shall*, *will*, *have* and *be* with one of the verb forms. All of these forms are used as the asserting word in the sentence. So long as the verb or verb phrase forms the predicate—the word or words that assert something of the subject—it still remains a verb. But we have found that the participle forms of the verb may be used as other parts of speech while still retaining some of the qualities of the verb.

148. You remember a sentence which we used when we studied participles, *Making shoes is his work*. Here we have the present participle *making*, with its object *shoes*, used as the subject of the verb *is*. Now a noun never takes an object, so *making* in this sentence is partly a verb, partly a noun, and is called a participle, which means *partaker*.

We have studied and used two forms of participles, the present and the past participle. The present participle always ends in *ing* and expresses action or

existence in the present, or at the time mentioned in the sentence. For example, *being*, *bringing*, *working*, *seeing*, *loving*, *hating*, etc.

The past participle we found to be one of the principal parts of the verb. It expresses action or existence which is past or completed, at the time mentioned in the sentence. It is formed by adding *d* or *ed* to the regular verbs and by a change in the form in irregular verbs. For example, regular verbs: *learned* from *learn*, *defeated* from *defeat*, *watched* from *watch*. Irregular verbs: *taught* from *teach*, *seen* from *see*, *won* from *win*.

We have found that these participles may be used either as nouns or as adjectives. As for example:

The *crying* of the child annoyed the people.
The *crying* child ran to its mother.
The *coming* of the new day will bring peace.
We await the *coming* day of peace.

PARTICIPLE PHRASES

149. The present and the past participles are each single words; but we may also have participle phrases; that is, two or more words used as a participle, as for example:

His *having joined* the strikers caused him to lose his job.
The man, *having been discharged*, left the mill.

In these sentences we have the participle phrases, *having joined* and *having been discharged*. *Having joined* is a participle phrase used as a noun, the subject of the verb *caused*. *Having been discharged* is a participle phrase used as an adjective to modify the noun *man*. Notice that *having joined* is an active participle describing the action performed by the man who is referred to by the pronoun *his*. *Having been discharged* is a passive participle expressing an action of which the subject of the sentence, *man*, is the receiver.

These are both perfect participles, expressing actions which are complete at the present time.

150. We have also progressive participles expressing action which is continuing or progressing. These progressive participles are also used in both the active and the passive forms. The progressive active participle is formed by using *having been* with the present participle, as *having been working*. The progressive passive participle is formed by using *being* with the past participle, as for example, *being watched*, *being driven*, *being gone*, etc. So we have six participles, three active and three passive.

Note the following table:

Active		**Passive**	
Present.	Sending.	*Past.*	Sent.
Perfect.	Having sent.	*Perfect.*	Having been sent.
Progressive.	Having been sending.	*Progressive.*	Being sent.

These participle phrases may be used either as nouns or as adjectives.

Exercise 1

In the following sentences mark the participles and the participle phrases. Underscore those used as *nouns* with a single line; those used as *adjectives* with two lines.

1. He denies having been hired by the employer.
2. Our friends, having arrived, joined us at dinner.
3. The rain, falling incessantly, kept us from going.
4. Having often seen him passing, I judged he lived near.
5. The man, being discouraged and ill, was unable to do his work well.
6. Happiness shared is happiness doubled.
7. Having finished his work, he rests at last.
8. The army, beaten but not vanquished, waited for the morrow.
9. The men, having been unemployed for months, were desperate.

10. Being prepared will not save us from war.
11. "Rest is not quitting this busy career;
    Rest is the fitting of self to its sphere.
    It's loving and serving the highest and best;
    It's onward, not swerving; and that is true rest."

Exercise 2

Write the six participle forms of the verbs *see* and *teach*, and use in sentences of your own construction.

INFINITIVES

151. We have found that the various forms of the participles may be used as other parts of speech. They partake of the nature of a verb and either of a noun or an adjective. Notice the following sentences:

Traveling is pleasant.
Eating is necessary.

Can you think of any other way in which you could express the same thought? Do you not sometimes say,

To travel is pleasant.
To eat is necessary.

We have expressed practically the same thought in these two sentences, which is expressed in the sentences above, where we used the participle. *To travel* and *to eat* are used as nouns, subjects of the verb *is* just as *traveling* and *eating* are used as nouns, the subjects of the verb *is*.

Here we have another form of the verb used as a noun. When we use the verb in this way, we are not speaking of the *traveling* or *eating* as belonging to or being done by any particular person, nor do we indicate whether one person or more than one is concerned in the action. It might be anyone doing the traveling or eating, and it might be one person or a thousand. We

are making a general statement of everybody in the world, so we call this form the *infinitive*.

152. Infinite means *unlimited*, without limit as to persons or number. Almost every verb in the language may be used in this way, and since *to* is generally used before the infinitive, *to* is often called the sign of the infinitive. For example:

To be, or not *to be*, that is the question.
To have and *to hold* is the problem.
He likes *to travel*.

You note in all of these infinitives *to* is used with the simple form of the verb.

153. *To* is generally omitted after verbs like *help*, *hear*, *bid*, *feel*, *let*, *make*, *see* and *have*, or words of similar meaning. For example:

Help me (to) find it.
He bade me (to) stay.
Feel it (to) shake.
Make him (to) come.
Hear me (to) sing.
Let us (to) go.
See him (to) run.
Have him (to) copy this.

154. *To* is also omitted after *need* and *dare* when *not* is used.

They need to work.	They need not work.
They dared to come.	They dared not come.

155. *To* is sometimes omitted after prepositions:

He will do anything for his class, except (to) fight for it.
He would do nothing but (to) go away.

156. We have a number of different forms of the infinitive, both active and passive. Note the following table:

	Active		**Passive**
Present.	To love.	*Present.*	To be loved.
Perfect.	To have loved.	*Perfect.*	To have been loved.
Present Prog.	To be loving.		
Perfect Prog.	To have been loving.		

157. Notice that only the *present* and *perfect* infinitives have the *passive* form. The progressive infinitives cannot be used in the passive. Remember also that only *incomplete* verbs, those which require an object to receive the action, can have a passive form.

The verb *loved*, which we have used in the above table, has a passive form because it is an incomplete verb, for there must be that which is the object of our love.

158. The complete verbs,—verbs which require no object,—cannot have a passive form for there is no object to become the receiver of the action. Take for example the verb *dwell*. This is a complete verb which can have no passive form. You cannot dwell anything, therefore you cannot say *to be dwelt* or *to have been dwelt*.

So complete verbs have only the four active forms, as follows:

		Active	
Present.	To dwell.	*Present Prog.*	To be dwelling.

Perfect.	To have dwelt.	*Perfect Prog.*	To have been dwelling.

159. Infinitives, like participles, may be used either as nouns or adjectives. When used as nouns, they are used in the various ways in which nouns are used. The infinitive may be the *subject* of a sentence, thus:

To hesitate now will be fatal.
To be defeated is no crime.

160. The infinitive may be the *object* or *complement* of the verb. For example:

He wanted *to see* you.
His desire is *to learn*.

161. The infinitive may be used as the object of a *preposition*; as,

He is about *to go*.
They will do anything for the cause except *to live* for it.

162. The infinitive may be used as an adjective to modify a noun. For example:

He showed me the way *to go*.
We must have food *to eat* and clothes *to wear*.
The question *to be decided* is before us.
Claim your right *to live*.

163. The infinitive may also be used as an adverb to modify the meaning of a verb, adjective or adverb, thus:

He was forced *to go*.
They are slow *to learn*.
The fruit was not ripe enough *to eat*.

Note that the infinitives in these sentences may all be changed into adverb phrases. As for example in the first sentence, He was forced *to go*, the infinitive *to go*, which modifies the verb *forced*, may be changed to the adverb phrase, *into going*, thus, *He was forced into going*. In the second sentence, *They are slow to learn*, the infinitive *to learn* may be changed into the adverb phrase *in learning*, thus, *They are slow in learning*. In the last sentence, *The fruit is not ripe enough to eat*, the infinitive *to eat*, which modifies the adverb *enough*, may be changed into the adverb phrase, *for eating*, as for example, *The fruit was not ripe enough for eating*.

164. The infinitive is quite a useful form of the verb, and we will find that we use it very frequently in expressing our ideas. While it is not the asserting word in the sentence, it retains the nature of a verb and may have both an object and an adverb modifier. As for example, in the sentence:

I wish *to learn* my lesson quickly.

To learn is the infinitive, used as a noun, the object of the verb *wish*. The infinitive also has an object, to learn—*what? My lesson* is the object of the infinitive *to learn*. We also have an adverb modifier in the adverb *quickly*, which tells *how* I wish to learn my lesson. So the infinitive retains its verb nature, in that it may have an object and it may be modified by an adverb.

Exercise 3

Notice carefully the use of the infinitives in the following sentences. Underscore all infinitives.

1. To remain ignorant is to remain a slave.
2. Teach us to think and give us courage to act.
3. Children love to be praised, but hate to be censured.
4. To obey is the creed taught the working class by the masters.
5. To be exploited has always been the fate of the workers.
6. Ferrer wrote on his prison wall, "To love a woman passionately, to have an ideal which I can serve, to have the desire to fight until I win —what more can I wish or ask?"
7. The people wish the man to be punished for the crime.

8. Primitive man found plenty of wood to burn.
9. We have learned to use coal and oil.
10. The lecture to have been given this evening has been postponed.
11. They are eager to hear the news.
12. He has failed to come.
13. We felt the house shake on its foundation.
14. Have him find the book for me.
15. To be defeated is no crime; never to have dared is the real crime.
16. The rich will do anything for the poor except to get off their backs.
17. To have slept while others fought is your shame.
18. Claim your right to do, to dream and to dare.

Exercise 4

Write sentences containing the six infinitive forms of the verb *obey.*

DON'TS FOR INFINITIVES

165. Don't split your infinitives. Keep the *to* and the infinitive together as much as possible. Don't say, *They intended to never come back*. Say rather, *They intended never to come back*. Sometimes, however, the meaning can be more aptly expressed by placing the adverb modifier between the *to* and the infinitive, as for example:

> To almost succeed is not enough.
> It will be found to far exceed our expectations.

In these sentences the adverbs *almost* and *far* express our meaning more closely if they are placed between the *to* and the infinitive. Ordinarily, however, do not split your infinitives, but place the adverb modifier either before or after the infinitive.

166. Don't use *to* by itself without the rest of the infinitive. Don't say, *Do as I tell you to*. Say instead, *Do as I tell you to do*; or, *Do as I tell you.* Don't say, *He deceived us once and he is likely to again*. Say rather, *He deceived us once and he is likely to deceive us again*, or *to do so again*.

167. Don't use *and* **for** *to*. Don't say, *Try and go if you can*. Say instead, *Try to go if you can*.

Correct the following sentences:

We ought to bravely fight for our rights.
I will do all my employer tells me to.
We shall try and get our lessons.
I ought to at least help my comrades but I am afraid to.

Exercise 5

Study carefully the infinitives in the following quotation. Notice which are active and which are passive infinitives.

> The twenty thousand men prematurely slain on a field of battle, mean, to the women of their race, twenty thousand human creatures *to be borne* within them for months, *to be given* birth to in anguish, *to be fed* from their breasts and *to be reared* with toil, if the members of the tribe and the strength of the nation are *to be maintained*. In nations continually at war, incessant and unbroken child-bearing is by war imposed on all women if the state is *to survive*; and whenever war occurs, if numbers are *to be maintained*, there must be an increased child-bearing and rearing. This throws upon woman, as woman, a war tax, compared with which all that the male expends in military preparations is comparatively light.
>
> It is especially in the domain of war that we, the bearers of men's bodies, who supply its most valuable munition, who, not amid the clamor and ardor of battle, but singly, and alone, with a three-in-the-morning courage, shed our blood and face death that the battle-field might have its food, a food more precious to us than our heart's blood; it is we, especially, who, in the domain of war, have our word *to say*, a word no man can say for us. It is our intention *to enter* into the domain of war and *to labor* there till in the course of generations we have extinguished it. —*Olive Schreiner.*

Exercise 6

Mark the participles and infinitives.

Gold! Gold! Gold! Gold!
Bright and yellow, hard and cold,

Molten, graven, hammer'd and roll'd;
Heavy to get, and light to hold;
Hoarded, barter'd, bought, and sold,
Stolen, borrow'd, squander'd, doled:
Spurn'd by the young, but hugg'd by the old
To the very verge of the churchyard mould;
Price of many a crime untold:
Gold! Gold! Gold! Gold!
Good or bad a thousand-fold!
How widely its agencies vary —
To save—to ruin—to curse—to bless—
As even its minted coins express,
Now stamp'd with the image of Good Queen Bess,
And now of a bloody Mary.

—*Thos. Hood.*

SPELLING

LESSON 9

In our English lessons, we have been studying the division of words into parts of speech. We have been studying them as we use them in expressing our thoughts but we may study them in other ways also. We may study them as words alone.

Studied in this way we find that we have simple, compound and derivative words. For example, *man*, *man-slaughter*, *manly*. *Man* is a simple word. *Man-slaughter* is a compound word formed of twosimple words. *Manly* is a derivative word derived from *man*.

When a compound word is first formed, it is usually written with a hyphen; but after the word has been used awhile the hyphen is often dropped and the two parts are written together as a simple word.

A simple word is a single word which cannot be divided into other words without changing its meaning.

A compound word is composed of two or more simple words into which it may be divided, each retaining its own meaning.

A derivative word is one which is derived from a simple word by the addition of another syllable.

In next week's lesson we will take up the study of these derivatives.

Divide the compound words in this week's lesson into the simple words of which they are composed.

Monday

Birthday
Coal-tar
Craftsman

Foreman
Gunpowder

Tuesday

Handkerchief
Headquarters
Lawsuit
Lockout
Bookkeeper

Wednesday

Motorman
Newspaper
Pasteboard
Postage-stamp
Postmaster

Thursday

Salesman
Second-hand
Shirtwaist
Sidewalk
Staircase

Friday

Trademark
Time-table
Typewriter
Tableware
Sewing-machine

Saturday

Undergarment

Underhand
Water-mark
Woodwork
Workshop

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 10

Dear Comrade:

We have been studying this course in Plain English for some weeks now and I trust that you have been enjoying as well as benefiting by the study of our wonderful and expressive language. Did you ever stop to think what a wonderful step it was in evolution when man first began to use the spoken word? And yet it was a still more wonderful step in advance when he began to use the written word for our highest evolution, and development would have been impossible without the help of written speech. An illiterate man may be a good workman and prosperous so far as the material things of life and his immediate contact with his fellow men are concerned, but we have only to think for a moment of what this world would be if we had no written language, to understand what a mighty power it has been in evolution.

Suppose we had no way by which we could communicate with our friends at a distance. Suppose there were no written words by which we could set down the countless dealings between man and man. What a hopeless tangle this social life of ours would soon become! Suppose also that we had no knowledge of the past, no knowledge of the discoveries and inventions of past generations except that which could be handed down to us through oral speech. All our knowledge of history, of the deeds and development of the past, all the observations by which science has uncovered to us the mysteries of nature would be largely lost to us. It was the invention of writing alone which made possible man's growth from barbarism to civilization, and it is more true than we oftentimes realize, that it is "only a wall of books that separates the civilized man of to-day from the savage of yesterday." And yet I wonder if we have ever stopped to think how this art of writing developed. Knowledge of the alphabet and of the letters by which we form our words and hence are able to express our ideas, has become such a common-place thing to us that we have forgotten what a wonder it is and how it has slowly grown and developed through the centuries. Yet there

are races to-day that have no written language such as we know and to whom our written language seems truly a miracle.

The story is told of an Indian who was sent from one colony to another with four loaves of bread accompanied by a letter stating their number. The Indian ate one of the loaves and of course, was found out. The next time when he was sent upon a similar errand he repeated the theft but he took the precaution to hide the letter under a stone while he was eating the bread so that it might not see him!

But it is only the things that we do not understand which we invest with mystery and as we study the story of the alphabet in this series of letters we find that it has been a natural development accomplished by the growing powers of man. In succeeding letters we will trace this most interesting story of the alphabet.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

HELPING VERBS

168. We have found that whenever a verb is used by itself in making an assertion it denotes either present or past time. When we use a verb phrase, it expresses some other time than the past or present. These verb phrases are formed by using *shall*, *will*, *have*, *had*, and the various forms of the verb *be* with some form of the principal verb. These verbs which help to form verb phrases are called *helping*, or *auxiliary verbs*. Auxiliary means helping.

We have used *have* and *had* with the past participle to form the present perfect and past perfect time forms. We have used *shall* and *will* with different forms of the verb to denote future time, and we have used different forms of the verb *be* in making the various other time forms. So *shall*, *will*, *have*, *had* and the various forms of the verb *be* are *helping verbs*, which we use to help us in making verb phrases.

169. But these are not all of the helping verbs. There are other helping verbs which we use in forming verb phrases to express different ideas. These are

such verbs as *should* and *would*, *may* and *might*, *can* and *could*, *must* and *ought*, *do* and *did*.

Exercise 1

Fill the blank spaces in the following sentences with the appropriate forms of the helping verbs, *shall*, *will*, *have*, *had* and *be*.

1. When.....the workers organize?
2. Education.....help us win.
3. The world.....had enough of war.
4. We.....deceived by the masters.
5. The workers.....organized into craft unions.
6. They.....never ceased the struggle.
7. The state.....founded on exploitation.
8. Mutual aid.....been an important factor in evolution.
9. The truth.....taught to the people.
10. The victory.....gained by the proletariat.
11. The nations of Europe.....preparing for war for years.
12. The International.....recognized war for defense.
13. We.....not made the class distinctions, but we.....recognize them as long as they exist.
14. The evolution of animals and the evolution of plants.....proceeded according to the same general laws.
15. We.....never win while the majority remains ignorant.
16. The strikers.....betrayed by their leaders.

SHOULD AND WOULD

170. *Should* and *would* are the past-time forms of *shall* and *will*. We use them to express action or existence dependent upon some condition, thus:

I should go if I were well enough.
He should join us if you asked him.

In these sentences *should* and *would* express action which is possible now or will be in the future, provided some other action takes place.

The same distinction which we found made in the use *shall* and *will* has been made with *should* and *would*; that is, that *should* used with the first person, expresses action dependent upon condition; but *would*, used with the first person, implies exercise of the will. This rule is not closely followed, though it expresses a nice distinction in the use of *should* and *would*. In ordinary usage we use either *should* or *would* with the first person without any distinction of meaning, as for example:

I should struggle on even if it meant death.
I would stand for my principles though I stood entirely alone.

We do not use *should* however, with the second and third persons to express an action or existence dependent upon some condition. *Should* used with the second and third person implies obligation. *Would* is used with the second or third person to express an action dependent upon some condition, as for example:

He would not go, even if you insisted.
They would come if you invited them.
You would believe him if you could hear him.
You would be surprised if I should tell you the reason.

171. *Should* and *would* in all of the sentences which we have quoted are used to express action or existence dependent upon some condition which is expressed in that part of the sentence introduced by such conjunctions as *if* and *though*.

The parts of the sentence introduced by these conjunctions express the condition upon which the other action is dependent. When we use *should* in sentences without this condition, it means practically the same as *ought*, and implies an obligation. We use *should* with the first and second and third persons when we use it with this meaning, as for example:

I should have gone yesterday. You should be with us in this fight. They should never fear defeat.

172. *Ought* could be used in all these sentences and express practically the same meaning. *Should* used in this way implies obligation.

Exercise 2

Study carefully the following sentences. Write in the blank space preceding each sentence the number of the paragraph in the lesson which governs the use of the helping verb in that sentence.

1. ..... The workers should organize if they desire to control production.
2. ..... The proletariat would destroy this system if they understood their power.
3. ..... Every worker would join his fellows if he could but realize the class struggle.
4. ..... We would all enjoy plenty if we produced for use instead of for profit.
5. ..... The ruling class would not give up their privileges even though they knew that their cupidity endangers society.
6. ..... The injury of one should be the injury of all.
7. ..... The workers' International should stand for the international solidarity of the workers.
8. ..... You should never fear the ridicule of little minds.
9. ..... You would never fear ridicule if you were conscious of your own power.
10. ..... No man should fear to think for himself.
11. ..... No man would fear to think for himself if the world were truly free.
12. ..... Compromise now would mean defeat.

MAY AND MIGHT

173. *May* used as a helping verb means present permission in regard to an action or possession, as:

You may come with us.
He may have the money.

174. It may also mean a possible action or possession. *You may come with us*, for example, might mean that some time in the future it is possible that

you will come with us. *He may have the money*, might mean either *He is given permission to have the money*, or *It is possible that he has it*.

May, used with many verb forms, means *it is possible*. For example: *He may be hungry*, *He may have starved*. *He may have been starving*; that is, it is possible that *he is hungry*; that *he has starved*; that *he was starving*.

175. *Might* is the past form of *may* and expresses past permission to do or to be and also possibility in the past. For example: *The officer said he might go*. That is, he gave him permission to go. *You might have helped your comrades*; that is, *you had the power to have helped*.

Might is also used to express permission or the power to do in the present and future, on condition. For example:

He might find work if he were trained.
The workers might destroy this insane system if they would.

Exercise 3

Study carefully the following sentences. Write in the blank space preceding each sentence the number of the paragraph in the lesson which governs the use of the helping verbs *may* or *might* in that sentence.

1. ..... The solidarity of the workers might have averted this war.
2. ....."Of all sad words of tongue or pen,
   The saddest are these—'it might have been.'"
3. ..... You might join us.
4. ..... The people struggle that they may live.
5. ..... Try; you might succeed.
6. ..... The day may come when this day's deeds shall be remembered.
7. ..... Victory might be ours if we dared to face the issue.
8. ....."Men may come and men may go;
   But I go on forever."
9. ..... It seemed possible that we might win.
10. ..... May we ever be loyal and true!
11. ..... It appeared for a time that we might be involved in war.

12. ..... Let come what may, we will not yield.

CAN AND COULD

176. *Can* is the present-time form and *could* the past-time form, and both imply ability or power to do or to be.

You can go means *You are able to go*,—*You have the power to go*. *You may go* means *You have permission to go*. *Can* is often used when we should use *may*, when we mean to give permission. Habit plays a great part in our life and knowledge of the right way does not always suffice. It is only continued effort that will establish correct habits of speech. Good English would be easy of accomplishment if "to do were as easy as to know what it were good to do."

We are too often like the mother in the story. "Can I have a piece of pie?" asked the child. "May I?" the mother corrected. Then the child asked, "May I have a piece of pie?" and the mother answered, "Yes, you can." Knowledge said, *may*; habit said *can*, and the ready tongue obeyed the force of habit.

Say the correct word over and over aloud until it sounds right to your ear and flows readily to your tongue.

177. *Could* is sometimes used in the present sense to denote power to do, conditioned upon willingness, as:

He could if he would.

Exercise 4

Study carefully the following sentences. Write in the blank space preceding each sentence the number of the paragraph in the lesson which governs the use of the helping verbs *can* or *could* in that sentence.

1. ..... I can say love when others say hate;
I can say every man when others say one man;

What can I do? I can give myself to life,
When other men refuse themselves to life.

2. ..... No one can be free till all are free.
3. ..... They could win their freedom if they would prepare themselves to be free.
4. ..... What can I do, being alone?
5. ..... If all men could catch the vision of freedom, wars would cease.
6. ..... Could you find a better way to spend your time than in study?
7. ..... Men would rise in revolt if they could know the facts.

MUST AND OUGHT

178. *Must* and *ought* imply obligation. *Must* conveys the idea of being obliged to do an action from necessity or compulsion, as,

You must have known it.
He must go.

Ought was originally the past time form of *owe*, hence means *to be indebted to*, *to owe*. It conveys the idea of a moral obligation, as,

You ought to help the cause.
You ought to understand.

179. *Ought* is always used with the infinitive, and the same form is used to express both the present and the past time. The difference in time is expressed by a change in the infinitive instead of a change in the form of the helping verb. With *may* and *might* and *can* and *could*, present and past time are expressed by a change in the form of the helping verb. With the helping verb *ought*, the difference in time is expressed in the infinitive. For example:

He ought to pay us our wages.

This means, *He owes it to us to pay us our wages now*.

He ought to have paid us our wages.

This means, *He owed it to us to pay us our wages some time in the past*.

180. The present infinitive is used with the helping verb *ought* to express present time and the perfect infinitive is used with *ought* to express past time.

Exercise 5

Study carefully the following sentences. Write in the blank space preceding each sentence the number of the paragraph in the lesson which governs the use of the helping verb *must* or *ought* in that sentence.

1. ..... Service must be the key note of the future.
2. ..... Competition must give place to co-operation.
3. ..... Ought we to fear, who know the truth?
4. ..... Government ought to be the administration of things.
5. ..... No man ought to have the power of life and death over any other human being.
6. ..... It may cost much but humanity must be set free at any cost.
7. ..... What ought to be the attitude of the workers toward war?
8. ..... "For man must work and woman must weep,
   For there is little to do and many to keep."
9. ..... The day must come when we can live the dream.

DO AND DID

181. *Do* and *did* are used as helping verbs to give emphasis—to form emphatic verb phrases. *Do* is the present time form and *did* the past time form, as for example:

I do wish you would come.
I did hope he would win.

182. When we use the negative *not* we use the helping verbs *do* and *did* to form our verb phrases. For example, we do not say:

I obey not.

I walked not.
He comes not.
They arrived not.

But in expressing the present and past time forms with the negative *not*, we say instead:

I do not obey.
I did not walk.
He does not come.
They did not arrive.

183. We also use *do* and *did* with the present and past time forms of the verb in writing interrogative sentences. For example, we do not say:

Comes he with them?
Studied you yesterday?
Found they the book?
Think you it is true?

But we say instead:

Does he come with them?
Did you study yesterday?
Did they find the book?
Do you think it is true?

Exercise 6

Write in the blank space before each sentence the number of the paragraph which governs the use of the helping verb *do* or *did* in that sentence.

1. ..... Slaves do not think; they obey.
2. ..... Men do not obey; they think.
3. ..... Do you know that two per cent of the people own sixty per cent of the wealth?
4. ..... The children of the masses do not have the opportunity to attend school.

5. ..... Did not every nation claim a war for defense?
6. ....."We did not dare to breathe a prayer,
Or give our anguish scope."
7. ..... We do desire the freedom of the people.
8. ..... We did hope that war might be averted.

Let us sum up the auxiliary or helping verbs.

184. Helping verbs are used to express:

The different time forms—*shall*, *will*, *have*, *had*, *be*.
Power to do or to be—*can*, *could*, *might*.
Permission—*may* and *might*.
Possibility—*may* and *might*.
Obligation—*must*, *ought* and *should*.
Necessity—*must*.
Condition—*would*.

Mark the helping verbs in the following exercise:

Exercise 7

The earth shall rise on new foundations.
We have been naught, we shall be all.
No more tradition's chains shall bind us.
Oh! Liberty! Can man resign thee?
Can dungeon's bolts and bars confine thee?
Capital could never have existed if labor had not first existed.
What can I do? I can talk out when others are silent. I can say man when others say money.
Do you hear the children weeping, O my brothers?
Political freedom can exist only where there is industrial freedom. Political democracy can exist only where there is industrial democracy.
Who would be free, themselves must strike the blow.
If there is anything that cannot bear free thought, let it crack.

No doctrine, however established, should be protected from discussion.

Society can overlook murder, adultery or swindling; it never forgives the preaching of a new gospel.

The tree of liberty must be refreshed from time to time with the blood of patriots and tyrants.

Every man is a consumer and ought to be a producer.

No picture of life can have any variety which does not admit the odious facts.

I know not what course others may take, but as for me, give me liberty or give me death.

Exercise 8

Note the use of the helping verbs in the following quotation. Could you use *might* or *must* or *ought* anywhere and strengthen the emphasis?

> "I have looked at this claim by the light of history and my own confidence, and it seems to me, so looked at, to be a most just claim, and that resistance to it means nothing short of a denial of the whole of civilization.
>
> This then is the claim:
>
> It is right and necessary that all men should have work to do which shall be worth doing and be of itself pleasant to do; and which should be done under such conditions as would make it neither over-wearisome nor over-anxious.
>
> Turn that claim about as I may, think of it as long as I can, I cannot find that it is an exorbitant claim; yet if society would or could admit it, the face of the earth would be changed; discontent and strife and dishonesty would be ended. To feel that we were doing work useful to others and pleasant to ourselves, and that such work and its due reward could not fail us! What serious harm could happen to us then? And the price to be paid for so making the world happy, must be revolution."
>
> —*William Morris.*

SPELLING

LESSON 10

Simple words are sometimes spoken of as root words. *Root* means that from which something grows. We know our language is a living, growing thing and these root words are the roots where the growth begins. One way in which this growth is accomplished and new words added to our language is by placing syllables before or after the root word—the simple word—as, for example: *unmanly*.

In this we have a syllable placed before and a syllable placed after the root word *man*. The syllable placed before the root word is called the prefix from the Latin *pre* meaning *before* and the Latin word to place. Therefore, prefix means literally *to place before*.

A prefix consists of one or more syllables placed before a word to qualify its meaning.

The syllable placed after the root word, or simple word, is called the suffix, from the Latin *sub* meaning after and the Latin word to place. *Subfix* the word should be literally, but for the sake of the sound—the euphony, the good sound—we say *suffix*.

A suffix consists of one or more syllables placed after a word to qualify its meaning.

The words made by adding prefixes and suffixes are called derivative words.

You remember we used a suffix in forming participles. The present participle is formed by adding the suffix *ing* to the simple form of the verb. The past participle is formed by adding the suffix *ed* to the simple form of the verb.

The words in the spelling lesson for this week are derivative words formed by adding a prefix or suffix, or both, to the simple word. Draw a line

through the prefix and the suffix and leave the simple or root word.

Monday

Wonderful
Prosperous
Disloyalty
Uncovered
Government

Tuesday

Memorize
Unreality
Co-operation
Dependent
Truly

Wednesday

Beautify
Countless
Uncomfortable
Dishonesty
Producer

Thursday

Existence
Untruthfulness
Discontentment
Victory
Removable

Friday

Impurity
Unwillingness

Indebted
Overwearisome
Enjoyable

Saturday

Obligation
Hopeless
Endanger
Precaution
Denial

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 11

Dear Comrade:

As we begin the study of the story of the alphabet and the evolution of written speech, we discover that primitive man imagined the art of writing to have had divine origin, to have been handed down from the powers above.

It is natural for us to personify and envelop in mystery the things that we do not understand. So these primitive people have attributed the discovery of the art of writing to the gods and have looked upon the parchment containing the written word which they cannot understand, as possessing magical power; but as we come to learn the origin and causes of things, they are divested of their mystery and become no longer gods and enslavers of men. We understand the laws that govern their action and they become our servants. Take lightning for example. Primitive people personified the lightning or called it the thunder bolts of Jove or attributed it to an act of divine providence. We have learned the laws that govern the action of electricity and so this mighty giant is no longer a god to whom we bow in submission, and who slays us at his whim. He has become our most faithful servant who travels along the wires at our behest and obeys our every bidding. So in the early stages, the art of writing belonged only to the favored few and was made the means of enslavement of the common people instead of the means of liberation.

Knowledge has always been power and the ruling classes of the world, desiring power over the people, have striven to keep knowledge within their own circle; so the art of writing was known only to the few. The few books in circulation were laboriously written by hand and circulated, largely among the clergy, who used it as priests have ever used their power—from medicine man to Pope,—for the enslavement of the people and the protection of the privileges of a few. This is aptly illustrated in the law which was known as "the benefit of clergy" which was not entirely repealed until the year 1827. Under this statute, exemption from trial for criminal

offenses was given to the clergy and also to any man who could read. If a person were sentenced to death for some criminal offense, the bishop of that community might claim him as a clerk and if, when given a Latin book, he could read a verse or two, the court would declare "he reads like a clerk" and the offender was only burned in the hand and then set free.

The invention of the printing press in the fifteenth century which made possible the diffusion of knowledge among the people, was the beginning of the emancipation of the workers of the world. But while we realize, perhaps, what this art of writing means to us and by the knowledge of its growth and development no longer ascribe it to divine origin or consider it a blessing designed by a supreme being for a favored few, still most of us know very little of the interesting evolution which made possible the alphabet which is the basis of our written and spoken language of to-day. When we realize how through all these long centuries man has been struggling, striving, evolving, developing, reaching out toward fuller, freer and richer life, it gives us courage in our struggle and makes us see ourselves, not as individuals alone, but as links in a mighty chain clasping hands with that primitive man of the past, from whom we have inherited the power we now possess, and reaching forth also to clasp the hands of those who shall come and handing on to them the things for which we have struggled and added to the inheritance of the past.

Next week we will have the story of man's first beginning in the art of writing.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

THE VERB "BE"

185. The verb is perhaps the most difficult part of speech to master because it has more form changes than any other part of speech.

In this lesson we are going to emphasize the most important things to remember in the study of the verb and also call attention to the most common mistakes.

186. First, master that little verb be in all its forms. The only way to do this is to commit to memory these forms. Say them over and over until any other form does not sound right.

Present	**Past**	**Future**
Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*
1. I am.	I was.	I shall be.
2. You are.	You were.	You will be.
3. He is.	He was.	He will be.
Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
1. We are.	We were.	We shall be.
2. You are.	You were.	You will be.
3. They are.	They were.	They will be.

Pres. Perf.	**Past Perf.**	**Fut. Perf.**
Have been.	Had been.	Shall have been.

187. Do not use *aint* for *is not* or *am not*. Do not say, *He aint here*, or *I aint going*. Say, *He isn't here*; *I am not going*.

A FREQUENT MISTAKE

188. Perhaps one of the most frequent mistakes is the confusion in the use of the past time form and the past participle. Remember that the past time form is never used except in expressing past time; never use it in forming a verb phrase. Take the verb *do*, for example—say, *He did the work*, never, *He done the work*; but we should say, *He has done the work*, never, *He has did the work*. *Say* and *seen* are confused in the same manner. Watch this carefully.

Exercise 1

Underline the correct word in the following:

1. Who did—done it?
2. He sung—sang well.
3. He sunk—sank before we could reach him.
4. She written—wrote him a letter.
5. He taken—took the book.
6. They swum—swam the river.
7. I saw—seen him do it.
8. They drank—drunk too much.
9. He soon began—begun to fail.
10. The lad ran—run home.
11. They come—came yesterday.

WITH HELPING VERBS

189. Never use the past time form with the helping verbs *has*, *had*, *was* and *were*. Always use the past participle. Watch this carefully. For example, never say, *He has went*. *Went* is the past time form. Say, *He has gone*.

Exercise 2

Underscore the correct word in the following sentences:

1. He had tore—torn the book.
2. Have you ever sang—sung this tune?
3. They have showed—shown us how to win.
4. She has went—gone away.
5. The trees were shook—shaken by the wind.
6. He was chose—chosen for leader.
7. He has rose—risen from the ranks.
8. It was wrote—written by him.
9. He has took—taken the prize.
10. He was gave—given the money.
11. I have forgot—forgotten the rule.
12. The river was froze—frozen over.
13. The machine was broke—broken.

14. It was wore—worn out.
15. The meal was ate—eaten in silence.

PAST TIME FORMS

190. Watch your speech to see if you use an incorrect verb form for the past time form. Study the table of irregular verbs and refer to it frequently. We often make the mistake of forming the past time form by adding *ed* when properly it is formed irregularly. For example: we often say *drawed* for *drew*, *throwed* for *threw*, etc.

Exercise 3

Draw a line under the correct form in the following:

1. He grew—growed rapidly.
2. He knew—knowed better.
3. He catched—caught the ball.
4. He drew—drawed the water.
5. They threw—throwed him over.
6. I drinked—drank the water.
7. I climbed—clumb the tree.
8. I seed—saw him do it.
9. She teached—taught school.

VERBS OF SIMILAR FORM

191. Do not use one verb for another of similar form but different meaning. The following are the most common of these:

Lay (incomplete verb, requires an object) meaning to place or to put; as, *to lay the book down*. Principal parts: *Present*, lay; *Past*, laid; *Past participle*, laid.

Lie (complete verb, takes no object) meaning to recline, to rest; as, *to lie in bed*. Principal parts: *Present*, lie; *Past*, lay; *Past participle*, lain.

Set (incomplete verb, requires an object) meaning to place or to put; as, *to set the table*. Principal parts: *Present*, set; *Past*, set; *Past participle*, set.

Sit (complete verb, takes no object) meaning to rest, as, *to sit in a chair*. Principal parts: *Present*, sit; *Past*, sat; *Past participle*, sat.

Raise (incomplete verb, requires an object) meaning to cause to rise, to lift up. Principal parts: *Present*, raise; *Past*, raised; *Past participle*, raised.

Rise (complete verb, takes no object) meaning to get up, to ascend. Principal parts: *Present*, rise; *Past*, rose; *Past participle*, risen.

192. NOTE—These three verbs need an object to complete their meaning:

Present	*Past*	*Past Participle*
set	set	set
lay	laid	laid
raise	raised	raised

193. NOTE—These three verbs need no object:

Present	*Past*	*Past Participle*
sit	sat	sat
lie	lay	lain
rise	rose	risen

Exercise 4

Fill in the following blanks with the correct form of the verbs *sit*, *set*, *lay*, *lie*, *raise* and *rise*:

1. I.....it on the table and there it.....
2. They.....the battle ship, Maine.
3. Where did you.....it?
4. A mile of pipe has been.....
5. The miners.....a large strike fund.
6. She.....down to sleep.
7. The body.....in state three days.
8. The farmers of the U. S.....an enormous wheat crop.
9. The city.....on the right bank.
10. We have.....the corner stone.
11. When wages are....., prices are.....too.
12. He.....in bed all morning.
13. .....down Fido.
14. The sun.....at six this morning.
15. She has been.....there all day.
16. The ship.....to during the storm.
17. They have been.....new tracks.
18. The hen is.....on the eggs.
19. Somebody said, "Early to bed and early to....., makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise."
20. He.....motionless for an hour.
21. He.....out the trees in rows.
22. He will.....in his position.
23. The court will.....in May.
24. Where did he.....?
25. She.....the table while he.....there.
26. He.....the clock for six o'clock.
27. The water has.....two feet since the rain.
28. He.....the book down and.....on it.
29. The hen has been.....a week.
30. .....it on the table.
31. He.....in the shade and watched her.....the plants.

COMMON ERRORS

194. Remember that in the present time form the third person singular takes the s-form, but the s-form is never used *except* with the *third person*

singular. We often make the mistake of using the *s-form* with a *plural* subject. Notice carefully the following sentences, and correct the errors. All of the sentences are wrong.

1. The days is getting shorter.
2. The men has struck.
3. The trains was late.
4. These papers is written for you.
5. You was disappointed, wasn't you?
6. There is several coming.
7. The nights was dark and cloudy.
8. The clouds has gathered.
9. They was anxious to come.

195. When two subjects are connected by *and*, **the s-form of the verb must not be used**, unless both subjects refer to one person; as:

The president and the secretary (two persons) were late.
The president and secretary (one person) was elected.

196. But when the two subjects are connected by *or* **or** *nor* **then use the s-form of the verb**; as:

Neither Germany nor Russia admits a war of offense.
Either the House or the Senate rejects the bill.

197. Never use the infinitive sign *to* **by itself**; as:

I have not written and do not expect *to*.
He has not gone nor does he intend *to*.

198. Never use don't for doesn't. The use of *don't* for *doesn't* is a very common mistake. *Don't* is a contraction of *do not* and *doesn't* of *does not*. When you are in doubt as to which to use, think or speak the two words in full and see if the verb agrees with the subject. *Do not* is used with a plural subject, and *does not* with a singular subject. For example: *He don't believe me*. This sentence in full would be, *He do not believe me*, which is incorrect. *He does not* (*doesn't*) *believe me* is correct. Or, *They doesn't*

believe me. This sentence in full would read, *They does not believe me*, which is incorrect. *They do not* (*don't*) *believe me* is correct.

199. Do not use *has got*, **or** *have got* **for** *must*. For example, do not say, *We have got to go*. Say, *We must go*. Not, *He has got to do what I say*; but, *He must do as I say*.

200. Do not say *had ought*. For example: *You had ought to know better*. Omit the *had*; it is unnecessary and incorrect. Say, *You ought to know better*.

201. Do not say *says I* **or** *thinks I*.

> Says I, "Will you go?"
> Says he, "That's what will happen."
> Thinks I to myself, "I'll show you."

These are incorrect. Say instead:

> I said, "Will you go?"
> He said, "That's what will happen."
> I thought, "I'll show you."

Exercise 5

Mark all the verbs in the following quotations and note carefully their use.

1. Speak properly and in as few words as you can but always plainly; for the end of speech is not ostentation but to be understood.
   —*Penn*.

2. "Freedom's battle, once begun,
   Bequeathed from bleeding sire to son,
   Though baffled oft, is ever won."

Note the use of *may* and *can* in this quotation:

3. Knowledge cannot be stolen from us. It cannot be bought or sold. We may be poor, and the sheriff may come and sell our furniture, or drive away our cow, or take our pet lamb and leave us homeless and penniless; but he cannot lay the law's hand upon the jewelry of our minds. —*E. Burritt.*

Note the use of *shall* and *will* and *would* and *should* in the following. Richard Grant White says: "I do not know in English literature another passage in which the distinction between *shall* and *will* and *would* and *should* is at once so elegantly, so variously, so precisely, and so compactly illustrated."

4. "How long I shall love him I can no more tell,
   Than, had I a fever, when I should be well.
   My passion shall kill me before I will show it,
   And yet I would give all the world he did know it;
   But oh how I sigh, when I think, should he woo me,
   I cannot refuse what I know would undo me."

5. I want it said of me by those who know me best that I always plucked a thistle and planted a flower where I thought a flower would grow. —*Abraham Lincoln.*

Exercise 6

Note the nouns as well as the verbs in the following quotation. Note also the use of infinitives and participles. Mark every verb and use it in a sentence of your own.

Faith and Truth

You say "Believe;" I say "Trust."

Between those two words is a great gulf fixed.

The idea that there can be a moral obligation to believe external facts is unworthy of a freeman, but to trust is as much the true nature of man as it is that of a babe to draw in

its mother's milk.

You say "Creed;" I say "Faith."

A creed at best is but a sorry caricature of a faith.

Faith is the proper atmosphere of man, trust is his native buoyancy, and his only obligation is to follow the highest law of his being.

You have one supreme duty above all creeds and conventions—namely, to think honestly, and say what you think.

Have you doubts about your creed? say so; only thus has the true faith ever advanced.

It is not God, but the devil, who whispers: "Think at your peril!"

Do you see flaws in the ancient structure of respectability and law and order? Say so; only thus has the condition of man ever improved.

Have courage to be the heretic and traitor that you are by nature, and do not worry about the consequences.

Be a creator, as you were born to be, and spurn beyond all infamies the wretched role of a repeater and apologist.

The world lives and grows by heresy and treason.

It dies by conformity to error and loyalty to wrong.

Ernest Crosby.

Exercise 7

In the following paragraph, the predicates are printed in italics, and the participles and infinitives in italic capitals. Study carefully.

If it *were taught* to every child, and in every school and college, that it *is* morally wrong for anyone *TO LIVE* upon the *COMBINED* labor of his fellowmen without *CONTRIBUTING* an approximately equal amount of useful labor, whether physical or mental, in return, all kinds of *GAMBLING*, as well as many other kinds of useless occupations, *would be seen TO BE* of the same nature as direct dishonesty or fraud, and, therefore *would* soon *come TO BE CONSIDERED* disgraceful as well as immoral. *Alfred Russel Wallace.*

Exercise 8

Underscore all the verbs in the following and note the participles, the infinitives and the various time forms; also the helping verbs:

What, speaking in quite unofficial language, is the net purport of war? To my knowledge, for example, there dwell and toil, in the British village of Dumrudge, usually some five hundred souls. From these, by certain 'natural enemies' of the French, there are selected, say thirty able-bodied men; Dumrudge, at her own expense, has suckled and nursed them; she has, not without difficulty and sorrow, fed them up to manhood and trained them in the crafts, so that one can weave, another build and another hammer. Nevertheless, amidst much weeping and swearing, they are selected; all dressed in red and shipped away, at the public charges, some two thousand miles, or, say only to the south of Spain, and fed there till wanted. And now to that same spot in the south of Spain are thirty similar French artisans, in like manner, wending their ways; till at length the thirty stand facing the thirty, each with his gun in his hand. Straightway, the word 'Fire' is given, and they blow the souls out of one another; and in the place of the sixty brisk, useful craftsmen, the world has sixty dead carcasses, which it must bury and anew shed tears for.

Had these men any quarrel? Busy as the devil is, not the smallest! They lived far enough apart; were the entirest strangers; nay, in so wide a universe, there was even, unconsciously, by commerce, some mutual helpfulness between them.

How then?

Simpleton! Their governors had fallen out; and instead of shooting one another, had these poor blockheads shoot. —*Carlyle.*

SPELLING

LESSON 11

There are but few rules which can be learned to aid in the spelling of English words. The spelling of words must be largely mastered by concentration and effort of the memory. It will help you to memorize the correct spelling if you will write each word a number of times. This gives you a visual image of the word. Then spell it aloud a number of times. This will give you an auditory image.

Words which you find difficult to master, write in a list by themselves and review frequently. There are a few rules, however, which are helpful to know. There is one rule of spelling we want to learn this week concerning words formed by adding a suffix.

A word of one syllable which ends in a single consonant before which stands a single vowel, doubles the final consonant when a suffix beginning with a vowel is added.

For example: *mat*, *matted*, *matting*; *sun*, *sunned*, *sunning*.

Mat ends in *t*, a single consonant which is preceded by the single vowel *a*, —so you double the *t* when you add the suffix *ed* or *ing*, which begin with a vowel.

Notice these: *Blend*, *blended*, *blending*; *Help*, *helped*, *helping*.

These words do not end in a single consonant, so you do not double the consonant.

Notice also: *Lean*, *leaned*, *leaning*; *Rain*, *rained*, *raining*.

These words end in a single consonant, but before the consonant is a double vowel, *ea* in *lean* and *ai* in *rain*. So we do not double the final consonant.

This same rule holds true of any suffix, beginning with a vowel, as *er* and *est*, for example: *sad*, *sadder*, *saddest*. *Slim*, *slimmer*, *slimmest*.

Learn to spell the following words. Add the suffixes *ed* and *ing* to the words for Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday. Add *er* and *est* to the words for Thursday, Friday and Saturday.

Monday

Chat
Cheat
Grin
Groan
Suit

Tuesday

Sap
Soap
Bet
Beat
Rot

Wednesday

Talk
Teach
Gain
Stir
Plan

Thursday

Thin
Dear
Flat
Cheap
Straight

Friday

Clean
Brief
Fair
Shrill
Wet

Saturday

Strong
Great
Mad
Fleet
Fat

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 12

Dear Comrade:

In this lesson we are beginning the study of still another part of speech. You will notice that in words, at least, we give credit and place in society only because of *work performed*. In the society of men, people are given place and position too often because of outward dress and form or because of some special privilege. They are not given their place in society because of the work which they do or because they perform any useful function. In fact, in our topsy-turvy world, those who perform no work at all, but are simply parasites upon society, have claimed for themselves the best of everything and the highest positions.

Surely some time we shall see a society as successfully organized as our society of words, when men will be received, not because of that which they possess, but because of that which they do and are. Man has really laid the foundation for an ideal commonwealth in his organization of words into a spoken and written language.

When we think back across the centuries and think of the primitive man as he dwelt in trees to protect himself from the wild animals, we wonder what sort of speech he used then. Possibly it was only a little more articulate than the speech of some animals.

But man had within him the instinct to question, and this has been the root of all his progress. We can imagine these primitive men witnessing the wonder of fire, as the terrible unknown god of the lightning set fire to the forest in which they lived; but after the fear had subsided, some adventurous, inquiring forefather of ours ventured near the ashes, and began to investigate concerning this fearful and wonderful thing.

So gradually they discovered the use of fire, and with it a wonderful new future opened before the primitive man. With these great discoveries, he needed a better form of communication with his comrades, so articulate

speech developed. But when we go back into the beginning of written speech, it is difficult for us to trace it to its beginning.

The first evidence we find was of man as a sign maker. On the walls of caves in France and Belgium and here in America, we have found rude sketches which the scientists tell us date back to the Ice Age and the Old Stone Age. Here the primitive man has drawn for us crude pictures describing different phases of his life, the animals about him, the hunt and the chase, and in these pictures we find the very beginning of our alphabet of to-day.

How much more wonderful it makes our spoken and written language to know that man has developed it himself. It has not been handed down by some god or powers above; but the spirit of rebellion against the things that be; the great desire to know more and to find out the reason *why* of all the things around us,—these have been the forces that have led the race from the animal-like beings that lived in trees to the race of today that understands in a large measure the laws that govern life.

It is only as we, through this spirit of rebellion, this same divine discontent with the things that are, seek to do our own thinking that we can add our share to the heritage of the race. Let us have the same courage that must have inspired the heart of that primitive man who dared to venture and inquire concerning the fearful things of nature round about him. Let us think for ourselves. Ask always the question "why" and demand the reason for all things. Thus we shall free ourselves and help to free the race.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

IN PLACE OF A NOUN

202. You remember in our study of the parts of speech we found that we have one part of speech that can be used in place of a noun. This is a very helpful part of speech for it saves us a great deal of tiresome repetition. Notice the following sentences:

John Smith is a machinist.
John Smith works at the machine.
The machine is John Smith's master.

This is awkward and the repetition is tiresome. So we say instead:

John Smith is a machinist.
He works at the machine.
It is his master.

You readily understand who and what we mean by *he* and *it* and *his*, and we will all agree that the latter is a much better way of making the statements. These words like *he* and *his* and *it*, which we use in place of the noun, we call *pronouns*. *Pro* means literally in the Latin, *for* or *in place of*; so when we say pronoun we are practically saying, in place of a noun.

A pronoun is a word that is used in place of a noun.

203. The word for which a pronoun stands or the noun in whose place it is used is called its antecedent. *Ante* means *before* and *cedent* comes from the Latin word meaning *go*, hence antecedent means literally, *going before*.

Notice this sentence: *The manager spoke to the men before he left and told them to stop at the office. Manager* is the antecedent of the pronoun *he*, and *men* is the antecedent of the pronoun *them*.

The word for which a pronoun stands is called its antecedent.

KINDS OF PRONOUNS

204. The Latin language has had a great deal of influence upon English. Many of our words are taken from the Latin. You remember that all of the names of our parts of speech are derived from Latin words. We also feel the influence of the Latin language in the way in which we number our personal pronouns. The Romans naturally thought that one would think of one's self first, and so the pronouns referring to one's self, or the person speaking, are called the *first* person pronouns. They are, *I*, *my*, *mine*, *me* and *we*, *our*, *ours*, and *us*.

Then they naturally thought that one would think second of the person spoken to, so the pronouns referring to the person spoken to are called the *second* person pronouns. Formerly *thou* was used in speaking to one person. In German and many other languages this form is still used, but in English we do not today use the singular form *thou* with its variations, *thy*, *thine*, and *thee*, except in poetry or poetic prose. In every-day speech we use *you* and its forms, *your* and *yours*, for both the singular and the plural.

Then the Romans considered last the person or thing of whom they were speaking; so pronouns referring to the person or thing spoken of are called the *third* person pronouns. These are *he*, *she*, and *it*, with their other forms, *his*, *him*, *her*, *hers*, *its*, in the singular, and *they*, *their*, *theirs* and *them* in the plural.

A personal pronoun is one that denotes the speaker, the person spoken to, or the person or thing spoken of.

COMPOUND PERSONAL PRONOUNS

205. All of these forms of pronouns which we have named are simple forms; but we have several personal pronouns which have a compound form; that is, a form made by the addition of *self* or *selves* to the simple forms.

These are called compound personal pronouns. They are, in the singular, *myself*, *thyself*, *yourself*, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, and in the plural, *ourselves*, *yourselves* and *themselves*.

The compound personal pronouns have two uses, reflexive and emphatic.

Reflexive

206. A compound personal pronoun has a reflexive use when the actor becomes the object of its own action or in other words when the subject and the object refer to the same thing; as in this sentence, *He has hurt himself*, *himself* is the object of the incomplete verb *has hurt*, but it refers to the subject *he*. Reflexive is from the Latin *re* meaning *back* and from the Latin

verb meaning *throw*, so reflexive means literally *thrown* back. These pronouns throw their meaning back to the subject.

Emphatic

207. A compound personal pronoun has also an emphatic use when it directs especial attention to the noun or pronoun to which it refers. For example in the sentence, *He did the work himself*, or, *He, himself, did the work*, *himself* gives emphasis or intensifies the meaning of the pronoun *he*.

Remember a compound personal pronoun is correctly used only in these two ways, reflexive and emphatic. For example, the following sentences are incorrect:

This is for yourself and your comrade.
Ourselves will find out the reason.

The correct form would be:

This is for you and your comrade.
We, ourselves, will find out the reason.

208. You can readily distinguish between the reflexive and the emphatic use. In the reflexive, the compound personal pronoun is always the *object* of a verb or preposition, and the subject of the sentence is its antecedent. The subject and the object always refer to the same thing.

In the emphatic use, the compound personal pronoun is neither the subject nor the object, but is thrown into the sentence simply to render it emphatic, and to call special attention to its antecedent.

Exercise 1

Supply the compound personal pronoun in the following blanks and tell whether the use is reflexive or emphatic.

1. He discovered the truth.....

2. The workers have robbed.....by their ignorance.
3. You must educate.....
4. You must do the work.....
5. He must defend.....
6. Capitalism overreaches.....
7. The people will rule.....
8. We will settle the question.....

Write six sentences in which the compound personal pronouns are correctly used.

SINGULAR AND PLURAL

209. Personal pronouns, like nouns, have number form. Nouns simply add *s* to the singular form to denote the plural, but in personal pronouns we have different words which we use to express one or more than one person or thing. In the first, second, and third person forms, personal pronouns also have different forms for the object form, the possessive and the subject form. The following table gives the singular and plural of the subject form, —that is the form which is used as the subject of the sentence.

Subject Form

	Singular	*Plural*
First person.	I	We
Second person.	You	You
Third person.	He, she, it.	They

Compound Personal Pronouns

	Singular	*Plural*
First.	Myself	Ourselves
Second.	Yourself	Yourselves
Third.	Himself, herself, itself.	Themselves

210. Remember that the first person refers to the person speaking, the second to the person spoken to, and the third person to the person or things spoken of. When we speak of things, we never use the first or second person, unless we are speaking of them in a personified form. So in the third person singular, we have the pronoun *it* which refers to one thing. In the plural, we have no special pronoun referring to things, but the pronoun *they* is used to refer both to persons and things.

Exercise 2

Which of the following pronouns refer to the person speaking, which to the person spoken to, and which to the person or thing spoken of? Which are singular, which plural?

I will defend my principles.
Give them to me for they are mine.
Do you believe him to be your friend?
We saw their mistake at once.
They acknowledged it was their fault.
Success will be your portion if you persevere.
He struggles for his rights; she does not understand her rights.
It forces us to struggle for our education.
Woman craves her freedom.
Workers of the world, unite; you have a world to gain and nothing to lose but your chains.

Form sentences of your own containing all these pronouns.

POSSESSIVE FORM

211. You will note in these sentences above that we have used the pronoun *my* and *your* and *his* and *her* as *my principles*, *your friend*, *his rights*, *her freedom*. This is the possessive form of these personal pronouns, the form that denotes ownership or possession. You remember that nouns had a possessive form, a form to denote possession or ownership, as, *The man's book*. *The boy's school. The worker's college.* So pronouns also have a possessive form which we use to show that an object belongs to such and

such a person or thing. If I want to tell you that I own or possess a home, I say, *I own my home*. Each personal pronoun has its possessive form, thus:

Singular

Subject Form		*Possessive*
First person.	I	My, mine
Second person.	You	Your, yours
Third person.	He, she, it.	His, her, hers, its

Plural

Subject Form		*Possessive*
First person.	We	Our, ours
Second person.	You	Your, yours
Third person.	They	Their, theirs

POSSESSIVE FORM

212. You will notice that the possessive forms, *my*, *our*, *her*, *your*, *its*, *his* and *their*, are always used with the name of the object possessed. As for example; *my work*, *our library*, *her delight*, *your task*, *its purpose*, *his home*, *their mistake*.

213. The possessive forms, *mine*, *thine*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours* and *theirs*, are always used by themselves and are used either as subject, object or complement. As for example:

That letter is mine.
The work is hers.
Thine is the glory.
Is that yours?
Theirs not to reason why; theirs but to do and die.

The possessive form *his* may be used either in connection with the name of the object possessed or by itself. For example:

This is *his* home.
This home is *his*.

OBJECT FORM

214. Pronouns have one form which nouns do not have. We use the same form for the noun no matter whether it is the subject or the object. For example:

The man saw me.
I saw the man.

In the first sentence *man* is the subject of the verb *saw*, and in the second sentence *man* is the object of the verb *saw*. The same word is used; but you will notice that in the first sentence *me* is the object of the verb *saw*, and in the second *I* is the subject; yetboth refer to the same person, the first person, the person speaking.

So we have a different form of the pronoun for the object, for example: *I saw him. He saw me. She watched us. We watched her. You found them. Him*, *me*, *us*, *her*, and *them* in these sentences are used as the objects of the verbs, *see*, *watch* and *found*, and are called the object forms of the pronouns. *You* and *it* have the same form for both the subject and object; as, *You did it. It frightens you. Her* is used as both the possessive form and the object form, as, *Her work tires her.*

215. The following table gives the subject and the object forms of the personal pronouns, and these should never be confused in their usage. We must not use the object form as the subject of the verb, nor the subject form as the object of the verb.

Singular

Subject	*Object*

First. I	Me
Second. You	You
Third. He, she, it.	Him, her, it

Plural

Subject	*Object*
First. We	Us
Second. You	You
Third. They	Them

GENDER

216. You notice in all of these tables that there are three forms given for the third person singular, *he*, *she*, and *it*. These are the only forms in which pronouns express gender. In all other forms the gender can be determined only by the gender of the antecedent.

He, representing a male, is masculine.

She, representing a female, is the feminine.

It represents a sexless thing, and hence is said to be of the neuter gender.

THE LITTLE VERB *BE*

217. You remember when we studied verbs, we had the incomplete verb that took an object; the complete verb that needed no object, since it was complete in itself; and one other kind of a verb. Do you remember this third kind of verb? This third kind is the copulative verb, and the copulative verb which we use most frequently is the one in the use of which we make the most mistakes.

It is that troublesome, bothersome, little verb *be*, which is so difficult to master. You remember it is an incomplete verb, but instead of taking an object, it takes a complement or completing word. So when you see a pronoun with any form of this verb *be*, you must use the *subject* form and not the *object* form. This copulative verb *be* is simply a connecting word, not a verb that asserts action or takes an object.

218. Here is where we make so many mistakes. We say, *It was me*, *It was them*, *It was him*, *It wasn't her*; instead of, *It was I*, *It was they*, *It was he*, *It wasn't she*. We have used the incorrect form in this particular so often that the correct form has a strange sound to our ears.

The only way to remedy this is to repeat over and over aloud the correct form until it has a familiar sound. Don't think this is putting on airs. It is

not. It is simply demanding the best for yourself in words, as you should do in everything. We of the working class have built the world in its beauty. Why should we live in shacks, dress in shoddy, talk in slang? There is no reason except that we endure it. When the united working class demands its own, it will receive it. Demand yours and arouse the stupid from their sleep as rapidly as you can.

Repeat the following sentences aloud ten times every day this week and see if the correct form does not come to your lips more readily. We can learn the rule, but only continued practice and watchfulness can break us of our old habits.

It is I who seek my own.
It shall be they who are defeated.
It was I who was ignorant.
It is they who cause all wars.
It is he who must be aroused.
It is we who strive for freedom.
It shall be I who shall win.
It was she who was enslaved.
It shall be we who shall demand equality.
It shall be they who shall conquer.

Agreement

219. Pronouns are very agreeable members of the co-operative commonwealth of words. They strive to agree with their antecedents. Sometimes we do not allow the pronoun to agree, and then our sentence is incorrect.

A pronoun must agree with its antecedent in number, gender and person.

For example, if you are referring to one man, you must use a masculine pronoun, singular, third person form, as *I saw the man but he did not see me*. *Man* is the antecedent. It is singular, masculine, third person and so we use the pronoun *he*.

The girl came, but she could not stay. In this sentence *girl* is the antecedent; it is singular, feminine, third person, and so we use the pronoun *she*.

The boys did not come when the teacher called them. In this sentence *boys* is the antecedent; it is plural, masculine, third person, and so we use the pronoun *them*.

220. Sometimes there are two words used as the antecedent, joined by *and*. We use a singular pronoun in referring to them if they denote the same person or thing; as:

The secretary and treasurer (one person) resigned *his* position.
My comrade and friend (one person) gave me *his* help.

221. But two nouns joined by *and*, **that mean different persons or things, must be represented by a plural pronoun, thus**:

Marx and Engels (two persons) wrote *their* call to liberty, the Communist-Manifesto.
Men and women will struggle for *their* freedom.
Childhood and youth should have *their* rightful joys.

222. Use the singular pronoun when the nouns are kept separate by the use of *each*, *every*, *many a*, or *no*.

Each man and boy must do *his* part. (Not *their* part.)
Every soldier and every officer must do *his* duty.
Many a city and many a village gave *its* best to the army.
No comrade and no Socialist will give *his* consent to war.

223. If you have two singular nouns as antecedents, joined by *or*, **or** *nor*, **use the singular pronoun**, thus:

Either Germany or France must abandon *its* position.
Neither Wilson nor Bryan kept *his* promise to the people.

224. When you use a collective noun and are speaking of the collection as a whole, use a singular pronoun, as:

The committee will make *its* report.
The audience was hearty in *its* appreciation.
The jury has returned *its* verdict.

225. But if you are referring to the individuals of the collection separately, use a plural pronoun; as:

The committee adjourned for *their* dinner.
The audience kept *their* seats until the close.
The jury argued until *their* nerves were on edge.

PERSONIFICATION

226. We sometimes speak of things as if they were persons, and so use either masculine or feminine pronouns in referring to them. Such objects are said to be personified. Thus, we say:

The sun his ceaseless course doth run.
The moon sheds her silvery ray.
Nature dons her robes of green.

Here we speak of the sun as though it were a man or possessing the qualities of a man and use the pronoun *his*. Then we speak of the moon and nature as though they were women and use the pronoun in the feminine form.

REMEMBER

227. A pronoun must agree with its antecedent.

Use the subject form of the pronoun if the pronoun is the subject of the sentence.

Use the object form when the pronoun is the object of a verb or a preposition.

Use the compound personal pronouns only in their reflexive or emphatic use.

With all forms of the verb *be*, use the subject form of the pronouns.

SUMMARY

		SUBJECT	POSSESSIVE	OBJECT
First person	(*Singular*	I	my (mine)	me
	(*Plural*	we	our (ours)	us
Second person	(*Singular* (*Plural*	you	your (yours)	you
Third person	(*Sing. Masc.*	he	his	him
	(*Sing. Fem.*	she	her (hers)	her
	(*Sing. Neut.*	it	its	it
	(*Plural*	they	their (theirs)	them

Exercise 3

Read carefully the following beautiful dream of Olive Schreiner's. Mark all of the personal pronouns and note carefully their use and by referring to the table above decide just what form each pronoun is. Watch carefully too for the antecedents of the pronouns and note the agreement of the pronoun with its antecedent.

"I THOUGHT I STOOD"

I.

I thought I stood in Heaven before God's throne, and God asked me what I had come for. I said I had come to arraign my brother, Man.

God said, "What has he done?"

I said, "He has taken my sister, Woman, and has stricken her and wounded her and thrust her out into the streets; she lies there prostrate. His hands are red with blood. I am here to arraign him; that the kingdom be taken from him, because he is not worthy, and given unto me. My hands are pure."

I showed them.

God said, "Thy hands are pure. Lift up thy robe."

I raised it; my feet were red, blood-red, as if I had trodden in wine.

God said, "How is this?"

I said, "Dear Lord, the streets on earth are full of mire. If I should walk straight on in them my outer robe might be bespotted, you see how white it is! Therefore I pick my way."

God said, "*On what?*"

I was silent, and let my robe fall. I wrapped my mantle about my head. I went out softly. I was afraid that the angels would see me.

II.

Once more I stood at the gate of Heaven, I and another. We held fast by one another; We were very tired. We looked up at the great gates; angels opened them, and we went in. The mud was on our garments. We walked across the marble floor, and up to the great throne. Then the angels divided us. Her, they set upon the top step, but me, upon the bottom; for, they said, "Last time this woman came here she left red foot-marks on the floor; we had to wash them out with our tears. Let her not go up."

Then she with whom I came, looked back and stretched out her hands to me; and I went and stood beside her. And the angels, they, the shining ones who never sinned and never suffered, walked by us, to and fro, up and down; I think we should have felt a little lonely there if it had not been for one another, the angels were so bright.

God asked me what I had come for; and I drew my sister forward a little that He might see her.

God said, "How is it you are here together today?"

I said, "She was upon the ground in the street, and they passed over her; I lay down by her, and she put her arms around my neck, and so I lifted her, and we two rose together."

God said, "Whom are you now come to accuse before Me?"

I said, "We are come to accuse no man."

And God bent and said, "My children—what is it that you seek?"

And she beside me drew my hand that I should speak for both.

I said, "We have come to ask that Thou shouldst speak to Man, our brother, and give us a message for him that he might understand, and that he might——"

God said, "Go, take the message down to him!"

I said, "But what *is* the message?"

God said, "Upon your hearts it is written; take it down to him."

And we turned to go; the angels went with us to the door. They looked at us.

And one said, "Ah! but their dresses are beautiful!"

And the other said, "I thought it was mire when they came in, but see, it is all golden!"

But another said, "Hush, it is the light from their faces!"

And we went down to him. —*Olive Schreiner.*

The Cry of the People

Tremble before your chattels,
Lords of the scheme of things!
Fighters of all earth's battles,
Ours is the might of kings!
Guided by seers and sages,
The world's heart-beat for a drum,
Snapping the chains of ages,
Out of the night we come!

Lend us no ear that pities!
Offer no almoner's hand!
Alms for the builders of cities!
When will you understand?
Down with your pride of birth
And your golden gods of trade!

A man is worth to his mother, Earth,
All that a man has made!

We are the workers and makers!
We are no longer dumb!
Tremble, O Shirkers and Takers!
Sweeping the earth—we come!
Ranked in the world-wide dawn,
Marching into the day!
The night is gone and the sword is drawn
And the scabbard is thrown away!

—*Neihardt.*

SPELLING

LESSON 12

Last week we learned the rule governing the spelling of derivatives of *one* syllable ending in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel when we add a suffix beginning with a vowel.

The same rule applies to words of two or more syllables, accented on the last syllable.

For example:

Compel, compelled, compelling.
Prefer, preferred, preferring.

Words accented on the last syllable, when they end in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, double the final consonant when you add a suffix beginning with a vowel.

When these words take a suffix that begins with a *consonant*, they do *not* double the final consonant; as, *preferment*.

Words accented on any syllable but the last, do *not* double the final consonant; as, *offer*, *offered*, *offering*.

Words that have two vowels before a single final consonant do not double the final consonant; as, *reveal*, *revealed*, *revealing*.

Words that end in a double consonant or any two consonants, keep the two consonants, no matter what suffix they take; as, *indent*, *indented*; *skill*, *skilled*, *skillful*.

The only exception to this rule is when the addition of the suffix throws the accent back to a preceding syllable. When this is the case, the final consonant is not doubled. For example: *refer*, *referred*, *ref'erence*; *confer*, *conferring*, *con'ference*.

Look up the following words in the dictionary, watch for the accent, mark and add the suffixes, *ed*, *ing*, *ence* or *ance*, if possible.

Monday

Repel
Alter
Prefer
Debar
Answer

Tuesday

Inter
Offer
Demur
Wonder
Succeed

Wednesday

Detain
Combat
Compel
Occur
Cancel

Thursday

Permit
Travel
Repeal
Control
Profit

Friday

Forbid

Neglect
Expel
Render
Infer

Saturday

Benefit
Retain
Submit
Reveal
Limit

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 13

Dear Comrade:

Did you ever tie a knot in your handkerchief to help you remember to get something you felt almost sure you would forget? Well, tying a knot in a cord was one of the first ways devised by our ancestors of long ago to aid them to remember. They also used this plan to send word to those at a distance or to keep track of things for succeeding generations. A relic of this old device of our forefathers is also found in the rosary on which the Roman Catholic counts his beads as an aid to memory.

There are some primitive tribes to-day who still use knotted strings as an aid to memory. These consist of a main cord, and fastened at given distances are finer cords of different colors. Each cord is knotted in different ways to mean different things and each color, too, has its own meaning. A red string stands for soldiers, a yellow for gold, and a green for corn, and so on, while a single knot may mean ten, two single knots twenty, a double knot 100, two double knots 200. In this way, they keep a record of things, transmit orders and use them for various purposes.

Only a generation ago the tax gatherers in the Island of Hawaii kept account of the assessable property on lines of cordage knotted in this manner, and these cords in some cases were three thousand feet long. The method of keeping track of things by means of a notched stick is easily within the memory of many people living today. For in England in the early part of the last century, accounts of debts to the government were kept by means of tally sticks, which were merely notched sticks.

Such methods as these were the only ways primitive man had of keeping track of things before he had discovered the art of written speech. And even after written speech was known and used, these old methods persisted.

Gradually, step by step, man has come along the path of progress. Adventurous spirits, not satisfied with the old way of doing things, sought

new ways. The conservatives of their day thought them dangerous people, no doubt, and feared that they would destroy the very foundations of society. And this they oft-times did, but only that there might rise a more perfect form of society. It is the seeking, questioning mind that demands the reason for all things, that seeks ever better ways of doing things. They have always throughout the ages refused to bow to the authority of the past but have dared to live their own lives. To them we owe the progress of the world and we are the inheritors of their spirit.

Let us prove our kinship by daring to live our own lives and think our own thoughts.

Yours for Freedom,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

228. You recall that in our first lesson we studied concerning the four different kinds of sentences which we use in expressing our thoughts, the *assertive*, the *interrogative*, the *imperative* and the *exclamatory*. The interrogative sentence is the form which we use in asking a question, *interrogative* being derived from the Latin *inter*, meaning *between*, and *rogare*, *to ask*, meaning literally *to ask between*. The interrogative sentence differs from the assertive sentence in the arrangement of the words; for in order to ask questions, we usually place the predicate, or part of it at least, before the subject, thus:

Can you *use* good English?
Did you *spell* the word correctly?
Has he *studied* grammar?

In these sentences, you note that the helping verbs, *can*, *did* and *has*, are placed first instead of the subject. It is by this arrangement that we put the sentence in the interrogative form.

229. Frequently, however, in asking questions we wish to ask concerning a person or thing whose name we do not know. So we need a word to refer to

the unknown object. See how these uses of words grow out of our need! We have three interrogative pronouns, *who* and *which* and *what*, that we use to meet this need. Notice the use of these three pronouns in the following sentences:

Who wrote the Communist Manifesto?
Which of the two men is the better known?
What are the closing words of this famous document?

In these sentences, *who* and *which* and *what* are the interrogative pronouns, used to ask questions concerning the unknown persons or objects.

230. Who refers only to human beings or to personified objects.

Which refers either to human beings, animals or things.

What refers only to things.

Which and *what* have the same form for both the subject and the object. *Who* has a different form for all three forms, the subject form, the possessive form, and the object form. It uses the same form, however, both in singular and plural.

Subject form	*Possessive form*	*Object form*
Who	Whose	Whom

231. We often make mistakes in the use of the different forms of the pronoun *who*. We often use the subject form for the object form, using *who* where we should have used *whom*. For example:

Who did you see?

The correct form is:

Whom did you see?

The pronoun *whom* is the object of the verb *see*, hence the object form should be used. However, the use of the subject form *who* instead of *whom* is coming into such general use today that some grammarians accept it as a permissible usage. The will of the people influences language, as it does all other human institutions, and gradually creates new rules.

Write three sentences, using *who*, *which* and *what* as interrogative pronouns.

An interrogative pronoun is a pronoun used to ask a question.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

232. There is one other class of pronouns which plays a great part in our speech and is a wonderful help to us. For example, suppose I want to tell you several things about this book. I say: *I am reading this book. It interests me greatly.* Now it would be a great advantage to me if I could put these two sentences together, and we have for this use a pronoun which makes it possible for us to combine these sentences, and so I say:

The book which I am reading interests me greatly.

Thus I am able to unite two short sentences into a long sentence, which conveys my meaning better than the two short sentences and gives a smoother bit of reading. We have four pronouns which we use in this way, *who*, *which*, *that* and *what* and they are called relative pronouns because they refer or relate to some noun in the sentence and they also serve to connect two statements.

233. A relative pronoun is a pronoun that relates to an antecedent and at the same time connects two statements.

A relative pronoun always relates to its antecedent and at the same time connects the statement that it introduces with the one that contains the antecedent to which it relates, as in the sentence above, *The book which I am reading, interests me greatly. Which* is the relative pronoun; first, because it relates to the antecedent, *book*; and second, because it connects

the statement, *I am reading*, with the rest of the sentence. Notice these sentences also:

The man who thinks will not enlist in the army.
We will destroy the system that enslaves us.

Who and *that* are the relative pronouns in these two sentences and their antecedents are *man* and *system*, and they connect the statements, *who thinks* and *that enslaves us*, with the rest of the sentence.

234. Who is used to relate to persons.

Which is used to relate only to animals and things.

That may relate to either persons, animals or things.

What relates to things.

Note that *which*, as an interrogative, may refer to persons as well as to animals and things; but as a relative, *which* never refers to persons.

235. Note that we use the same pronouns *who*, *which* and *what* as both relative and interrogative pronouns. You will not be confused in this matter if you will remember that they are called interrogative pronouns only when they are used to ask questions. When they are used as interrogative pronouns they never have an antecedent. *Who* and *which* and *what* are always relative pronouns when used in an assertive sentence and referring to an antecedent.

That and *what* have the same form for both the subject and object forms. They have no possessive form. *Who* has a different form for the subject form and the possessive form and the object form. *Which* has the same form for subject and object forms, and a different form for the possessive form. Note the following:

Subject form	*Possessive form*	*Object form*
who	whose	whom

which whose which

I know the man *who* called him.
I know the man *whose* voice I hear.
I know the man *whom* they called.

In these three sentences we have the pronoun *who* used in its three forms, subject, possessive and object form. We should be very careful not to confuse the subject and the object forms of the pronoun *who*.

This is the book *which* tells the truth.
This is the book *whose* author is in prison.
This is the book *which* I wanted.

In these three sentences we have the pronoun *which* used in its three forms, *subject* form, *possessive* form and *object* form. In the first sentence the pronoun is the subject of the verb *tells*; in the second sentence, it is used in the possessive form with the noun *author*; in the third sentence, it is used as the object of the verb *wanted*.

236. *What* differs from the other relative pronouns in that its antecedent is never expressed, for it is implied in the word itself. *What* is always equivalent to *that which*, or *the thing which*. For example, the sentence, *Do not tell what I have told you*, is equivalent to saying, *Do not tell that which I have told you*, or *the thing which I have told you*.

237. Never use *what* in a sentence as a *relative* pronoun unless you can replace it and make good sense by using *that which*, or *the thing which* in place of *what*.

For example, do not say, *I know that what he would say*. This is incorrect. You should say, *I know that which he would say*, or *I know what he would say*, using *what* in place of *that which*. Here is a sentence that occurred in an English examination recently, which illustrates most aptly this point. *A subject is that what something is said about.* Here *what* is used incorrectly. *A subject is that about which something is said*, would have been the correct form.

Watch for this in your speech for it is a most common error and to the educated ear is harsh and marks the speaker as uneducated. All of these mistakes which we make so commonly will require a considerable amount of effort to overcome, but the result is worth the effort, for even those about us who will not take the pains or give the required time and effort to acquiring an education for themselves, will give greater heed to the speech of those who do speak correctly, and will readily acknowledge the leadership of those who have given the time and effort to self-development.

238. The antecedent of *who* is sometimes omitted and understood; for example, *Who follows the cause must endure hardship*, *He*, is understood and omitted. *He who follows the cause must endure hardship.*

239. The relative pronoun itself is often omitted. For example:

These are the men (whom) you must help.
The words (that) you use and the deeds (that) you do, are your judges.

240. The relative pronouns have compound forms also, such as *whoever*, *whosoever*, *whichever*, *whichsoever*, *whatever* and *whatsoever*, which are used in the same manner as the simple forms.

COMMON ERRORS

241. Here are a number of common errors which only constant practice and watchfulness can overcome. Study these over and watch your conversation closely. Force yourself to speak correctly for a time, and soon correct speech will become a habit.

1. Do not use both a noun and a pronoun as the subject of a sentence; as, *John, he waited for me*. *Mary, she refused to go.* Leave out the pronouns *he* and *she* in these sentences. They are unnecessary and incorrect.

2. Never use *hern*, *ourn*, *hisn* or *yourn* for *hers*, *ours*, *his* and *yours*; as, *The book is hisn*. *Ourn stopped on the first. Did you get yourn?* Say: *This book is his*. *Ours stopped on the first. Did you get yours?*

3. Never say *hisself* for *himself*. There is no such word as *hisself*. Do not say, *He hurt hisself*. Say, *He hurt himself*.

4. Do not say *them* for *those*; as, *Did you bring them songs? Them things are not right.* Say, *Did you bring those songs? Those things are not right.*

5. Do not use an apostrophe in writing the possessive forms of pronouns, as *her's*, *our's*, *it's*. Leave out the apostrophe and write *hers*, *ours*, *its*.

6. Do not use *who* **to relate to animals or things**; as, *The dog who bit me was killed*. Say, *The dog that bit me was killed*.

7. Do not use *myself* **as the subject**. It can be used only as an emphatic or reflexive pronoun. It is correct to say, *I found the book myself*, and *I hurt myself*. But do not say, *They asked my friend and myself*, or *Myself and my wife will go*. Say, *They asked my friend and me*. *My wife and I will go.*

8. Avoid the use of pronouns when the reference to the antecedent is not clear. Better repeat the nouns or re-write the sentence. For example:

> He said to his friend that if he did not feel better soon he thought he had better go home.

Now you can interpret this in at least four different ways. No one but the speaker can ever know to whom the pronouns *he* refer, whether to the speaker or to his friend. Or in the sentence,

> A tried to see B in the crowd, but could not because he was so short.

Who was short, *A* or *B*? *John's father died before he was born.* Did John's father die before John was born or did John's father die before John's father, himself, was born? Be careful in the use of pronouns in this way.

9. Remember that *I*, *we*, *he*, *she*, *they* **and** *who* **are always used as subject forms and also as the complement of all forms of the verb** *be.*

10. Remember that *me*, *him*, *her*, *them*, *us* **and** *whom* **are always object forms**. Never say, *They charged he and I too much*. Say, *They charged him*

and me too much. In an attempt to speak correctly and follow the niceties of English, this mistake is so often made. Always use the object form as the object of a verb or preposition.

11. When a participle is used as a *noun*, and a pronoun is used with it, the pronoun should always be in the *possessive* form. We make this mistake so frequently. For example, we say: *Us going there was a mistake*. We should have used the possessive form, *Our going there was a mistake*. *I have never known of him being absent from work.* We should say: *I have never known of his being absent from work*. *Did he tell you about me joining with them?* This should be, *Did he tell you about my joining with them? You talking to him set him to thinking.* This should be, *Your talking to him set him to thinking*. Watch this and wherever you have used a participle as a *noun*, use the pronoun in the *possessive* form, as you would with any other noun.

12. Watch carefully that the number of the pronoun always agrees with the number of its antecedent. If you are speaking of one person or thing use a singular pronoun. If you are speaking of more than one person or thing in your antecedent, use the plural pronoun. For example: *Each man must do his own work. The soldiers fully understood their danger.*

13. When a singular noun, in the common gender (this means that it may name either a male or female being), is the antecedent of the pronoun, it is customary for us to use the masculine pronoun. For example:

> Every student should send in *his* examination paper promptly.
> Every member of the class may select *his* own subject.

Do not use the pronoun *their* when the antecedent is a singular noun.

SUMMARY

Pronoun—In Place of a Noun

CLASSES

- *Personal*
  - Simple— 1st Person, *speaking*.
  - Compound — 2nd Person, *spoken to*.
  - Compound — 3rd Person, *spoken of*.
- *Interrogative* — To ask questions. *Who*, *which* and *what*.
- *Relative* — To refer to another word and connect two statements. *Who*, *which*, *that* and *what*.

Exercise 1

Complete the following sentences by using the correct form of *I*, *me*, or *myself*, in the blank spaces:

1. My partner and.....joined the union.
2. They asked Henry and.....to go.
3. May my friend and.....call?
4. I will attend to that.....
5. Let my comrade and.....go with you.
6. Are you sure it was.....?
7. I blame.....for joining with them.
8. They accused.....of bothering them.
9. I am nearly beside.....with grief.
10. The manager dismissed the men.....among the rest.

Exercise 2

Complete the following sentences by using the correct form of *we*, *us* or *ourselves* in the blank spaces:

1. They are better off than.....
2. The French as well as.....claim a war of defense.
3. Can you blame.....who have always stood by you?
4. We will do that for.....
5. Between.....comrades there should be no differences.
6. They gave.....men work.
7. Do not trouble;.....will attend to this.....
8. They sent a special notice to our friends and.....

Exercise 3

Complete the following sentences by using the correct form of *thou*, *thee*, *thy* or *thyself* in the blank spaces:

1. To.....be true, and it follows as the night the day..... canst not then be false to any man.
2. Paul,.....art beside.....; much learning hath made .....mad.
3. .....shalt love.....neighbor as.....
4. Trust..... Every heart vibrates to that iron string.

Exercise 4

Complete the following sentences by using the correct form of *he*, *him*, or *himself* in the blank spaces:

1. .....and John are to blame.
2. I think it was.....
3. My friend and.....called on you.
4. He blamed.....for the accident.
5. You are no better than.....
6. I shall call for you and.....
7. You and.....must come on time.
8. He found the place.....
9. There should be no quarrel between you and.....who loves you.
10. If you were.....would you go?

Exercise 5

Complete the following sentences by using the correct form of *she*, *her*, or *herself* in the blank spaces:

1. They asked Mary and.....to go.
2. Mary and.....went.
3. May.....and I go with you?
4. Let.....and Harry go.
5. Is that Mary? Yes, it is.....
6. There are many points of difference between.....and me.
7. You are more beautiful than.....
8. She brought it to me.....
9. If.....and I join you, will you go?
10. They must not quarrel over.....and me.

Exercise 6

Complete the following sentences using the correct form of *they*, *them*, or *themselves* in the blank spaces:

1. They gave.....up.
2. .....and I will finish the work.
3. I found.....where.....hath thrown.....down to rest.
4. I am sure it was.....for I saw.....plainly.
5. The workers enslave.....by their lack of solidarity.
6. .....must learn the lesson.....

Exercise 7

Cross out the wrong word in the following sentences:

1. Everybody do—does as he pleases—they please.
2. No one should waste his—their opportunities.
3. The jury rendered its—their verdict.
4. If anyone wishes war, let him—them do the fighting.
5. The audience displayed its—their approval by its—their applause.
6. The audience remained quietly in its—their seats.
7. The jury adjourned for its—their dinner.

8. Nobody willingly gives up his—their rights.
9. Each one may express his—their opinion.
10. Every man received his—their wages.

Exercise 8

Complete the following sentences by using the correct form of the pronouns *who*, *whose*, or *whom*:

1. .....do you think I am?
2. I am the man.....you taught yesterday.
3. With.....are you going?
4. The contract was let to a man.....we are sure cannot fulfill it.
5. The contractor.....wishes to bid will come tomorrow.
6. On.....are you depending?
7. The friends.....counsel I took, stood by me.
8. He is a man.....I am sure will succeed.
9. We tried to talk to those.....we thought would understand us.
10. For.....did you work?

Exercise 9

Insert *who*, *whose*, *whom*, *which*, *that* or *what* in the blanks in the following sentences:

1. Man is the only animal.....uses a written speech.
2. Can you save.....you earn?
3. Ricardo's law was that the workers always receive a wage.....permits them to produce and reproduce.
4. Have you read the book "War, What For".....Kirkpatrick wrote?
5. Newspapers.....distort the news.....they print to serve the ruling class are dangerous foes to the workers.
6. The massacre at Ludlow was an event.....aroused the working class.
7. They.....live by the labor of others are drones in society and should be given the fate.....they deserve.
8. The big machine gun.....will destroy slavery is the printing press.

9. The man.....leadership we should follow is he.....preaches social equality.

Exercise 10

In the following quotations note the use of the pronouns and mark whether they are *personal*, *relative* or *interrogative*, whether they are used in the *subject* form, *possessive* form or *object* form:

1. "Camerado, I give you my hand,
   I give you my love more precious than money,
   I give you myself before preaching or law;
   Will you give me yourself, will you come travel with me,
   Shall we stick by each other as long as we live?"
2. "I think I could turn and live with animals they are so placid and self-contained,
   I stand and look at them long and long, they do not sweat and whine about their condition,
   They do not lie awake in the dark and weep for their sins,
   They do not make me sick discussing their duty to God;
   Not one is dis-satisfied, not one is demented with the mania of owning things.
   Not one kneels to another nor to his kind, that lived thousands of years ago,
   Not one is respectable or unhappy over the whole earth."

—*Whitman.*

Exercise 11

Note the omission of the antecedent in the first sentence, also the use of the relative *what* in the last sentence of the first paragraph:

> "Whoso would be a man, must be nonconformist. He who would gather immortal palms must not be hindered by the name of goodness, but must explore if it be goodness. Nothing is at last sacred but the integrity of our own mind. Absolve you to yourself, and you shall have the suffrage of the world. I remember an answer which, when quite young, I was prompted to make to a valued adviser who was wont to importune me with the dear old doctrines of the church. On my saying, "What have I

to do with the sacredness of traditions, if I live wholly from within?" my friend suggested—"But these impulses may be from below, not from above." I replied, "They do not seem to me to be such; but if I am the devil's child, I will live then from the devil." No law can be sacred to me but that of my nature. Good and bad are but names very readily transferable to that or this; the only right is what is after my constitution; the only wrong what is against it.

A foolish consistency is the hobgoblin of little minds, adored by little statesmen and philosophers and divines. With consistency a great soul has simply nothing to do. He may as well concern himself with his shadow on the wall. Out upon your guarded lips! Sew them up with pack threads, do. Else, if you would be a man, speak what you think today in words as hard as cannon balls, and tomorrow speak what tomorrow thinks in hard words again, though you contradict everything you said today. Ah, then, exclaim the aged ladies, you shall be sure to be misunderstood. Misunderstood! It is a right fool's word. Is it so bad then to be misunderstood? Pythagoras was misunderstood, and Socrates, and Jesus, and Luther, and Copernicus, and Galileo, and Newton, and every pure and wise spirit that ever took flesh. To be great is to be misunderstood." —*Emerson.*

SPELLING

LESSON 13

There are a few more rules governing the spelling of derivative words. Words ending in silent *e* keep the *e* before the suffix beginning with a consonant. Notice the following words:

excite	excitement
like	likeness
force	forceful
shame	shameless
lone	lonesome
live	lively

Words ending in silent *e* drop the *e* before the suffix beginning with a vowel, as:

excite	excitable
live	living
grieve	grievous
force	forcible

Some words ending in silent *e* retain the *e* before the suffix beginning with a vowel, to prevent a change in the pronunciation or to preserve the identity of the word. Notice the following words:

peace	peaceable
courage	courageous

singe	singeing
change	changeable
shoe	shoeing
notice	noticeable

These are words ending in the soft sound of *c* and *g*, where the *e* is retained to preserve the correct pronunciation of the *c* and *g*, and with some few words like *toe*, *dye*, etc., where the dropping of the *e* would lose the identity of the word.

The *e* is dropped in a few words before the suffix beginning with a consonant, as in *wholly*, *nursling*, *judgment*, *wisdom*, *lodgment*.

Add the suffixes *ment* and *ing* to the words in Monday's lesson; the suffix *able* to the words for Tuesday and Wednesday; the suffixes *some* and *ous* to the words for Thursday; the suffixes *ly* or *ness* to the words for Friday and Saturday.

Monday

Excite
Advise
Chastise
Disfranchise
Enslave

Tuesday

Manage
Receive
Blame
Exchange
Imagine

Wednesday

Admire
Service
Desire
Peace
Pronounce

Thursday

Whole
Meddle
Courage
Advantage
Outrage

Friday

Accurate
Positive
False
Definite
Distinct

Saturday

Agreeable
Careful
Awful
Sure
Secure

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 14

Dear Comrade:

You remember our definition of a word; a word is the sign of an idea. In our lessons we have been studying the different kinds of words which we use in the expression of our complete thoughts. Probably the first step in the development of language was to name the objects about us. Then the next logical step would be to invent words which would tell what these objects did. So we have our nouns, which are the names of things; our verbs, which tell what these things do; and in these we have the foundation for spoken and written speech. We soon found, however, that the constant repetition of a name was tiresome and annoying, so we invented words which we could use in place of these nouns; and we have pronouns.

All of the things about us possess certain qualities and our next great need was for words to describe these qualities; so we have adjectives. Each adjective is a sign of an idea. It adds its part to the expression of our complete thought. So we find that each part of speech comes logically in its place to fill a certain need. Without any one of them, we would be crippled in our power of expression. Each different word is the sign of an idea and the combination of these ideas as represented by the various signs gives us the complete expression of our thought.

So primitive man in the development of written speech had signs to express the various things about him. Naturally his first sign was a picture, as nearly as he could draw it, of the object itself. If he wanted to tell you about a tree he drew a picture of the tree; the picture of a man represented a man, and so on. You will notice among children that this is the first development in their endeavor to express their thoughts in writing. They draw pictures. The average small child cannot understand why you read those strange marks on the page. They want you to read the pictures. To their mind that is the only way to communicate ideas.

These early forefathers of ours grew to be very adept at this picture writing. We have examples of this among the Indians of our own country. There is a picture on the face of a big rock on the shores of Lake Superior which records an expedition across the lake led by a noted Indian chief. Canoes are shown in the picture with the crew denoted by a series of upright strokes and there is a picture of the chief on horseback. You or I would have great difficulty in reading this picture writing, but an Indian could read it right off just as we would read a written page. Aids to memory such as knotted strings and tally sticks were the first step toward written speech. This picture writing was the second step toward the development of written speech.

We owe a great deal to the work which these primitive ancestors of ours accomplished. It took them years and years to develop through these different stages and our rapid development of the last few centuries has only been made possible because of this slow and patient building of the foundation. An understanding of this helps us to appreciate the place we occupy in this great struggle of the ages. The power of written speech opens up to us such tremendous possibilities. Let us make the most of them, that we too may hand on worth while things to those who follow us.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

CLASSES OF ADJECTIVES

242. Adjectives, like nouns and pronouns, are divided into classes. Adjectives are divided into two main classes, *qualifying* and *limiting*.

243. An adjective which qualifies a noun is one which names some quality which is possessed by the word which it modifies. When we say, *Trees grow*, we are making a general statement; that is, we are saying something that is true of any kind of trees. We have not described any particular tree. But when we say, *The tall trees grow*, *The old trees grow*, *The young trees grow*, the words *tall*, *old* and *young* describe certain qualities of the trees,

which separate them into classes. So these adjectives are *qualifying adjectives*.

An adjective qualifies a noun when it attributes some quality to the noun, as, *The brave man*, *The sweet apple*, *The pretty girl*, *The large house*, etc.

244. But if we say, *this tree*, *that tree*, *some trees*, *many trees*, *three trees*, or *four trees*, we are not giving any quality of the tree, but are pointing out a particular tree or trees and limiting the word to the ones pointed out. So such adjectives as *the*, *this*, *that*, *some*, *many*, *three* and *four* are limiting adjectives. An adjective limits a noun when it restricts or limits its meaning as to quantity or number.

245. So adjectives are divided into two classes, *qualifying* adjectives and *limiting* adjectives.

Words that limit or qualify other words are called *modifiers* because they modify or affect the meaning of the words to which they are added. So adjectives are modifiers of the nouns and pronouns to which they are added because they modify or qualify or limit the meaning of the noun or pronoun.

The limiting adjectives answer the questions *which* and *how many*. The qualifying adjectives answer the questions *which* and *what kind*.

246. A qualifying adjective is an adjective which describes the noun it modifies by attributing to it some quality.

A limiting adjective is an adjective which merely shows which one or how many, without describing the noun it modifies.

HOW TO DISCOVER AN ADJECTIVE

247. Sometimes the noun may have several adjectives qualifying or modifying it; as,

The beautiful, old elm tree shades the lawn.

The, *beautiful*, *old* and *elm*, all modify *tree*, telling something of the qualities or pointing out which tree we are speaking of. You can discover an adjective in a sentence by asking the questions, *which*, *what kind*, or *how many*; and the words that answer these questions will be the adjectives in the sentence. For example in this sentence:

Those three immense factories employ thousands of men.

Factories is the noun, subject of the sentence. *Which* factory is indicated by the adjective *those*. *How many* factories is indicated by the adjective *three*. *What kind* of factories is indicated by the adjective *immense*. So we have three adjectives answering the three questions, *which*, *what kind* and *how many*.

Exercise 1

In the following sentences the adjectives are printed in *italics*. Study them carefully and determine which are qualifying and which are limiting adjectives. Note that the possessive nouns and possessive pronouns are *not* adjectives. *Its* in the phrases *its cruel fangs* and *its savage claws*, is a possessive pronoun, third person singular. In the last sentence *beggar's*, *miser's*, and *Ingersoll's*, are nouns in the possessive form.

This terrible war in Europe is slaughtering *the* working-class.
Gaunt famine follows war.
A *docile*, *meek*, *humble*, working-class makes war *possible*.
The shrieking shell snarls like a *living* thing; like *some wild* beast in *ferocious* glee it thrusts its *cruel* fangs in earth and rock and rends *living* flesh with its *savage* claws.
Its *fetid* breath of *poison* powder scorches in *the autumn* winds.
Shattered bones, *torn* flesh and *flowing* blood were mingled on *the* battlefield with *broken* swords and *split* rifles.
The best modern rifles will force *a* bullet through *five human* bodies at *a* range of *twelve hundred* feet.
The pitiful dead, *slain* in war, sleep under *the solemn* pines, *the sad* hemlock, *the tearful* willow and *the embracing* vines.

A world without *the* beggar's *outstretched* palm, *the* miser's *heartless stony* stare, *the piteous* wail of want, *the livid* lips of lies, *the cruel* eyes of scorn, was Ingersoll's vision of *the* future.

QUALIFYING ADJECTIVES

248. Qualifying adjectives are also called *descriptive* adjectives because they describe the noun. They answer the questions *which* and *what kind*.

You remember we found in the beginning of our study of English, that words were grouped into classes according to the work which they do in the sentence, not according to the form of the word itself. For instance, we have already found that some words, without changing their form, may be used either as a noun or as a verb. Take the word *oil*, for instance. I may say, *I oil the engine*. Here I have used the word *oil* as a verb telling what I do. But I may say, *The oil is gone*. Here I have used the word *oil* as a noun, subject of the sentence. The part of speech to which a word belongs in the English language, always depends upon the work which it does in the sentence.

1. So we have nouns which are used as descriptive adjectives, for example the word *oil*, which we have found we can use either as a noun or a verb, may also be used as an adjective. For example; I may say, *the oil tank*. Here I have used the word *oil* as a descriptive adjective modifying the word *tank*. So also we may say, *the oak tree*, *the stone curb*, *the earth wall*. In these expressions *oak*, *stone* and *earth* are nouns used as descriptive adjectives.

2. We have descriptive adjectives derived from proper nouns, as French, English, American. These are called proper adjectives; and since all proper nouns must begin with a capital letter, these proper adjectives, also, should always begin with a capital letter.

3. We have also descriptive adjectives derived from verbs as *active*, *talkative*, *movable*, *desirable*, derived by the addition of suffixes to the verbs *act*, *talk*, *move* and *desire*.

LIMITING ADJECTIVES

249. Limiting adjectives are also divided into classes, the *numerals*, the *demonstratives* and the *articles*.

Numeral Adjectives

250. Numeral adjectives are those which limit nouns as to number or order. They are such adjectives as *one*, *two*, *three*, *four*, etc., and *first*, *second* and *third*, etc., as for example:

Three men applied for work.
The train ran at the rate of *forty* miles an hour.
There have always been *two* classes in the world.
The *first* martyr to anti-militarism was Jaures.
The *eighteenth* day of March is the anniversary of the Paris Commune.

In these sentences the adjectives *three*, *forty*, *two*, *first* and *eighteenth* are all numeral adjectives. They limit the nouns which they modify as to number or order.

Adjectives that limit nouns as to number or order are called numeral adjectives. Numeral adjectives answer the question how many or in what order.

Demonstratives

251. We have also a class of adjectives which are used to point out some particular person or thing. These are called *demonstrative* adjectives. Demonstrate means literally *to point out*. So these adjectives point out from a number of things, one particular thing to our attention. These demonstrative adjectives are *this*, *that*, *those*, *these*, *yonder*, *former*, *latter* and *same*.

These and *those* are the plural forms of *this* and *that*. *This* and *these* are used to point out things near at hand. *That* and *those* are used to point out things more distant, as *This is my book*. *These are my papers*, meaning *this book* or *these papers*, close to me. By, *That is my pencil* and *Those are my*

letters, I mean *that pencil*, and *those letters*, which are farther away from me.

Former and *latter* are used to show which of two things already mentioned is referred to, and to point out things in point of time, not of place. For example, we may say:

> We no longer observe the *former* customs, but rather prefer the *latter*.
> He did not like his *former* job but this *latter* job pleases him.

You understand from this that we have been discussing and describing two kinds of work, and that the first in point of time was unpleasant and the second pleasant.

The demonstrative adjective *same* refers to something of which we have just spoken, as for example, *He has gone to work, I must do the same thing*. These demonstrative adjectives answer the question which, so when you wish to discover a demonstrative in a sentence, ask the question *which*, and the answer will be the demonstrative adjective.

Exercise 2

1. *This* study is very interesting.
2. *These* comrades will stand by us.
3. *That* solution will never deceive the people.
4. *Those* books have opened our eyes.
5. *Yonder* battle appals the world.
6. *Former* investigations have had no results.
7. *This latter* decision has reversed the *former*.
8. The class struggle has persisted through the centuries; we are engaged in the *same* struggle.

Make sentences of your own containing these demonstrative adjectives.

ARTICLES

252. We have three adjectives which are used so commonly that we have put them in a class by themselves. These three little words are *a*, *an* and *the*, and we call them articles. The word *article* literally means a little joint or limb, and these three little words are so closely connected with the nouns with which they are used that they seem to be a part or joint or limb of the noun itself, and so we have called them articles.

A and *an* are called the *indefinite* articles because they point out an object in a very indefinite manner. *The* is called the *definite* article for it points out in a more definite way.

We use *a* before words beginning with a consonant sound, as *a man*, *a tree*, *a book*; and we use *an* before words beginning with a vowel sound, as *an apple*, *an editor*, *an orange*, *an heir*. In *heir* the *h* is silent, and we say *an* because the word begins with a vowel sound. *A* is used before words beginning with *u* because long *u* is equivalent in sound to a consonant, for the blending of the sounds of which long *u* is composed produces the initial sound of *y*, which is a consonant sound. For example, we say, *a university*, *a useful work*, etc., and not *an university*. Before words beginning with short *u*, use *an*, as, *an upstart*, etc.

In deciding whether to use *a* or *an*, watch the initial *sound* of the word, not the initial *letter*. If it is a vowel sound use *an*, if a consonant sound, use *a*.

Exercise 3

Underscore the correct article in the following sentences:

1. Bring me an—a apple.
2. He is a—an able orator.
3. A—an heir was born to the German King.
4. He built a—an house for his family.
5. He is an—a honest man.
6. He is a—an undertaker.
7. I had to take a—an upper berth.
8. He joined a—an union.
9. It is a—an unique book.

10. He is a—an unruly member of society.
11. He told a—an untruth.
12. He wears a—an uniform.
13. It is a—an honor to be chosen.

253. When a singular noun is modified by several adjectives, only one of the articles *an* or *a* must be used if the noun denotes but *one* object; but if the noun denotes more than one object the article must be repeated before each noun. For example, I say, *A red, white and blue flag*. You know I mean but one flag, containing the three colors, red, white and blue. But if I say, *A red, a white and a blue flag*, you know I mean three flags, one red, one white, and one blue.

Note the use of the article in the following sentences:

He wears a black and white suit.
He wears a black and a white suit.
He sold a red and white cow.
He sold a red and a white cow.
He bought a gas and coal stove.
He bought a gas and a coal stove.

The first sentences in each of the above series refers to only one object. The second sentences all refer to two objects.

254. There are some rules concerning the article *the* that it is well to know because we do not always say what we wish to say, if we do not observe these rules or customs of speech. For example, I say, *The editor and publisher of this book is unknown*. I have used the article *the* but once, and I mean that the editor and publisher is one person. But I may say, *The editor and the publisher of this book are well known*. In this sentence I have used the article *the* twice, *the* editor and *the* publisher, and I mean that the editor and the publisher are two different persons.

So when two or more nouns following each other denote the same person or thing, the article is not repeated, but when the nouns denote different persons or things, the article must be repeated before each noun. Be sure to use the proper form of the verb.

Note the following sentences and underscore the proper verb to complete the meaning:

The secretary and treasurer were—was here.
The secretary and the treasurer were—was elected.
The singer and artist were—was with me.
The singer and the artist were—was on the program.

Sometimes we have two things so closely associated in use that they may be considered as forming a single idea, so that we may use the article before the first one only. For example:

The pen and ink is gone.
He bought a horse and buggy.
The bread and butter is on the plate.

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES

255. You remember we found in the study of pronouns that we have interrogative pronouns which we use in asking questions when we do not know the name of the object concerning which we are asking. We also have adjectives which we use in asking questions when we do not know the number or quality of the object concerning which we are asking. For example:

Which book did you enjoy most?
What work are you doing now?
What machine did you order?

Which and *what* are the interrogative adjectives in these sentences.

Interrogative adjectives are adjectives used in asking questions.

INDEFINITES

256. We have one more class of adjectives called indefinites.

An indefinite adjective is one that does not denote any particular person or thing.

All such adjectives as *each*, *every*, *either*, *neither*, *some*, *any*, *many*, *much*, *few*, *all*, *both*, *no*, *none*, *several* and *certain* are indefinite adjectives. We use them when we are not speaking of any particular person or thing, but are speaking in a broad, general sense and in an indefinite manner.

257. The interrogative adjectives are sometimes used in this indefinite way. They are sometimes used to modify nouns when a direct question is not asked, and they are then used, not as interrogative adjectives, but as indefinite adjectives. For example:

He did not know which party to join.
I have not learned what time he will go.

In these sentences *which* and *what* are not used to ask questions, but are used to describe an unknown object.

Exercise 4

All the words in italics are adjectives. Decide to which class each adjective belongs.

Note in this exercise the compound words used as adjectives, as: *earth-born*, *self-made*, *new-lit*, *blood-rusted*. Look up the meaning of these adjectives and see if you can use other adjectives in their places and keep the same meaning. Note the use of *fellest*.

Slavery, *the earth-born* Cyclops, *fellest* of *the giant* brood,
Sons of *brutish* Force and Darkness, who have drenched *the* earth with blood,
Famished in his *self-made* desert, *blinded* by our *purer* day,
Gropes in yet *unblasted* regions for his *miserable* prey;—

Shall we guide his *gory* fingers where our *helpless* children play?
They have rights who dare maintain them; we are traitors to our sires,
Smothering in their *holy* ashes Freedom's *new-lit* altar-fires;
Shall we make their creed our jailer? Shall we, in our haste to slay,
From the tombs of *the old* prophets steal *the funeral* lamps away
To light up *the* martyr-fagots round *the* prophets of to-day?

New occasions teach *new* duties; Time makes *ancient* good, *uncouth*;
They must upward still, and onward, who would keep *abreast* of Truth;
Lo, before us gleam her camp-fires! We ourselves must Pilgrims be,
Launch our Mayflower, and steer boldly through *the desperate winter* sea,
Nor attempt *the* Future's portal with *the* Past's *blood-rusted* key.

—*Lowell.*

Exercise 5

The following is from Oscar Wilde's story of *The Young King*. Oscar Wilde was a master of English, and if you have the opportunity, read all of this beautiful story and watch his use of adjectives. Mark the adjectives in this excerpt and use them in sentences of your own.

> And as the young King slept he dreamed a dream, and this was his dream. He thought that he was standing in a long, low attic, amidst the whirr and clatter of many looms. The meager daylight peered in through the grated windows and showed him the gaunt figures of the weavers, bending over their cases. Pale, sickly-looking children were crouched on the huge crossbeams. As the shuttles dashed through the warp they lifted

up the heavy battens, and when the shuttles stopped they let the battens fall and pressed the threads together. Their faces were pinched with famine, and their thin hands shook and trembled. Some haggard women were seated at a table, sewing. A horrible odor filled the place. The air was foul and heavy, and the walls dripped and streamed with damp.

The young King went over to one of the weavers and stood by him and watched him.

And the weaver looked at him angrily and said, "Why art thou watching me? Art thou a spy set on us by our master?"

"Who is thy master?" asked the young King.

"Our master!" cried the weaver, bitterly. "He is a man like myself. Indeed, there is but this difference between us—that he wears fine clothes while I go in rags, and that while I am weak from hunger he suffers not a little from overfeeding."

"The land is free," said the young King, "and thou art no man's slave."

"In war," answered the weaver, "the strong make slaves of the weak, and in peace the rich make slaves of the poor. We must work to live, and they give us such mean wages that we die. We toil for them all day long, and they heap up gold in their coffers, and our children fade away before their time, and the faces of those we love become hard and evil. We tread out the grapes, another drinks the wine. We sow the corn, and our own board is empty. We have chains, though no eye beholds them; and are slaves, though men call us free."

"Is it so with all?" he asked.

"It is so with all," answered the weaver, "with the young as well as with the old, with the women as well as with the men, with the little children as well as with those who are stricken in years. The merchants grind us down, and we must needs do their bidding. The priest rides by and tells his beads, and no man has care of us. Through our sunless lanes creeps Poverty with her hungry eyes, and Sin with his sodden face follows close behind her. Misery wakes us in the morning, and Shame sits with us at night. But what are these things to thee? Thou art not one of us. Thy face is too happy." And he turned away scowling, and threw the shuttle across the loom, and the young King saw that it was threaded with a thread of gold.

And a great terror seized upon him, and he said to the weaver, "What robe is this that thou art weaving?"

"It is the robe for the coronation of the young King," he answered; "What is that to thee?"

And the young King gave a loud cry and woke and lo! he was in his own chamber, and through the window he saw the great honey-colored moon hanging in the dusky air.

SPELLING

LESSON 14

You remember in the formation of plurals, we learned that words ending in *y* change *y* to *i* when *es* is added; as, *lady, ladies*; *baby, babies*; *dry, dries*, etc.

There are several rules concerning words ending in *y*, knowledge of which will aid us greatly in spelling.

1. Words ending in *ie* change the *ie* to *y* before *ing* to prevent a confusing number of vowels. For example, *die, dying*; *lie, lying*; *tie, tying*.

2. Words of more than one syllable ending in *y* preceded by a consonant, change *y* into *i* before all suffixes except those beginning with *i*. For example:

happy,	happily,	happiness;
witty,	wittier,	wittiest;
satisfy,	satisfied,	satisfying;
envy,	enviable,	envying;

This exception is made for suffixes beginning with *i*, the most common of which is *ing*, to avoid having a confusing number of *i's*.

3. Most words ending in *y* preceded by a vowel retain the *y* before a suffix. For example:

destroy,	destroyer,	destroying,
buy,	buyer,	buying,
essay,	essayed,	essayist.

The following words are exception to this rule:

laid,
paid,
said,
daily,
staid.

Make as many words as you can out of the words given in this week's spelling lesson by adding one or more of the following suffixes: *er*, *est*, *ed*, *es*, *ing*, *ly*, *ness*, *ful*, *ment*, *al*.

Monday

Beauty
Portray
Deny
Rare
Multiply

Tuesday

Mercy
Bury
Obey
Lovely
Envy

Wednesday

Tie
Defy
Study
Decry
Crazy

Thursday

Merry
Silly
Lusty
Imply
Day

Friday

Dismay
Duty
Employ
Satisfy
Pretty

Saturday

Pay
Joy
Journey
Qualify
Sorry

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 15

Dear Comrade:

In this week's lesson we are finishing the study of adjectives, which adds another part of speech to those which we have studied. We can see in the study of each additional part of speech how each part has its place in the expression of our ideas. We could not express ourselves fully if we lacked any of these parts of speech. Each one is not an arbitrary addition to our language but has come to us out of the need for it. We see that there are no arbitrary rules but in language, as in all things else, growing needs have developed more efficient tools. With these have grown up certain rules of action so we can have a common usage and system in our use of these tools. It has taken years of effort to accomplish this. The changes have been slow and gradual, and this language which we are studying is the finished product.

This slow development in the use of language, even in our own lives, makes us realize how many thousands of years it must have taken our primitive ancestors to reach a point where they could use the phonetic alphabet. We have found that at first they used simple aids to memory, as knotted strings and tally sticks. Then they began to draw pictures of things about them and so were able to communicate with one another by means of these pictures. When a man was going away from his cave and wanted to leave word for those who might come, telling them where he had gone and how soon he would return, he drew a picture of a man over the entrance with the arm extended in the direction in which he had gone. Then he drew another picture of a man in a sleeping position and also one of a man with both hands extended in the gesture which indicated many. These two pictures showed that he would be away over many nights. In some such rude manner as this, they were able to communicate with one another.

But man soon began to *think*, and he needed to express ideas concerning things of which he could not draw pictures. He could draw a picture of the

sun, but how could he indicate light? How could he indicate the different professions in which men engaged, such as the farmer and priest, etc.?

He was forced to invent symbols or signs to express these ideas, so his writing was no longer a picture of some object, but he added to it symbols of abstract ideas. A circle which stood for the sun written with the crescent which stood for the moon, indicated light. The bee became a symbol of industry. An ostrich feather was a symbol of justice, because these feathers were supposed to be of equal length. A picture of a woman stood simply for a woman, but a picture of two women stood for strife, and three women stood for intrigue. These old ancestors of ours became wise quite early concerning some things. The symbol for a priest in the early Egyptian picture writing was a jackal. Perhaps not because he "devoured widows' houses," but because the jackal was a very watchful animal. The symbol for mother was a vulture because that bird was believed to nourish its young with its own blood.

It naturally required a good memory and a clear grasp of association to be able to read this sort of writing. It required many centuries for this slow development of written speech.

The development of language has been a marvelous growth and a wonderful heritage has come to us. Let us never be satisfied until we have a mastery of our language and find a way to express the ideas that surge within us. A mastery of these lessons will help us.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

258. From our study of the adjective, we know that it is a word used with a noun to qualify or limit its meaning. But a great many times we find these adjectives used without the noun which they modify. As, for example, I may say, *This is mine*, and the adjective *this* is used alone without the noun which it modifies, and you are able to tell only by what I have been saying or by some action of mine to what I am referring when I say *this*.

When adjectives are used in this manner, they are used like pronouns—in place of a noun. So sometimes we find an adjective used with a noun, and sometimes used as a pronoun, in place of a noun; and since we name our parts of speech by the work which they do in the sentence, an adjective used in this way is not an adjective, but a pronoun or word used in place of a noun.

So these words are pronouns when they stand alone to represent things—when they are used in place of a noun. They are adjectives when they are used *with* a noun to limit or qualify the noun. For example, I may say, *This tree is an elm, but that tree is an oak*. *This* and *that* in this sentence are adjectives used to modify the noun *tree*. But I may say, *This is an oak and that is an elm*, and in this sentence *this* and *that* are used without a noun, they are used as pronouns.

259. Our being able to name every part of speech is not nearly so important as our being able to understand the functions of the different parts of speech and being able to use them correctly. But still it is well for us to be able to take a sentence and point out its different parts and tell what each part is and the function which it serves in the sentence. So sometimes in doing this we may find it difficult to tell whether certain words are adjectives or pronouns. We can distinguish between adjectives and pronouns by this rule:

When you cannot supply the noun which the adjective modifies, from the *same* sentence, then the word which takes the place of the noun is a pronoun, but if you can supply the omitted noun from the same sentence, then the word is used as an adjective. Thus, we do not say that the noun is understood unless it has already been used in the same sentence and is omitted to avoid repetition. We make each sentence a law unto itself and classify each word in the sentence according to what it does in its own sentence.

So if a noun does not occur in the same sentence with the word about which we are in doubt as to whether it is a pronoun or adjective, it is a pronoun or word used in place of a noun. For example, in the sentence, *This book is good but that is better*; *book* is understood after the word *that* and left out to avoid tiresome repetition of the word *book*. Therefore *that* is an adjective in this sentence. But if I say, *This is good, but that is better*; there is no noun

understood, for there is no noun in the sentence which we can supply with *this* and *that*. Therefore in this sentence *this* and *that* are pronouns, used in place of the noun. And since *this* and *that*, when used as adjectives, are called demonstrative adjectives; therefore when *this* and *that*, *these* and *those*, and similar words, are used as pronouns they are called demonstrative pronouns.

260. Be careful not to confuse the possessive pronouns with adjectives. Possessive pronouns modify the nouns with which they are used, but they are not adjectives, they are possessive pronouns. *My*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our*, *your* and *their* are all possessive pronouns, not adjectives. Also be careful not to confuse nouns in the possessive form with adjectives.

ADJECTIVES AS NOUNS

261. Sometimes you will find words, which we are accustomed to look upon as adjectives, used alone in the sentence without a noun which they modify. For example, we say, *The strong enslave the weak*. Here we have used the adjectives *strong* and *weak* without any accompanying noun. In sentences like this, these adjectives, being used as nouns, are classed as nouns. Remember, in your analysis of a sentence, that you name every word according to the work which it does in that sentence, so while these adjectives are doing the work of nouns, we will consider them as nouns.

These words are not used in the same manner in which demonstrative adjectives are used as pronouns. There is no noun omitted which might be inserted, but these adjectives are used rather to name a class. As, for example; when we say, *The strong*, *The weak*, we mean all those who are strong and all those who are weak, considered as a class. You will find adjectives used in this way quite often in your reading, and you will find that you use this construction very often in your ordinary speech. As, for example:

The rich look down upon the poor.
The wise instruct the ignorant.

Many examples will occur to you. Remember these adjectives are nouns when they do the work of nouns.

ADJECTIVES WITH PRONOUNS

262. Since pronouns are used in place of nouns, they may have modifiers, also, just as nouns do. So you will often find adjectives used to modify pronouns. As, for example; *He, tired, weak and ill, was unable to hold his position*. Here, *tired*, *weak* and *ill* are adjectives modifying the pronoun *he*.

263. We often find a participle used as an adjective with a pronoun. As, for example:

She, having finished her work, went home.
They, having completed the organization, left the city.
He, having been defeated, became discouraged.

In these sentences, the participles, *having finished*, *having completed*, and *having been defeated*, are used as adjectives to modify the pronouns *she*, *they* and *he*.

COMPARISON

264. We have found that adjectives are a very important part of our speech for without them we could not describe the various objects about us and make known to others our ideas concerning their various qualities. But with the addition of these helpful words we can describe very fully the qualities of the things with which we come into contact. We soon find, however, that there are varying degrees of these qualities. Some objects possess them in slight degree, some more fully and some in the highest degree. So we must have some way of expressing these varying degrees in the use of our adjectives.

This brings us to the study of comparison of adjectives. Suppose I say:

That orange is sweet, the one yonder is sweeter, but this one is sweetest.

I have used the adjective *sweet* expressing a quality possessed by oranges in three different forms, *sweet*, *sweeter* and *sweetest*. This is the change in the form of adjectives to show different degrees of quality. This change is called comparison, because we use it when we compare one thing with another in respect to some quality which they possess, but possess in different degrees.

The form of the adjective which expresses a simple quality, as *sweet*, is called the positive degree. That which expresses a quality in a greater degree, as *sweeter*, is called the comparative degree. That which expresses a quality in the greatest degree, as *sweetest*, is called the superlative degree.

265. Comparison is the change of form of an adjective to denote different degrees of quality.

There are three degrees of comparison, positive, comparative and superlative.

The positive degree of an adjective denotes simple quality.

The comparative degree denotes a higher degree of a quality.

The superlative degree denotes the highest degree of a quality.

266. Most adjectives of one syllable and many adjectives of two syllables regularly add *er* to the positive to form the comparative degree, and *est* to the positive to form the superlative degree, as:

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
sweet	sweeter	sweetest
cold	colder	coldest
soft	softer	softest
brave	braver	bravest
clear	clearer	clearest

267. Adjectives ending in *y* change *y* to *i* and add *er* and *est* to form the comparative and superlative degree, as:

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
busy	busier	busiest
lazy	lazier	laziest
sly	slier	sliest
witty	wittier	wittiest

268. Many adjectives cannot be compared by this change in the word itself, since the addition of *er* and *est* would make awkward or ill-sounding words. Hence we must employ another method to form the comparison of this sort of words. To say, *beautiful*, *beautifuller*, *beautifullest*, is awkward and does not sound well. So we say *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*.

Many adjectives form the comparative and superlative degree by using *more* and *most* with the simple form of the adjective, as:

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
beautiful	more beautiful	most beautiful
thankful	more thankful	most thankful
sensitive	more sensitive	most sensitive
wonderful	more wonderful	most wonderful

269. Adjectives of two syllables, to which *er* and *est* are added to form the comparison, are chiefly those ending in *y* or *le*, such as:

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
happy	happier	happiest
noble	nobler	noblest

steady	steadier	steadiest
feeble	feebler	feeblest
able	abler	ablest
witty	wittier	wittiest

270. Some adjectives, few in number, but which we use very often, are irregular in their comparison. The most important of these are as follows: (It would be well to memorize these.)

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
good well	better	best
bad ill	worse	worst
much many	more	most
little	less	least
late	later	latest
	latter	last
far	farther	farthest
(up) adv.	upper	uppermost
(in) adv.	inner	innermost

DESCENDING COMPARISON

271. The change in form of adjectives in the positive, comparative and superlative shows that one object has more of a quality than others with which it is compared. But we also wish at times to express the fact that one object has less of the quality than is possessed by others with which it is compared; so we have what we may call the descending comparison, by

means of phrases formed by using *less* and *least* instead of *more* and *most*. Using *less* with the positive degree means a degree less than the positive, while using *least* expresses the lowest degree. For example:

Descending Comparison

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
beautiful	less beautiful	least beautiful
intelligent	less intelligent	least intelligent
sensitive	less sensitive	least sensitive
thankful	less thankful	least thankful

PARTICIPLES AS ADJECTIVES

272. You remember, when we studied the participle, that we found it was called a participle because it partook of the nature of two or more parts of speech. For example; in the sentence, *The singing of the birds greeted us*; *singing* is a participle derived from the verb *sing*, and is used as a noun, the subject of the verb *greeted*.

But participles are used not only as nouns; they may also be used as adjectives. For example; we may say, *The singing birds greeted us*. Here the participle *singing* describes the birds, telling what kind of birds greeted us, and is used as an adjective modifying the noun *birds*.

You will recall that we found there were two forms of the participle, the present participle and the past participle. The present participle is formed by adding *ing* to the root form of the verb; and the past participle in regular verbs is formed by adding *d* or *ed* to the root form, and in irregular verbs by a change in the verb form itself. These two simple forms of participles are often used as adjectives.

273. The present participle is almost always active; that is, it refers to the actor. As, for example; *Vessels, carrying soldiers, are constantly arriving*. Here the present participle *carrying* describes the noun *vessels*, and yet

retains its function as a verb and has an object, *soldiers*. So it partakes of two parts of speech, the verb and the adjective.

274. The past participle, when used alone, is almost always passive, for it refers not to the actor, but to what is acted upon, thus:

The army, beaten but not conquered, prepared for a siege.

In this sentence *beaten* is the past participle of the irregular verb *beat*, and *conquered* is the past participle of the regular verb *conquer*, and both modify the noun *army*, but refer to it, not as the actor, but as the receiver of the action. Hence, the past participle is also the *passive* participle.

Note in the following sentences the use of the present and past participle as adjectives:

A *refreshing* breeze came from the hills.
They escaped from the *burning* building.
Toiling, *rejoicing*, *sorrowing*, onward through life he goes.
The man, *defeated* in his purpose, gave up in despair.
The child, *driven* in its youth to work, is robbed of the joy of childhood.
The army, *forced* to retreat, destroyed all in its path.
The children, *neglected* by society, grow up without their rightful opportunities.

Exercise 1

The adjectives and participles used as adjectives in the following sentences are printed in *italics*. Determine which adjectives are capable of comparison, and whether they are compared by adding *er* or *est*, or by the use of *more* and *most*.

In *a* community *regulated* by laws of demand and supply, but *protected* from *open* violence, *the* persons who become *rich* are, generally *speaking*, *industrious*, *resolute*, *proud*, *covetous*, *prompt*, *methodical*, *sensible*, *unimaginative*, *insensitive* and *ignorant*. *The* persons who remain *poor* are *the* entirely *foolish*, *the* entirely *wise*, *the idle*, *the reckless*, *the humble*, *the thoughtful*, *the dull*, *the imaginative*, *the sensitive*,

the well-informed, *the improvident*, *the* irregularly and impulsively *wicked*, *the clumsy* knave, *the open* thief, and *the* entirely *merciful*, *just* and *godly* persons.

—*Ruskin.*

PARTICIPLE PHRASES

275. If you will refer now to Lesson 9 you will find that we studied in that lesson concerning participle phrases; that is, several words used as a participle. We found that these participle phrases may also be used as nouns; as, for example:

His having joined the union caused him to lose his position.

Having joined is here a participle phrase used as a noun, subject of the verb *caused*. Participle phrases may also be used as adjectives.

You remember that we had four participle phrases, as follows:

Present perfect, *active*, having called.
Present perfect, *passive*, having been called.
Progressive, *active*, having been calling.
Progressive, *passive*, being called.

These participle phrases are used as adjectives to describe and modify nouns, thus:

The soldier, *having joined* his comrades, fought in the trenches.
The nurse, *having been watching* for days, was nearly exhausted.

The passive phrases also are used as adjectives, thus:

The woman, *having been hired* by the manager, went to work.
The man, *being attacked*, fought bravely.

Here the participle phrases *having been hired* and *being attacked* are used as adjectives to modify the nouns *woman* and *man*.

Use the participles and participle phrases of the verbs *see* and *obey* in sentences of your own.

USES OF ADJECTIVES

276. In our use of adjectives, we find it convenient to use them in several different ways. The most common use is closely connected with the noun as a modifying word, seeming in a sense almost a part of the noun; as in the sentence, *These brave men have bequeathed to us splendid victories*. In this sentence *these* and *brave* are easily discovered to be adjectives, being used in such close connection with the noun.

But sometimes we find the adjectives a little farther away from the noun which it describes, and then it becomes a little more difficult to find. You will recall, in our study of the copulative verb *be*, that we found it was simply a connecting word, connecting that which followed the verb with its subject. So we often find an adjective used in the predicate with a copulative verb showing what is asserted of the subject. When an adjective is used in this way, it modifies the subject just as much as if it were directly connected by being placed immediately before the noun. For example:

The lesson was long and difficult.

Long and *difficult* are used in the predicate after the copulative verb *was*, but are used to modify the subject *lesson* just as much as though we said instead, *It was a long and difficult lesson*. So watch carefully for adjectives used with the copulative verb *be* in all its forms, *am*, *is*, *are*, *was*, *were*; and the phrases, *has been*, *will be*, *must be*, etc.

277. You may find adjectives also used following the noun. As, for example: *The man, cool and resolute, awaited the attack. Cool* and *resolute* are adjectives modifying the noun *man*, but they follow the noun, instead of being placed before it.

COMMON ERRORS

278. There are a number of common errors which we make in comparison, which we should be careful to avoid.

1. A number of adjectives cannot be compared for they in themselves express the highest degree of quality, so they have no shades of meaning and will not admit of comparison. For example: *full*, *empty*, *level*, *round*, *square*. If a thing is full or empty or level or round or square, it cannot be more full, or more empty, or more level, or more round, or more square. So do not compare adjectives that already express the highest degree of a quality. Also such words as *supreme*, *eternal*, and *infallible*, cannot be compared for they also express the highest degree of quality.

2. Do not use *more* with the comparative form made by using *er*, or *most* with the superlative form, made by using *est*. For example: do not say, *They cannot be more happier than they are*. Say, *They cannot be happier*; or *They cannot be more happy*. Use either form but never both. Do not say, *That is the most wisest plan*. Say either, *That is the wisest plan*; or *That is the most wise plan*, but never use both forms. Never use *most* with a superlative form.

3. Do not use the superlative form in comparing *two* objects. The superlative form is used only when more than two are compared. For example; do not say, *He is the smallest of the two*. Say, *He is the smaller of the two*. *Which is the largest end?* is incorrect. *Which is the larger end?* is correct. *Which is the oldest, John or Henry?* is also incorrect. This should be, *Which is the older, John or Henry?* Use the *comparative* form always when comparing *two* objects.

4. In stating a comparison, avoid comparing a thing with itself. For example; *New York is larger than any city in the United States*. In this sentence, when you say *any* city in the United States, you are including New York; so you are really comparing New York with itself, and you are saying that New York is larger than itself. You should have said, *New York is larger than any other city in the United States*; or, *New York is the largest city in the United States*. When you compare an object with all others of its kind be sure that the word *other* follows the comparative word *than*.

5. When an adjective denoting *one* or *more than one* modifies a noun, the adjective and the noun must agree in number. For example; *The house is 30 foot square*. *Thirty* denotes more than one, so a plural noun should be used, and this sentence should be, *The house is 30 feet square*. *We are traveling at*

the rate of 40 mile an hour. This should be, *We are traveling at the rate of 40 miles an hour*.

6. Only two adjectives, *this* and *that* change their form when modifying a plural noun. *These* and *those* are the plural forms of *this* and *that*. So remember always to use *this* and *that* with singular nouns and *these* and *those* with plural nouns. For example; do not say, *These kind of people will never join us*. You should say, *This kind of people will never join us*. Or, *Those sort of flowers grows easily*. You should say, *That sort of flowers grows easily*.

7. Place your adjectives where there can be no doubt as to what you intend them to modify. Put the adjective *with* the noun which it modifies. For example; do not say, *a fresh bunch of flowers*, *a new pair of shoes*, *a salt barrel of pork*, *an old box of clothes*, *a cold cup of water*, *a new load of hay*. Put the adjective with the noun which it modifies, and say, *a bunch of fresh flowers*, *a pair of new shoes*, *a barrel of salt pork*, *a box of old clothes*, *a cup of cold water*, *a load of new hay*.

8. Adjectives are usually placed before the nouns they qualify, but sometimes, especially in poetry or in the use of participles, they follow the nouns. They should not, however, be placed too far away from the noun which they modify or be unnecessarily separated from the noun. Where there are two or more adjectives used to qualify the same noun, place nearest the noun the adjective most closely connected with the object described and place farthest from the noun the adjective least closely connected with the noun. If they are all of the same rank, place them where they will sound best, usually according to their length, naming the shortest adjective first.

Correct the following sentences by arranging the adjectives in the proper order:

The summer sky was a blue, soft, beautiful sky.
He bought a brown, fine, big horse.
A gold, beautiful, expensive watch was given her.
The new, beautiful apartment building is on the corner.
He advertised for a young, intelligent, wide awake man.

9. Never use *them* as an adjective. *Them* is a pronoun. One of the worst mistakes which we can make is to use such phrases as *them things*, *them men*, *them books*. Say, *those things*, *those men*, *those books*.

10. Do not use *less* for the comparative form of *few*. The comparative form of *few* is *fewer*. *Less* refers only to quantity, *fewer* to number. For example:

> He raised *less* grain this year than last, because he has *fewer* horses now than he had then.
> He uses *fewer* words because he has *less* to say.
> There are but *few* people here today; there were still *fewer* (not less) yesterday.

Exercise 2

Correct the adjectives in this exercise:

1. Hand me the little knife.
2. He claims to be more infallible than anyone else.
3. Mary is the oldest of the two.
4. He was the bestest boy in school.
5. The barn is forty foot long.
6. Yonder is a happy crowd of children.
7. Which is the largest end?
8. I found the bestest book.
9. This is the most principal rule.
10. Give me a cold cup of water.
11. These kind of books will not do.
12. Give me them books.
13. Who is the tallest, you or John?

Exercise 3

Mark all the adjectives in this poem. Note especially the participles used as adjectives.

THE COLLECTION

I passed the plate in church.

There was a little silver, but the crisp bank-notes heaped themselves up high before me;

And ever as the pile grew, the plate became warmer and warmer, until it fairly burned my fingers, and a smell of scorching flesh rose from it, and I perceived that some of the notes were beginning to smolder and curl, half-browned, at the edges.

And then I saw through the smoke into the very substance of the money, and I beheld what it really was: I saw the stolen earnings of the poor, the wide margin of wages pared down to starvation;

I saw the underpaid factory girl eking out her living on the street, and the over-worked child, and the suicide of the discharged miner; I saw the poisonous gases from great manufactories, spreading disease and death;

I saw despair and drudgery filling the dram-shop; I saw rents screwed out of brother men for permission to live on God's land;

I saw men shut out from the bosom of the earth and begging for the poor privilege to work, in vain, and becoming tramps and paupers and drunkards and lunatics, and crowding into almshouses, insane asylums and prisons;

I saw ignorance and vice and crime growing rank in stifling, filthy slums;

I saw shoddy cloth and adulterated food and lying goods of all kinds, cheapening men and women, and vulgarizing the world; I saw hideousness extending itself from coal-mine and foundry over forest and river and field;

I saw money grabbed from fellow grabbers and swindled from fellow swindlers, and underneath the workman forever spinning it out of his vitals;

I saw the laboring world, thin and pale and bent and care-worn and driven, pouring out this tribute from its toil and sweat into the laps of the richly dressed men and women in the pews, who only glanced at them to shrink from them with disgust;

I saw all this, and the plate burned my fingers so that I had to hold it first in one hand and then in the other; and I was glad when the parson in his white robes took the smoking pile from me on the chancel steps and, turning about, lifted it up and laid it on the altar.

It was an old-time altar, indeed, for it bore a burnt offering of flesh and blood—a sweet savor unto the Moloch whom these people worship with their daily round of human sacrifices.

The shambles are in the temple as of yore, and the tables of the money-changers waiting to be overturned.

—*Ernest Crosby.*

SPELLING

LESSON 15

There is a class of words having the sound of long *e*, represented by the diphthong *ie*, and another class having the same sound represented by *ei*. It is a matter of perplexity at times to determine whether one of these words should be spelled with *ie* or *ei*. Here is a little rhyme which you will find a valuable aid to the memory in spelling these words:

When the letter *c* you spy,
Put the *e* before the *i*.

For example, in such words as *deceit*, *receive* and *ceiling*, the spelling is *ei*. On the other hand, when the diphthong is not preceded by the letter *c*, the spelling is *ie*, as in *grief*, *field*, *siege*, etc.

There are a few exceptions to this rule, such as *either*, *neither*, *leisure*, *seize* and *weird*. Most words, however, conform to the rule—when preceded by *c*, *ei* should be used; when preceded by any other letter, *ie*.

Observe that this rule applies only when there is a diphthong having the sound of long *e*. When the two letters do not have the sound of long *e*, as in *ancient*, the rule does not apply.

Monday

Deceive
Belief
Conceive
Brief
Ceiling

Tuesday

Field
Receive

Piece
Chief
Leisure

Wednesday

Receipt
Wield
Weird
Thief
Perceive

Thursday

Deceit
Yield
Grief
Seize
Conceit

Friday

Relieve
Neither
Liege
Shield
Niece

Saturday

Relief
Achievement
Reprieve
Lien
Siege

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 16

Dear Comrade:

We have been tracing the development of written speech in order that we might have a clearer understanding of our own language. We have found how our earliest ancestors communicated with each other by signs and an articulate speech that was probably a little better than that of some animals of today. They gradually developed this articulate speech and then began to have need for some form of written speech. That which distinguishes man from the animals primarily is his power to remember and to associate one idea with another. From this comes his ability to reason concerning the connection of these ideas. Without this power of associative memory we would not be able to reason. If you could not recall the things that happened yesterday and had not the power of imagination concerning the things that may happen tomorrow, your reasoning concerning today would not be above that of the animals.

So man soon found it necessary to have some way of recalling accurately, in a manner that he could depend upon, the things that happened yesterday and the day before and still farther back in time. So that his first step was the invention of simple aids to memory such as the knotted strings and tally sticks. Then he began to draw pictures of the objects about him which he could perceive by the five senses, the things which he could see and hear and touch and taste and smell.

But man, the Thinker, began to develop and he began to have ideas about things which he could not see and hear and touch and taste and smell. He began to think of abstract ideas such as light and darkness, love and hate, and if he was to have written speech he must have symbols which would express these ideas. So we have found that he used pictures of the things he perceived with his five senses to symbolize some of his abstract ideas, as for example; a picture of the sun and moon to represent light; the bee to symbolize industry; the ostrich feather to represent justice. But as his ideas began to develop you can readily see that in the course of time there were

not enough symbols to go around and this sort of written speech became very confusing and very difficult to read.

Necessity is truly the mother of invention, and so this need of man forced him to invent something entirely new—something which had been undreamed of before. He began now to use pictures which were different in sense but the names of which had the same sound. You can find an example of this same thing on the Children's Puzzle Page in the rebus which is given for the children to solve. As for example: A picture of an eye, a saw, a boy, a swallow, a goose and a berry, and this would stand for the sentence, I saw a boy swallow a gooseberry.

Perhaps you have used the same idea in some guessing game where a mill, a walk and a key stands for Milwaukee. And so we have a new form of picture writing. Notice in this that an entirely new idea has entered in, for the picture may not stand for the whole word but may stand for one syllable of the word as in the example given above. The mill stands for one syllable, walk for another and key for another. This was a great step for it meant the division of the word into various sounds represented by the syllables.

What a new insight it gives us into life when we realize that not only our bodies but the environment in which we live, the machines with which we work and even the language which we use has been a product of man's own effort. Man has developed these things for himself through a constant and steady evolution. It makes us feel that we are part of one stupendous whole; we belong to the class which has done the work of the world and accomplished these mighty things. The same blood flows in us; the same power belongs to us. Truly, with this idea, we can stand erect and look the whole world in the face and demand the opportunity to live our own lives to the full.

Yours for Freedom,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

WORDS ADDED TO VERBS

279. We have just finished the study of adjectives and we have found that adjectives are words added to nouns to qualify or to limit their meaning. Without this class of words it would be impossible for us to express all of our ideas, for we would be at a loss to describe the objects about us. Adjectives enable us to name the qualities or tell the number of the objects with which we come in contact.

The verb, we have found, expresses the action of these objects; in other words, the verb tells what things do. So with adjectives and verbs we can describe the objects named by the nouns and tell what they do. For example, I may say, *Men work*. Here I have used simply a noun and a verb; then I may add various adjectives to this and say, *Strong, industrious, ambitious men work*. By the use of these adjectives, I have told you about the kind of men who work; but I have said nothing about the action expressed in the verb *work*. I may want to tell you *how* they work and *when* they work; *where* they work and *how much*; in other words, describe fully the action expressed in the verb *work*, so I say:

The men work busily.
The men work late.
The men work well.
The men work inside.
The men work hard.
The men work here.
The men work now.
The men work more.

Words like *busily*, *hard*, *late*, *here*, *well*, *now*, *inside*, and *more*, show *how*, *when*, *where* and *how much* the men work.

We could leave off these words and still have a sentence, since the other words make sense without them, but these words describe the action expressed in the verb.

Words used in this way are called adverbs because they are added to verbs to make our meaning more definite, very much as adjectives are added to nouns.

280. The word adverb means, literally, *to the verb*, and one would suppose from this name that the adverb was strictly a verb modifier, but an adverb is used to modify other words as well. An adverb may be used to modify an adjective; for example, we might say: *The man was very busy*. *This lesson is too long.* Here *very* and *too* are added to the adjectives *busy* and *long* to qualify their meaning.

281. You remember in the comparison of adjectives, we used the words *more* and *most* to make the comparative and superlative degrees. Here *more* and *most* are adverbs used with the adjectives to qualify their meaning. Adverbs used in this way will always answer the question, *how much*, *how long*, etc. In the sentence, *The man is very busy*, *very* is used to answer the question *how* busy. And in the sentence, *The lesson is too long*, the adverb *too* answers the question *how* long.

An adverb is also added to another adverb sometimes to answer the question *how*. For example; we say, *The man works very hard*. Here the adverb *hard* tells *how* the man works and *very* modifies the adverb *hard*, and answers the question *how hard*. So we have our definition of an adverb:

282. An adverb is a word that modifies the meaning of a verb, an adjective or another adverb.

Remember that adjectives are used only with nouns or pronouns, but the adverb may be used with a verb or an adjective or another adverb. You remember that we had in our first lesson, as the definition of a word, that, *a word is a sign of an idea*. The idea is a part of a complete thought. See how all of these various words represent ideas, and each does its part to help us express our thoughts.

HOW TO TELL ADVERBS

283. We need not have much difficulty in always being able to tell which words in a sentence are adverbs, for they will always answer one of the following questions: *How? When? Where? Why? How long? How often? How much? How far?* or *How little?* etc. Just ask one of these questions and

the word that answers it is the adverb in your sentence. Take the following sentence:

He *always* came *down too rapidly*.

The word *always* answers the question *when*. So *always* is an adverb, describing the time of the action expressed in the verb *came*—He *always* came. *Down* answers the question *where*. So *down* is the adverb describing the *place* of the action. *Rapidly* answers the question *how*, and is the adverb describing the *manner* of the action. *Too* also answers the question *how*, and modifies the adverb *rapidly*.

Exercise 1

Underscore the adverbs in the following sentences and tell which word they modify:

1. He writes correctly.
2. She answered quickly.
3. A very wonderful future awaits us.
4. You should not speak so hastily.
5. You can speak freely here.
6. He could never wait patiently.
7. We very often make mistakes.
8. She very seldom goes there.
9. He usually walks very rapidly.
10. I have read the lesson quite carefully.
11. We would willingly and cheerfully give our all for the cause.
12. He frequently comes here but I do not expect him today.
13. If we work diligently and faithfully we will soon learn to speak correctly and fluently.
14. I am almost sure I can go there tomorrow.
15. It was more beautifully painted than the other.
16. We eagerly await the news from the front.
17. He always gladly obeyed his father.
18. She spoke quite simply and met with a very enthusiastic reception.
19. The difficulty can be easily and readily adjusted.

Exercise 2

Use the following adverbs in sentences to modify verbs:

slowly
here
now
gently
loudly
never
soon
carefully
nobly
down
seldom
easily

Use the following adverbs in sentences to modify adjectives:

quite
very
more
too
most
less
nearly
so

Use the following adverbs in sentences to modify adverbs:

too
very
quite
less
more
most
least
so

CLASSES OF ADVERBS

284. There are a good many adverbs in our language, yet they may be divided, according to their meaning, into six principal classes:

1. Adverbs of time. These answer the question *when*, and are such adverbs as *now*, *then*, *soon*, *never*, *always*, etc.

2. Adverbs of place. These answer the question *where*, and are such adverbs as *here*, *there*, *yonder*, *down*, *above*, *below*, etc.

3. Adverbs of manner. These answer the question *how*, and are such adverbs as *well*, *ill*, *thus*, *so*, *slowly*, *hastily*, etc.

4. Adverbs of degree. These answer the questions *how much*, *how little*, *how far*, etc., and are such adverbs as *much*, *very*, *almost*, *scarcely*, *hardly*, *more*, *quite*, *little*, etc.

5. Adverbs of cause. These answer the question *why*, and are such adverbs as *therefore*, *accordingly*, *hence*, etc.

6. Adverbs of number. These are such adverbs as *first*, *second*, *third*, etc.

Exercise 3

In the following sentences there are adverbs of each class used. Find the adverbs of the different classes.

1. We shall always be found in the forefront of the struggle.
2. It is much more effective to train the young.
3. He came first and remained through the entire program.
4. It is pleasant to know that we have done well.
5. Our comrades are fighting yonder in the trenches.
6. Therefore we shall never acknowledge defeat.
7. Come down and discuss the matter with us.
8. We would soon be able to agree if we understood the facts.
9. Study your lessons slowly and carefully.
10. He was scarcely able to tell his story.

11. Accordingly I am sending you full particulars of the plan.
12. He came third in the ranks.

INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS

285. The adverbs *how*, *when*, *where*, *why*, *whither*, *whence*, etc., are used in asking questions, and when they are used in this way they are called interrogative adverbs. For example:

How did it happen?
Where are you going?
Whence came he?
When did he come?
Why did you do it?
Whither are you going?

These adverbs, *how*, *when*, *where*, *why*, *whence* and *whither*, are used in these sentences to modify the verbs and ask the questions concerning the *time* or *place* or *manner* of action expressed in the verb.

How may also be used as an interrogative adverb modifying an adjective or another adverb. For example:

How late did he stay?
How large is the house?

In the first sentence, the adverb *how* modifies the adverb *late*, and introduces the question. In the second sentence *how* modifies the adjective *large* and introduces the question.

Exercise 4

Write sentences containing the interrogative adverbs *how*, *when*, *where* and *why*, to modify verbs and ask simple questions.

Write sentences using the interrogative adverb *how* to modify an adjective and an adverb and to introduce a question.

ADVERBS OF MODE

286. There are some adverbs which scarcely fall into any of the above classes and cannot be said to answer any of these questions. They are such adverbs as *indeed*, *certainly*, *fairly*, *truly*, *surely*, *perhaps* and *possibly*. These adverbs really modify the entire sentence, in a way, and are used to show how the statement is made,—whether in a positive or negative way or in a doubtful way. For example:

Surely you will not leave me.
Truly I cannot understand the matter as you do.
Perhaps he knows no better.
Indeed, I cannot go with you.

Here, these adverbs, *truly*, *surely*, *perhaps* and *indeed*, show the manner in which the entire statement is made; so they have been put in a class by themselves and called **adverbs of mode**. *Mode* means literally *manner*, but these are not adverbs that express manner of action, like *slowly* or *wisely* or *well* or *ill*. They express rather the manner in which the entire statement is made, and so really modify the whole sentence.

PHRASE ADVERBS

287. We have certain little phrases which we have used so often that they have come to be used and regarded as single adverbs. They are such phrases as *of course*, *of late*, *for good*, *of old*, *at all*, *at length*, *by and by*, *over and over*, *again and again*, *through and through*, *hand in hand*, *ere long*, *in vain*, *to and fro*, *up and down*, *as usual*, *by far*, *at last*, *at least*, *in general*, *in short*, etc. These words which we find used so often in these phrases we may count as single adverbs.

ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

288. Sometimes the same word may be used either as an adjective or as an adverb, and you may have some difficulty in telling whether it is an adjective or an adverb. Some of these words are: *better*, *little*, *late*, *far*, *hard*, *further*, *first*, *last*, *long*, *short*, *much*, *more* and *high*. For example:

The *late* news verifies our statement.
The man came *late* to his work.

In the first sentence, the word *late* is used as an adjective modifying the noun *news*. In the second sentence, the word *late* is used as an adverb to modify the verb *came*.

289. You can always distinguish between adjectives and adverbs by this rule: Adjectives modify *only nouns* and *pronouns*, and the one essential characteristic of the adverb, as a limiting word, is that it is *always* joined to some other part of speech than a noun. An adverb may modify a verb, adjective or other adverb, but never a noun or pronoun.

You recall the rule which we have made the very foundation of our study: namely, that every word is classified in the sentence according to the *work* which it does in that sentence. So a word is an adjective when it limits or modifies or qualifies a noun or pronoun; a word is an adverb when it qualifies any part of speech other than a noun or pronoun, either a verb or an adjective or an adverb, or even an entire sentence, as is the case with adverbs of mode.

290. Many adverbs are regularly made from nouns and adjectives by prefixes and suffixes. Adverbs are made from adjectives chiefly by adding the suffix *ly*, or by changing *ble* to *bly*. For example: *honestly*, *rarely*, *dearly*, *ably*, *nobly*, *feebly*. But all words that end in *ly* are not adverbs. Some adjectives end in *ly* also, as, *kingly*, *courtly*, etc. The only way we can determine to which class a word belongs is by its use in the sentence.

Exercise 5

In the following sentences, tell whether the words printed in italics are used as adjectives or as adverbs: also note the words ending in *ly*. Some are adverbs and some adjectives.

1. The boy was very *little*.
2. It was a *little* early to arrive.
3. It was a *hard* lesson.

4. She works *hard* every day.
5. I read the *first* book.
6. I read the book *first* then gave it to him.
7. He went to a *high* mountain.
8. The eagle flew *high* in the air.
9. We saw clearly the lovely picture.
10. He is a wonderfully jolly man.
11. His courtly manner failed when he saw his homely bride.
12. He speaks slowly and clearly.
13. They are very cleanly in their habits.

NOUNS AS ADVERBS

291. Words that are ordinarily used as nouns, are sometimes used as adverbs. These are the nouns that denote time, distance, measure of value or direction. They are added to verbs and adjectives to denote the definite time at which a thing took place, or to denote the extent of time or distance and the measure of value, of weight, number or age. They are sometimes used to indicate direction. For example:

They were gone a *year*.
He talked an *hour*.
They will return next *week*.
They went *south* for the winter.
They traveled 100 *miles*.
The wheat is a *foot* high.
The man weighed 200 *pounds*.

In these sentences, the nouns, *year*, *miles*, *hour*, *foot*, *week*, *pounds* and *south* are used as adverbs. Remember every word is classified according to the work which it does in the sentence.

Exercise 6

Mark the adverbs in the following poem and determine what words they modify:

THE BRIDGE OF SIGHS

One more Unfortunate
Weary of breath,
Rashly importunate,
Gone to her death!

Take her up tenderly,
Lift her with care;
Fashion'd so slenderly,
Young, and so fair!

Look at her garments
Clinging like cerements;
Whilst the wave constantly
Drips from her clothing;
Take her up instantly,
Loving, not loathing.

Touch her not scornfully;
Think of her mournfully,
Gently and humanly;

Not of the stains of her—
All that remains of her
Now is pure womanly.

Make no deep scrutiny
Into her mutiny
Rash and undutiful;
Past all dishonor,
Death has left on her
Only the beautiful.

* * * * * * *

Alas! for the rarity
Of Christian charity
Under the sun!
O! it was pitiful!
Near a whole city full,
Home, she had none.

* * * * * * *

The bleak wind of March
Made her tremble and shiver;
But not the dark arch,
Or the black flowing river:
Mad from life's history

Glad to death's mystery
Swift to be hurled—
Anywhere, anywhere
Out of the world!

In she plunged boldly,
No matter how coldly
The rough river ran;
Over the brink of it,—
Picture it, think of it,
Dissolute Man!
Lave in it, drink of it,
Then, if you can!

Take her up tenderly,
Lift her with care;
Fashion'd so slenderly,
Young and so fair!

Ere her limbs frigidly
Stiffen too rigidly,
Decently, kindly,
Smooth and compose them;
And her eyes, close them,
Staring so blindly!

Dreadfully staring
Thro' muddy impurity,
As when with the daring
Last look of despairing
Fix'd on futurity.

Perishing gloomily,
Spurr'd by contumely,
Cold inhumanity,
Burning insanity,
Into her rest.
Cross her hands humbly
As if praying dumbly,
Over her breast!

Owning her weakness,
Her evil behavior,
And leaving, with meekness,
Her sins to her Saviour!

—Thomas Hood.

SPELLING

LESSON 16

The English language is truly a melting pot, into which have been thrown words from almost every language under the sun. This makes our spelling very confusing many times. Because of this also, we have in our language, words which have the same sound but different meaning, having come into the language from different sources. These words are called *homonyms*.

Homonyms are words having the same sound but different meaning. For example:

Plane, plain;
write, right.

Synonyms are words which have the same meaning. For example:

Allow, permit;
lazy, idle.

Our spelling lesson for this week contains a list of most of the commonly used homonyms. Look up the meaning in the dictionary and use them correctly in sentences. You will note that in some instances there are three different words which have the same sound, but different meanings.

Notice especially *principal* and *principle*. Perhaps there are no two words which we use frequently which are so confused in their spelling. *Principle* is a noun. *Principal* is an adjective. You can remember the correct spelling by remembering that *adjective* begins with *a*. *Principal*, the adjective, is spelled with an *a*, *pal*.

Notice also the distinction between *two*, *to* and *too*. Look these up carefully, for mistakes are very often made in the use of these three words. Also notice the words *no* and *know* and *here* and *hear*.

Monday

Buy—by
Fair—fare
Meat—meet
Our—hour
Pain—pane

Tuesday

Deer—dear
Hear—here
New—knew
No—know
Peace—piece

Wednesday

Two—to—too
Pair—pare—pear
Birth—berth
Ore—oar
Ought—aught

Thursday

Seen—scene
Miner—minor
Aloud—allowed
Stare—stair
Would—wood

Friday

Bear—bare
Ascent—assent
Sight—site—cite
Rain—reign—rein
Rote—wrote

Saturday

Great—grate
Foul—fowl
Least—leased
Principle—principal
Sale—sail

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 17

Dear Comrade:

We are finishing in this lesson the study of a very important part of speech. Adverbs are a necessary part of our vocabulary, and most of us need a greater supply than we at present possess. We usually have a few adverbs and adjectives in our vocabulary which are continually overworked. Add a few new ones to your vocabulary this week.

Do not slight the exercises in these lessons. The study of the lesson is only the beginning of the theoretical knowledge. You do not really know a thing until you put it into practice. You may take a correspondence course on how to run an automobile but you can not really know how to run a machine until you have had the practical experience. There is only one way to become expert in the use of words and that is to use them. Every day try to talk to some one who thinks and reads. While talking watch their language and your own. When a word is used that you do not fully understand, look it up at your very first opportunity and if you like the word use it a number of times until it has become your word.

We have been following in these letters, which are our weekly talks together, the development of the alphabet. It is really a wonderful story. It brings to us most vividly the struggle of the men of the past. Last week we found how they began to use symbols to express syllables, parts of a word. We found that this was a great step in advance. Do you not see that this was not an eye picture but an ear picture? The symbol did not stand for the picture of the object it named but each symbol stood for the sound which composed part of the word.

After a while it dawned upon some one that all the words which man used were expressed by just a few sounds. We do not know just when this happened but we do know that it was a wonderful step in advance. Cumbersome pictures and symbols could be done away with now. The same idea could be expressed by a few signs which represented the few sounds

which were used over and over again in all words. Let us not fail to realize what a great step in advance this was. These symbols represented sounds. The appeal was through the *ear gate* of man, not through the *eye gate*.

Thus came about the birth of the alphabet, one of the greatest and most momentous triumphs of the human mind. Because of this discovery, we can now form thousands of combinations expressing all our ideas with only twenty-three or twenty-four symbols,—letters that represent sounds. Since we have at our command all of this rich fund of words, let us not be content to possess only a few for ourselves. Add a word daily to your vocabulary and you will soon be surprised at the ease and fluency of your spoken and written speech; and with this fluency in speech will come added power in every part of your life.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

292. You will recall that we found that adjectives change in form to show different degrees of quality. A few adverbs are compared the same as adjectives. Some form the comparative and superlative degree in the regular way, just as adjectives, by adding *er* and *est*; for example:

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
soon	sooner	soonest
late	later	latest
often	oftener	oftenest
early	earlier	earliest
fast	faster	fastest

293. Most adverbs form their comparative and superlative by the use of *more* and *most* or *less* and *least*, just as adjectives do; for example:

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
clearly	more clearly	most clearly
nobly	more nobly	most nobly
ably	more ably	most ably
truly	more truly	most truly

Or, in the descending comparison:

clearly	less clearly	least clearly
nobly	less nobly	least nobly
ably	less ably	least ably
truly	less truly	least truly

294. The following adverbs are compared irregularly. It would be well to memorize this list:

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
ill	worse	worst
well	better	best
badly	worse	worst
far	further (farther)	furthest (farthest)
little	less	least
much	more	most

Some adverbs are incapable of comparison, as *here*, *there*, *now*, *today*, *hence*, *therefore*, etc.

Exercise 1

In the following sentences mark which adverbs are used in the positive, which in the comparative and which in the superlative degree:

1. He came too late to get his letter.
2. I can understand clearly since you have explained the matter to me.
3. He speaks most truly concerning a matter of which he is well informed.
4. If he comes quickly he will arrive in time.
5. I will be able to speak more effectively when I have studied the subject.
6. Those who argue most ably are those who are in complete possession of the facts.
7. He needs to take a course such as this very badly.
8. I am too weary to go farther today.
9. This is the least expensive of them all.
10. If he arrives later in the day I will not be able to see him.
11. I can understand him more clearly than I can his friend.
12. You must work more rapidly under the Taylor system of efficiency.
13. Those who are least trained lose their positions first.
14. Those who are best fitted for the positions do not always receive them.

POSITION OF ADVERBS

295. When we use an adverb with an adjective or other adverb, we usually place the adverb before the adjective or adverb which it modifies. For example:

She is *very* studious.
Results come *rather* slowly.
It is *quite* evident.
He speaks *too* rapidly.

When we use an adverb with the simple form of the verb, (that is, either the present or past time form or any time form in which we do not need to use a phrase), if the verb is a complete verb, we place the adverb after the verb. For example:

The boat arrived *safely*.
The man came *quickly*.
The boy ran *fast*.
The teacher spoke *hastily*.

But when the verb is an incomplete verb used in the simple form, the adverb usually precedes it in order not to come between the verb and its object. As, for example:

He *willingly* gave his consent to the proposition.
She *gladly* wrote the letter which we requested.
A soldier *always* obeys the command of a superior officer.

When the object of the incomplete verb is short, then the adverb is sometimes placed after the object. As, for example:

I study my lessons *carefully*.
He wrote a letter *hastily*.

The object is more closely connected with the verb and so is placed nearer the verb. However, when the object is modified by a phrase the adverb is sometimes placed immediately after the verb, as:

I studied *carefully* the lessons given for this month.
He wrote *hastily* a short letter to his son.

When we use an adverb with a verb phrase, we usually place the adverb after the first word in the verb phrase. For example:

The boy has *always* worked.
The workers will *then* understand.
He will *surely* have arrived by that time.

When the verb is in the passive form the adverb immediately precedes the principal verb, as for example:

The work can be *quickly* finished.
The obstacles can be *readily* overcome.

The lesson must be *carefully* prepared.
The workers must be *thoroughly* organized.

When an adverb of time and an adverb of manner or place are used to modify the same verb, the adverb of time is placed first and the adverb of manner or place second, as for example:

I *often* stop *there*.
He *usually* walks *very rapidly*.
They *soon* learn to work *rapidly*.

If the sentence contains adverbs of time, of place, and of manner; the adverb of time should come first; of place, second; and of manner, third; as:

He *usually* comes *here quickly*.

Exercise 2

Improve the location of the adverbs in the following sentences and observe how the change of place of the adverb may alter the meaning of the sentence:

1. I *only* saw the President once.
2. Such prices are *only* paid in times of great scarcity.
3. No man has *ever* so much wealth that he does not want more.
4. It seems that the workers can be *never* aroused.
5. I want to *briefly* state the reason for my action.
6. I shall be glad to help you *always*.
7. I *only* mention a few of the facts.
8. He *nearly* walked to town.
9. We are told that the Japanese *chiefly* live upon rice.
10. They expected them to sign a treaty *daily*.
11. Having *nearly* lost all his money he feared *again* to venture.

ADVERBS AND INFINITIVES

296. You remember when we studied the infinitive in Lesson 9, we found that it was not good usage to split the infinitive; that is, to put the modifying word between *to* and the verb. For example: *We ought to bravely stand for our rights*. The correct form of this is: *We ought to stand bravely for our rights*.

But we have found, also, that common usage breaks down the old rules and makes new rules and laws for itself, and so we frequently find the adverb placed between the infinitive and its sign.

Sometimes it seems difficult to express our meaning accurately in any other way; for example, when we say: *To almost succeed is not enough*, we do not make the statement as forceful or as nearly expressive of our real idea, if we try to put the adverb *almost* in any other position. This is also true in such phrases as *to far exceed*, *to more than counterbalance*, *to fully appreciate*, and various other examples which you will readily find in your reading. The purpose of written and spoken language is to express our ideas adequately and accurately.

So we place our words in sentences to fulfill this purpose and not according to any stereotyped rule of grammarians. Ordinarily, though, it would be best not to place the adverb between the infinitive verb and its sign *to*. Do not split the infinitive unless by so doing you express your idea more accurately.

COMMON ERRORS

297. The position in the sentence of such adverbs as, *only*, *also* and *merely*, depends upon the meaning to be conveyed. The place where these adverbs occur in the sentences, may completely alter the meaning of the sentence. For example:

Only the address can be written on this side. We mean that nothing but the address can be written on this side.

The address can only be written on this side. We mean that the address cannot be printed, but must be written.

The address can be written only on this side. We mean that it cannot be written on any other side, but on this side only.

So you see that the place in which the adverb appears in the sentence depends upon the meaning to be conveyed and the adverb should be placed in the sentence so as to convey the meaning intended.

Never use an adjective for an adverb. One common error is using an adjective for an adverb. Remember that adjectives modify nouns only. Whenever you use a word to modify a verb, adjective or another adverb, use an adverb. For example, *He speaks slow and plain*. This is incorrect. The sentence should be, *He speaks slowly and plainly*. Watch this carefully. It is a very common error.

Another very common error is that of using an adverb instead of an adjective with the copulative verb. Never use an adverb in place of an adjective to complete a copulative verb. When a verb asserts an action on the part of the subject, the qualifying word that follows the verb is an adverb. For example, you would say:

The sea was calm.

Here we use an *adjective* in the predicate, for we are describing the appearance of the sea, no action is expressed. But if we say: *He spoke calmly*, we use the adverb *calmly*, for the verb *spoke* expresses an action on the part of the subject, and the adverb *calmly* describes that action, it tells how he spoke. So we say: *The water looks clear*, but, *We see clearly*. *She appears truthful. They answered truthfully. She looked sweet. She smiled sweetly.*

With all forms of the verb *be*, as *am*, *is*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *have been*, *has been*, *will be*, etc., use an adjective in the predicate; as, *He is glad*. *I am happy. They were eager. They will be sad.* Use an adjective in the predicate with verbs like *look*, *smell*, *taste*, *feel*, *appear* and *seem*. For example: *He looks bad. It smells good. The candy tastes sweet*. *The man feels fine today. She appears anxious. He seems weary.*

Never use two negative words in the same sentence. The second negative destroys the first and we really make an affirmative statement. The two negatives neutralize each other and spoil the meaning of the sentence. For example, never say:

I don't want no education.
He didn't have no money.
Don't say nothing to nobody.
She never goes nowhere.
He won't say nothing to you.
He does not know nothing about it.
He never stops for nothing.
The stingy man gives nothing to nobody.

In all of these sentences we have used more than one negative; *not* and *no*, or *not* and *nothing*, or *never* and *no*, or *never* and *nothing*. Never use these double negatives. The correct forms of these sentences are:

I don't want any education.
He didn't have any money.
Don't say anything to any one.
She never goes anywhere.
He won't say anything to you.
He knows nothing about it.
He never stops for anything.
The stingy man gives nothing to any one.

Where to place the negative adverb, not. In English we do not use the negative adverb *not* with the common verb form, but when we use *not* in a sentence, we use the auxiliary *do*. For example, we do not say:

I like it not.
They think not so.
He loves me not.
We strive not to succeed.

Only in poetry do we use such expressions as these. In ordinary English, we say:

I do not like it.
They do not think so.
He does not love me.
We do not strive to succeed.

We often use *here* **and** *there* **incorrectly after the words** *this* **and** *that*. **We often use *here* and *there* incorrectly after the words *this* and *that*.**] For example, we say:

This here lesson is shorter than that there one was.

This should be: *This lesson is shorter than that one.*

Bring me that there book.
This here man will not listen.

These sentences should read:

Bring me that book.
This man will not listen.

Never use *here* and *there* in this manner.

Another common mistake is using *most* **for** *almost*.

For example, we say:

We are most there.
I see her most every day.

These sentences should read:

We are almost there.
I see her almost every day.

Most is the superlative degree of *much*, and should be used only in that meaning.

We often use the adjective *real* **in place of** *very* **or** *quite*, **to modify an adverb or an adjective.**

For example, we say:

> I was real glad to know it.
> She looked real nice.
> You must come real soon.

Say instead:

> I am very glad to know it.
> She looked very nice.
> You must come quite soon.

Really is the adverb form of the adjective *real*. You might have said:

> I am really glad to know it.

But never use *real* when you mean *very* or *quite* or *really*.

We use the adjective *some* **many times when we should use the adverb** *somewhat*. For example, we say:

> I am some anxious to hear from him.
> I was some tired after my trip.

What we intended to say was:

> I am somewhat anxious to hear from him.
> I was somewhat tired after my trip.

Do not use *what for* **when you mean** *why*. Do not say:

> What did you do that for?

Or worse still,

> What for did you do that?

Say:

Why did you do that?

Do not use *worse* **in place of** *more*. Do not say:

I want to go worse than I ever did.

Say:

I want to go *more* than I ever did.

Observe the distinction between the words *further* **and** *farther*. Farther always refers to distance, or extent. For example:

He could go no farther that day.
We will go farther into the matter some other time.

Further means more. For example:

He would say nothing further in regard to the subject.

Never use *good* **as an adverb**. *Good* is always an adjective. *Well* is the adverb form. *Good* and *well* are compared in the same way, *good*, *better*, *best*, and *well*, *better*, *best*. So *better* and *best* can be used either as adjectives or adverbs; but *good* is always an adjective. Do not say, *He talks good*. Say, *He talks well*. Note that *ill* is both an adjective and an adverb and that *illy* is always incorrect.

Exercise 3

Correct the adverbs in the following sentences. All but two of these sentences are wrong.

1. Come quick, I need you.
2. The boy feels badly.
3. Give me that there pencil.
4. I am some hungry.

5. The people learn slow.
6. He never stopped for nothing.
7. What did you say that for?
8. This here machine won't run.
9. I make a mistake most every time.
10. Watch careful every word.
11. The man works good.
12. The tone sounds harsh.
13. I don't want no dinner.
14. I hope it comes real soon.
15. I want to learn worse than ever.
16. She looked lovely.
17. She smiled sweet.
18. He sees good for one so old.
19. She answered correct.
20. He won't say nothing about it.
21. I will be real glad to see you.
22. That tastes sweetly.
23. The man acted too hasty.
24. We had most reached home.
25. They ride too rapid.

DO NOT USE TOO MANY ADVERBS

298. Like adjectives it is better to use adverbs sparingly. This is especially true of the adverbs used to intensify our meaning. Do not use the adverbs, *very*, *awfully*, etc., with every other word. It makes our speech sound like that of a gushing school girl, to whom everything is *very, awfully sweet*. More than that, it does not leave us any words to use when we really want to be intense in speech. Save these words until the right occasion comes to use them.

Exercise 4

Adverbs should always be placed where there can be no doubt as to what they are intended to modify. A mistake in placing the adverb in the sentence

often alters the meaning of the sentence. Choose the right word in each of the following sentences:

1. He looked glad—gladly when I told him the news.
2. Slaves have always been treated harsh—harshly.
3. I prefer my eggs boiled soft—softly.
4. The lecturer was tolerable—tolerably well informed.
5. Speak slower—more slowly so I can understand you.
6. The evening bells sound sweet—sweetly.
7. The house appears comfortable—comfortably and pleasant—pleasantly.
8. If you will come quick—quickly you can hear the music.
9. I was exceeding—exceedingly glad to hear from you.
10. The bashful young man appeared very awkward—awkwardly.
11. The young lady looked beautiful—beautifully and she sang beautiful—beautifully.
12. I looked quick—quickly in the direction of the sound.
13. The sun is shining bright—brightly today and the grass looks green—greenly.

SPELLING

LESSON 17

In our study of adjectives we have found that we use them to express some quality possessed by a noun or pronoun which they modify. You will recall when we studied nouns, we had one class of nouns, called abstract nouns, which were the names of qualities. So we find that from these adjectives expressing quality we form nouns which we use as the name of that quality.

For example from the adjective *happy*, we form the noun *happiness*, which is the name of the quality described by the adjective *happy*, by the addition of the suffix *ness*. We use this suffix *ness* quite often in forming these derivative nouns from adjectives but there are other suffixes also which we use; as for example, the suffix *ty* as in *security*, formed from the adjective *secure*, changing the *e* to *i* and adding the suffix *ty*. When the word ends in *t* we sometimes add only *y* as in *honesty*, derived from the adjective *honest*.

You remember that an abstract noun may express not only quality but also action, considered apart from the actor; so abstract nouns may be made from verbs. For example:

Running, from the verb *run*; *settlement*, from the verb *settle*.

In our lesson for this week the list for Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday contains adjectives of quality from which abstract nouns expressing quality can be made, by the addition of the proper suffix, either *ness*, *y*, *ty* or *tion*. The list for Thursday, Friday and Saturday consists of verbs from which abstract nouns can be made by the addition of the suffixes *ment* and *ing*.

Make from each adjective and verb in this week's lesson an abstract noun by the addition of the proper suffix. Be able to distinguish between the use of the qualifying adjective and the noun expressing quality.

Monday

Stately

Forgetful
Real
Concise
Noble

Tuesday

Slender
Empty
Equal
Righteous
Deliberate

Wednesday

Submissive
Dreadful
Eager
Sincere
Resolute

Thursday

Enlist
Defile
Adorn
Nourish
Commence

Friday

Content
Adjust
Induce
Indict
Adjourn

Saturday

Discourage
Refine
Acquire
Enrich
Infringe

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 18

Dear Comrade:

Last week we finished the study of adverbs and we found that they were a very important part of our vocabulary, and that most of us needed a greater supply than we at present possess. This is true of both adverbs and adjectives. While we do not use as many adverbs as adjectives in our ordinary speech, nevertheless, adverbs are a very important factor in expression. A great many adjectives can be readily turned into adverbs. They are adjectives when they are used to describe a noun, but by the addition of a suffix, they become adverbs used to describe the action expressed by the verb. So in adding to our stock of adjectives we also add adverbs to our vocabulary as well.

Watch your speech this week and make a list of the adverbs which you use most commonly, then go to your dictionary and see if you cannot find synonyms for these adverbs. Try using these synonyms for awhile and give the adverbs which you have been using for so long, a well earned rest. Remember that our vocabulary, and the power to use it, is like our muscles, it can only grow and develop by exercise.

The best exercise which you can possibly find for this purpose is conversation. We spend much more time in talking than in reading or in writing. Conversation is an inexpensive pleasure and it does not even require leisure always, for we can talk as we work; yet our conversation can become a great source of inspiration and of influence as well as a pleasant pastime. But do not spend your time in vapid and unprofitable conversation. Surely there is some one in the list of your acquaintances who would like to talk of things worth while. Hunt up this some one and spend some portion of your day in profitable conversation.

Remember also that a limited vocabulary means also a limited mental development. Did you ever stop to think that when we think clearly we

think in words? Our thinking capacity is limited, unless we have the words to follow our ideas out to their logical conclusions.

This matter of vocabulary is a matter, too, that is exceedingly practical. It means success or failure to us in the work which we would like to do in the world. A command of words means added power and efficiency; it means the power to control, or at least affect, our environment; it means the power over men and things; it means the difference between being people of ability and influence and being obscure, inefficient members of society.

So feel when you are spending your time in increasing your vocabulary that you are not only adding to your enjoyment of life but that you are doing yourself the best practical turn; you are increasing your efficiency in putting yourself in a position where you can make your influence felt upon the people and circumstances about you. This effort upon your part will bear practical fruit in your every day life.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

A GROUP OF WORDS

299. We have studied about the independent parts of speech, that is, the nouns and pronouns and verbs. These are independent because with them we can form sentences without the help of other words. And these are the only three parts of speech which are so independent—with which we can form complete sentences. Then we have studied also the words that modify, —that is, the words that are used with nouns and pronouns and verbs to describe and explain more fully the ideas which they express. So we have studied adjectives, which modify nouns and pronouns; and adverbs, which modify verbs or adjectives or other adverbs.

300. The adjectives and adverbs which we have studied thus far are single words; but we find that we may use little groups of words in about the same way, to express the same idea which we have expressed in the single adjective or adverb. For example, we may say:

Strong men, *or*, men of strength.
City men, *or*, men from the city.
Jobless men, *or*, men without jobs.
Moneyed men, *or*, men with money.

These groups of words like, *of strength*, *from the city*, *without jobs*, and *with money*, express the same ideas that are expressed in the single adjectives, *strong*, *city*, *jobless* and *moneyed*.

You recall that we defined any group of words used as a single word as a *phrase*; so these groups of words are phrases which are used as adjectives. The phrase, *of strength*, modifies the noun *men*, just as the adjective *strong* modifies the noun *men*. So we may call these phrases which modify nouns, or which may be used to modify pronouns also, *adjective phrases*, for they are groups of words used as adjectives.

Exercise 1

Change the adjectives which are printed in italics in the following sentences into phrases:

1. *Strong* men know no fear.
2. She bought a *Turkish* rug.
3. He followed the *river* bed.
4. *Fashionable* women are parasites.
5. He left on his *homeward* journey.
6. *Sensible* men readily understand their economic slavery.
7. *Intelligent* people will not always submit to robbery.
8. *Senseless* arguments cannot convince us of the truth.

USED AS ADVERBS

301. These phrases may be used in the place of single adverbs also. You remember an adverb is a word that modifies a verb or an adjective or another adverb. Let us see if we can not use a phrase or a group of words in the place of a single adverb. For example:

The man works rapidly, or, The man works with rapidity.
The man works now, or, The man works at this time.
The man works here, or, The man works at this place.

In these sentences *rapidly*, *now* and *here* are single adverbs modifying the verb *work*. The phrases, *with rapidity*, *at this time*, and *at this place*, express practically the same ideas, conveyed by the single adverbs, *rapidly*, *now* and *here*. These phrases modify the verb in exactly the same manner as the single adverbs. Therefore we call these groups of words used as single adverbs, *adverb phrases*.

We also use adverbs to modify adjectives. Let us see if we can use adverb phrases in the same way:

Rockefeller is *excessively* rich; or, Rockefeller is rich *to excess*.
He is *bodily* perfect, but *mentally* weak; or, He is perfect *in body* but weak *in mind*.

In the sentences above, the adverb *excessively* modifies the adjective *rich*; the same meaning is expressed in the adverb phrase, *to excess*. In the sentence, *He is bodily perfect, but mentally weak*, the adverb *bodily* modifies the adjective *perfect* and the adverb *mentally* modifies the adjective *weak*. In the last sentence, the same meaning is expressed by the adverb phrases, *in body* and *in mind*. These phrases modify the adjectives *perfect* and *weak*, just as do the single adverbs *bodily* and *mentally*.

302. We can use a phrase in the place of almost any adverb or adjective. It very often happens, however, that there is no adjective or adverb which we can use to exactly express our meaning and we are forced to use a phrase. For example:

He bought the large house *by the river*.
The man *on the train* is going *to the city*.
He came *from the country*.

It is impossible to find single words that express the meaning of these phrases, *by the river*, *on the train*, *to the city*, and *from the country*. You could not say the *river house*; that is not what you mean. You mean the

large house *by the river*, yet the phrase *by the river* modifies and describes the house quite as much as the adjective *large*. It is an adjective phrase used to modify the noun *house*, yet it would be impossible to express its meaning in a single word.

Exercise 2

Which phrases in the following sentences are used as adjectives and which phrases are used as adverbs?

Change these phrases to adjectives or adverbs, if you can think of any that express the same meaning.

1. Men lived *in caves* long ago.
2. Man's discovery *of fire* was the beginning *of industry*.
3. *After this discovery*, men lived *in groups*.
4. The work *of the world* is done *by machinery*.
5. The workers *of Europe* were betrayed.
6. They are fighting *for their country*.
7. The struggle *for markets* is the cause *of war*.
8. The history *of the world* records the struggle *of the workers*.
9. The idea *of democracy* is equal opportunity *for all*.
10. The invention *of the printing press* placed knowledge *within the reach of the masses*.
11. If you will study *with diligence* you can learn *with ease*.
12. This knowledge will be *of great value to you*.
13. Diplomacy means that the plans *of nations* are made *in secret*.
14. The men *in the factory* are all paid *by the month*.
15. They are afraid to take a trip *through Europe at this time*.

Exercise 3

Use a phrase instead of the adjective or adverb in the following sentences:

The men in the trenches are fighting *bravely*.
An *uneducated* man is *easily* exploited.
Our *educational* system is inadequate.

The *skilled* workers must be organized.
Careless men endanger the lives of others.
The plans have been *carefully* laid.
Ambitious men often trample on the rights of others.
Shall our education be controlled by *wealthy* men?
We want to live *courageously*.
We want to face the future *fearlessly*.
We want to possess *peacefully* the fruits of our labor.
By constant practice we can learn to speak *effectively*.
This book will be a *valuable* addition to your library.
The number of *unemployed* men *constantly* increases.
The men mastered each step *thoroughly* as they proceeded.
In order to express one's self *eloquently* it is necessary to think *clearly*.
We must consecrate ourselves *completely* to the cause of humanity.
A *kind* act is its own reward.
Experienced workers can *more easily* secure positions.
He spoke *thoughtlessly* but the people listened *eagerly*.
The soldier was rewarded for his *heroic* deed.
He is an *honorable* man and I am not surprised at this *brave* act.
A *prudent* man should be chosen to fill that *important* office.

PREPOSITIONS

303. Have you noticed that all of these phrases, which we have been studying and using as adjectives and adverbs, begin with a little word like *of*, *with*, *from*, *in*, *at* or *by*, which connects the phrase with the word it modifies? We could scarcely express our meaning without these little words. They are connecting words and fill an important function. These words usually come first in the phrase. For this reason, they are called *prepositions*, which means *to place before*.

Let us see what a useful place these little words fill in our language. Suppose we were watching the play of some boys outside our windows and were reporting their hiding place. We might say:

The boys are hiding *in* the bushes.
The boys are hiding *among* the bushes.

The boys are hiding *under* the bushes.
The boys are hiding *behind* the bushes.
The boys are hiding *beyond* the bushes.

These sentences are all alike except the prepositions *in*, *among*, *under*, *behind* and *beyond*. If you read the sentences and leave out these prepositions entirely, you will see that nobody could possibly tell what connection the *bushes* had with the rest of the sentence. The prepositions are necessary to express the relation of the word *bushes* to the rest of the sentence.

But this is not all. You can readily see that the use of a different preposition changes the meaning of the sentence. It means quite a different thing to say, *The boys are hiding in the bushes*, and to say, *The boys are hiding beyond the bushes*. So the preposition has a great deal to do with the true expression of our ideas.

The noun *bushes* is used as the object of the preposition, and the preposition shows the relation of its object to the word which it modifies. You remember that nouns have the same form whether they are used as subject or as object, but if you are using a pronoun after a preposition, always use the object form of the pronoun. For example:

I bought the book from *him*.
I took the message to *them*.
I found the place for *her*.

In these sentences the pronouns, *him*, *them*, and *her* are used as objects of the prepositions *from*, *to* and *for*. So we have used the object forms of these pronouns.

304. The noun or pronoun that follows the preposition, and is used with it to make a phrase, is the object of the preposition. The preposition is used to show the relation that exists between its object and the word the object modifies. In the sentence above, *The boys are hiding in the bushes*, the preposition *in* shows the relationship between the verb phrase, *are hiding* and the object of the preposition, *bushes*.

The noun or pronoun which is the object of a preposition may also have its modifiers. In the sentences used about the noun *bush*, which is the object of the prepositions used, is modified by the adjective *the*. Other modifiers might also be added, as for example:

The boys are hiding in the tall, thick bushes.

The entire phrase, *in the tall, thick bushes*, is made up of the preposition *in*, its object *bushes* and the modifiers of bushes, *the*, *tall* and *thick*.

305. The preposition, with its object and the modifiers of the object, forms a phrase which we call a *prepositional phrase*. These prepositional phrases may be used either as adjectives or as adverbs, so we have our definitions:

A preposition is a word that shows the relation of its object to some other word.

A phrase is a group of words used as a single word.

A prepositional phrase is a phrase composed of a preposition and its object and modifiers.

An adjective phrase is a prepositional phrase used as an adjective.

An adverb phrase is a prepositional phrase used as an adverb.

306. Here is a list of the most common and most important prepositions. Use each one in a sentence:

above
about
across
after
against
along
around
among
at

before
behind
below
beneath
beside
between
beyond
by
down
for
from
in
into
of
off
over
to
toward
through
up
upon
under
with
within
without

ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS

307. Many of the words that are used as prepositions are used also as adverbs. It may be a little confusing to tell whether the word is an adverb or a preposition, but if you will remember this simple rule you will have no trouble:

A preposition is always followed by either a noun or a pronoun as its object, while an adverb never has an object.

So when you find a word, that can be used either as a preposition or an adverb, used alone in a sentence without an object, it is an adverb; but if it is followed by an object, then it is a preposition. This brings again to our minds the fundamental rule which we have laid down, that every word is classified according to the work which it does in a sentence. The work of a preposition is to show the relation between its object and the word which that object modifies. So whenever a word is used in this way it is a preposition. For example: *He went about his business.*

Here, *about* is a preposition and *business* is its object. But in the sentence, *He is able to be about*, *about* is used as an adverb. It has no object.

He sailed before the mast. Here, *before* is a preposition introducing the phrase *before the mast*, which modifies the verb *sailed*. But in the sentence, *I told you that before*, *before* is an adverb modifying the verb *told*.

By applying this rule you can always readily determine whether the word in question is an adverb or a preposition.

Exercise 4

Tell whether the words printed in italics in the following sentences, are prepositions or adverbs and the reason why:

1. He came *across* the street.
2. He is *without* work.
3. Come *in*.
4. He lives *near*.
5. He brought it *for* me.
6. I cannot get *across*.
7. We will go *outside*.
8. This is *between* you and me.
9. He can go *without*.
10. Stay *in* the house.
11. Do not come *near* me.
12. They all went *aboard* at six o'clock.
13. He enlisted *in* the navy and sailed *before* the mast.

14. I do not know what lies *beyond*.
15. I will soon be *through*.
16. The aeroplane flew *above* the city for hours.

PHRASE PREPOSITIONS

308. Sometimes we have a preposition made up of several words which we have used so commonly together that they are used as a single word and we call the entire phrase a preposition. As, for example: *According to—on account of—by means of*, etc.

1. He answered *according to* the rule.
2. I could not go *on account of* illness.
3. He won the election *by means of* fraud.
4. The strike was won *by help of* all the comrades.
5. You can learn to spell only *by dint of* memory.
6. We speak incorrectly *by force of* habit.
7. He went to New York *by way of* Chicago.
8. Ferrer died *for the sake of* his ideals.
9. *In consideration of* this payment, we will send you the set of books.
10. Germany issued her ultimatum *in defiance of* the world.
11. *In view of* all the facts, we are convinced of his innocence.
12. He will gladly suffer *in place of* his comrade.
13. *In conformity with* the information contained in your letter,
14. I will join you on the 10th.

Exercise 5

Mark the prepositions in the following quotation. In the first three paragraphs the prepositional phrases are printed in italics. Determine whether they are used as adjective phrases or as adverb phrases. Underscore the prepositional phrases in the remainder of the quotation and determine which word is used as the object of the preposition.

THE SUNLIGHT LAY ACROSS MY BED

In the dark one night I lay *upon my bed*. And *in the dark* I dreamed a dream. I dreamed God took my soul *to Hell*.

And we came where hell opened *into a plain*, and a great house stood there. Marble pillars upheld the roof, and white marble steps led up *to it*. The wind *of heaven* blew *through it*. Only *at the back* hung a thick curtain. Fair men and women there feasted *at long tables*. They danced, and I saw the robes *of women* flutter *in the air* and heard the laugh *of strong men*. They feasted *with wine*; they drew it *from large jars* which stood somewhat *in the background*, and I saw the wine sparkle as they drew it.

And I said *to God*, "I should like to go up and drink." And God said, "Wait." And I saw men coming *into the banquet house*; they came in *from The back* and lifted the corner *of the curtain at the sides* and crept inquickly; and they let the curtain fall *behind them*; they bore great jars they could hardly carry. And the men and women crowded *round them*, and the newcomers opened their jars and gave them *of the wine* to drink; and I saw that the women drank even more greedily than the men. And when others had well drunken they set the jars *among the old ones beside the wall*, and took their places *at the table*. And I saw that some *of the jars* were very old and mildewed and dusty, but others had still drops *of new must on them* and shone *from the furnace*.

And I said to God, "What is that?" For amid the sounds of the singing, and over the dancing of feet, and over the laughing across the winecups, I heard a cry.

And God said, "Stand away off."

And He took me where I saw both sides of the curtain. Behind the house was a wine-press where the wine was made. I saw the grapes crushed, and I heard them cry. I said, "Do not they on the other side hear it?"

God said, "The curtain is thick; they are feasting."

And I said, "But the men who came in last. They saw?"

God said, "They let the curtain fall behind them—and they forgot!"

I said, "How came they by their jars of wine?"

God said, "In the treading of the press these are they who came to the top; they have climbed out over the edge and filled their jars from below; and have gone into the house."

And I said, "And if they had fallen as they climbed—?"

God said, "They had been wine."

I stood away off watching in the sunshine, and I shivered.

And after a while I looked, and I saw the curtain that hung behind the house moving.

I said to God, "Is it a wind?"

God said, "A wind."

And it seemed to me that against the curtain I saw pressed the forms of men and women. And after a while, the feasters saw it move, and they whispered one to

another. Then some rose and gathered the most worn-out cups, and into them they put what was left at the bottom of other vessels. Mothers whispered to their children, "Do not drink all, save a little drop when you have drunk." And when they had collected all the dregs they slipped the cups out under the bottom of the curtain without lifting it. After a while the curtain left off moving.

I said to God, "How is it so quiet?"

He said, "They have gone away to drink it."

I said, "They drink it—their own!"

God said, "It comes from this side of the curtain, and they are very thirsty."

And still the feast went on.

Men and women sat at the tables quaffing great bowls. Some rose, and threw their arms about each other and danced and sang. They pledged each other in the wine, and kissed each other's blood-red lips.

Men drank till they could drink no longer, and laid their heads upon the table, sleeping heavily. Women who could dance no more leaned back on the benches with their heads against their lovers' shoulders. Little children, sick with wine, lay down upon the edge of their mothers' robes.

I said, "I cannot see more, I am afraid of Hell. When I see men dancing I hear the time beaten in with sobs; and their wine is living! Oh, I cannot bear Hell!"

God said, "Where will you go?"

I said, "To the earth from which I came; it was better there."

And God laughed at me; and I wondered why He laughed.

—*Olive Schreiner.*

SPELLING

LESSON 18

There are a number of words that are ordinarily followed by a preposition with its phrase. We make a great many mistakes in the use of the proper preposition with these words. Our spelling lesson this week covers a number of these words with examples illustrating the appropriate preposition to be used with each word. Learn to spell these words, look up their meaning in the dictionary and use each word with its proper preposition in sentences of your own construction.

MONDAY

Abhorrence, of; We have an abhorrence *of* war.
Abhorrent, to; War is abhorrent *to* us.
Acquaint, with; I will acquaint you *with* the facts in the case. You will then be acquainted *with* the facts.
Acquit, of; The man was acquitted *of* the charge.
Adequate, to; Our resources are not adequate *to* the demand.

TUESDAY

Angry, with, at; We are angry *with* persons and angry *at* things.
Astonished, at or by; (Never with) I am astonished *at* you, or *by* you, not *with* you.
Confer; We confer *with* people, *upon* or *about* matters.
Contrary; A thing is contrary *to* our ideas, (not *from* or *than*).
Controversy; with, between, or about, (not over). I had a controversy *with* you. There is a controversy *between* the two *about* the result.

WEDNESDAY

Convicted, of (not for). He was convicted *of* the crime.
Copy; We copy *after* people, *from* things, and *out* of books.
Deprive, of, (not from). We are deprived *of* an education.

Desire, of and for; We may speak of the desire *of* a man, meaning man's desire; but we should always say "He has a desire *for* position, *for* wealth," etc.

Die, of, for and from; A person dies *of*, not *from*, a disease. He dies *from* the effects of an injury. One person may die *with* another, but never *with* a disease, for the disease does not die.

THURSDAY

Differ, from, among, about, concerning, with; Persons or things differ *from* each other; that is, they are dissimilar in appearance. Two persons may differ *with* each other; that is, contend or disagree. Several persons differ *among* themselves *about* or *concerning* some matter.

Dissent, from (not to). There was a general dissent *from* that idea.

Guilty, of (not for). He is guilty *of* the crime.

Incentive, to (not for). It is a great incentive *to* action.

Receive, from, (not of). Received *from* John Smith, thirty dollars, etc.

FRIDAY

Infer, from, (not by). I infer this *from* your remarks, not *by* your remarks.

Introduce; A man is introduced *to* a woman, a speaker *to* an audience; *into* society or *into* new surroundings. We introduce a bill *in* Congress or a resolution *in* a committee.

Involved, in (not with). We are involved *in* difficulties.

Listen; We listen **for** the expected news; we listen **to** our friends, not *at*.

Married; One person is married **to** another, not **with** another.

SATURDAY

Matter, with, (not of). What is the matter *with* this?

Opposition, to (not against). There is opposition *to* the motion.

Part, to part *from*, means to leave. I will part *from* my friends. To part *with* means to give up. A fool soon parts *with* his money.

Remedy, for; We have a remedy *for* the disease.

Preventive, against; We have a preventive *against* disease.

It is easy to sit in the sunshine
And talk to the man in the shade;
It is easy to float in a well-trimmed boat,
And point out the places to wade.

But once we pass into the shadows
We murmur and fret and frown;
At our length from the bank, we shout for a plank,
Or throw up our hands and go down.

It is easy to sit in a carriage
And counsel the man on foot;
But get down and walk and you'll change your talk,
As you feel the peg in your boot.

It is easy to tell the toiler
How best he can carry his pack;
But not one can rate a burden's weight
Until it has been on his back.

The up-curled mouth of pleasure
Can preach of sorrow's worth;
But give it a sip, and a wryer lip,
Was never made on earth.

—*Ella Wheeler Wilcox.*

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 19

Dear Comrade:

In this lesson we are completing our study of the preposition. The preposition is one of the last parts of speech which we take up for study and it is also one of the last parts of speech to be added to our vocabulary. The child does not use the preposition when it first begins to talk. It uses the names of things; words of action; words that describe objects and actions. It does not begin to use prepositions until it begins to relate ideas.

The relation of ideas means that we are thinking; combining ideas into thoughts. Then we begin to need prepositions, which are words of relation, connecting words, expressing the relationship between ideas. The measure of the fullness and richness of our lives is the measure of our understanding of the world about us, of the relationship existing between the different phases of that world and of our relationship to it all.

So words do not mean much to us until we can relate them to our own lives and our own experiences. When you look up a word in the dictionary, do not study the word alone; study also the thing for which it stands. A person with a good memory might acquire a vocabulary by sheer feat of memory; but what good would it do unless each word could be related to practical experience? It is only in this way that words become *alive* to us. We must have an idea, a concept and knowledge of the thing for which the word stands.

So let us use our dictionary in this way. Do not be satisfied when you have looked up a word simply to know how to spell and pronounce the word and understand somewhat of its meaning. Do not be satisfied until it has become a live word to you. Have a clear image and understanding of just what each word stands for. Use the words in sentences of your own. Use them in your conversation. Make them a part of your every-day life.

Do not pass over any of the words in the lesson without understanding their meaning. Study the poem *Abou Ben Adhem* in this week's lesson. After you have read it over a number of times, close the book and rewrite the poem in prose in your own language. Then compare your version with the poem. Note where you have used different expressions and decide which is the better, the words used in the poem or your own words. Rewrite it several times until you have a well-written version of this poem.

Exercises such as this will increase your vocabulary and quickly develop the power of expression. No power can come in any department of life without effort having been expended in its acquisition. Our great writers have been careful students. Robert Louis Stevenson says that he has often spent a half a day searching for the particular word which he needed to express precisely the idea in mind. Stevenson is a master of the English and this power came to him by this sort of studious and earnest work.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

AN IMPORTANT WORD

309. Things are not always to be judged by their size. Sometimes the most important things are very small and unimportant in appearance. A great machine is before you. You see its giant wheels, its huge levers. These may seem to be the most important parts of the machine, but here and there throughout this great machine are little screws and bolts. These bind the giant parts together. Without these connecting links, the great wheels and levers and revolving belts could not work together. Let a little bolt slip out of its place in the mechanism, and the great wheels stop, the throbbing machinery comes to a standstill. No work is possible until this little bolt has been replaced.

So in our sentence building, the *preposition* is the bolt that joins words together. The importance of the preposition in a language increases just in proportion as the nation learns to think more exactly and express itself more accurately.

We found in our last lesson that by changing a preposition we can change the entire meaning of the sentence. A man's life may depend upon the use of a certain preposition. You may swear his life away by bearing testimony to the fact whether you saw him *within* the house, or *without* the house; or *before* dark, or *after* dark.

310. The preposition is an important word in the sentence. We can use it to serve our purpose in various ways. We have found, for instance, that we can use it:

First, to change an adjective into an adjective phrase. As, for example:

The *fearless* man demands his rights.
The man *without fear* demands his rights.

Second, to change an adverb into an adverb phrase. As, for example:

We want to possess *peacefully* the fruits of our labor.
We want to possess *in peace* the fruits of our labor.

Third, to express a meaning which we can express in no other way; as, for example, *They are fighting for their country*. There is no single word which we can use to express the meaning which we express in the phrase, *for their country*.

311. So the preposition has given us a new means of expression, *the prepositional phrase*. We can, by its help, use a phrase in place of an adjective to modify a noun or a pronoun, and in place of an adverb to modify a verb or an adjective. And we can also use the prepositional phrase to express relationship which we cannot express by a single adjective or adverb.

If I want to tell you that I see a bird in yonder tree, such an expression would be impossible without that little preposition *in*. By the use of various prepositions, I can express to you the relationship between the bird and the tree. I can tell you whether it is *under* the tree, or *in* the tree, or *over* the tree, or flying *around* the tree, or *near* the tree. By the use of the various

prepositions, I can express accurately the relationship that exists between the *bird* and the *tree*.

Exercise 1

Look up the list of prepositions in Section 306, on page 184. Use the following pairs of words in sentences and use as many different prepositions as you can to express the different relationships which may be expressed between these words. For example, take the two words, *man* and *house*. You may say:

The man went *around* the house.
The man went *about* the house.
The man went *over* the house.
The man went *under* the house.
The man went *without* the house.
The man went *into* the house.
The man went *by* the house.
The man went *beyond* the house.
The man went *to* the house.

enemy	city
soldiers	cannon
man	machine
woman	factory
children	school
government	people

A GOVERNING WORD

312. The preposition shows the relation between two words. In this way it enables us to use a noun or a pronoun as a modifying word. For example, in the sentence given above, *I see the bird in the tree*, the preposition *in* shows

the relationship between *bird* and *tree*, and makes of *tree* a modifying word. It expresses a different meaning than if we used the word *tree* as an adjective. For we do not mean that we see a tree bird, but a bird in a tree. So with the help of the preposition *in*, we have used *tree* as a modifying word.

But the preposition *in* also governs the form of the word that follows it. Since nouns have the same form whether they are used as subject or object, this does not mean any change in the form of the nouns. But pronouns have different forms for the subject and object, so when we use a pronoun with a preposition, we must use the object form. There are seven object forms of the personal pronouns, and after a preposition, always use one of these object forms.

He gave it to *me*.
Give it to *him*.
Give it to *her*.
Add this to *it*.
Bring it to *us*.
I will give it to *you*.
He gave it to *them*.

313. Be careful to always use the object form of the pronoun following a preposition. Observe this also in the use of the relative and interrogative pronoun "who." The object form is "whom." For example:

To whom will you go?
This is the man to whom I wrote.
For whom are you looking?
Where is the woman for whom you would make such a sacrifice?

Where to Put the Preposition

314. The preposition generally precedes its object. This is the reason it was given its name, *preposition*, meaning *to place before*. Sometimes, however, the preposition is separated from its object. This is often true when it is used with an interrogative or relative pronoun. With these pronouns, the preposition is often thrown to the end of the sentence. For example:

This is the book about which I was speaking; *or*, This is the book
which I was speaking about.
To whom shall I give this letter; *or*, Who shall I give this letter to?

The sentence, *To whom shall I give this letter*, is grammatically correct; but in ordinary usage we use the form, *Who shall I give this letter to?*

While the rule calls for the object form of the relative pronoun after a preposition—so that the use of *to whom* is grammatically correct—in common usage we use the subject form of the pronoun when it is used so far away from the preposition which governs it. So we find this use common. For example, instead of saying, *For whom is this letter?* we say, *Who is this letter for?*

315. In poetry also, we often find the object coming before the preposition. For example:

"The interlacing boughs between
Shadows dark and sunlight sheen,
Alternate, come and go."

Boughs is here the object of the preposition *between*, but in this poetic expression the object is placed before the preposition. Note also in the following:

"The unseen mermaid's pearly song,
Comes bubbling up the weeds *among*."

"Forever panting and forever young,
All breathing human passion far *beyond*."

316. After an interrogative adjective, the preposition is also often thrown to the end of the sentence. As, for example:

What men are the people talking *about*?
Which person did you write *to*?

With these few exceptions, however, the preposition usually precedes its object, as:

We were astonished *at* the news.
He arose *from* his sleep.

POSSESSIVE PHRASES

317. Review Lesson 4, in which we studied the possessive use of nouns. You will recall that we make the possessive form of the nouns by the use of the apostrophe and *s*. But instead of using the possessive forms of the name of inanimate things; that is, things without life, we generally denote possession by the use of a phrase. Thus we would say, *The arm of the chair*, instead of, *The chair's arm*; or, *The roof of the house*, instead of, *The house's roof*.

318. We also use a possessive phrase when the use of a possessive form would give an awkward construction. As, for example: *Jesus' sayings*. So many hissing sounds are not pleasant to the ear and so, we say instead, *The sayings of Jesus*.

319. We use a phrase also where both nouns are in the plural form. In many words, there is no difference in the sound between a single noun in the possessive form and a plural noun in the possessive form. We can readily tell the meaning when it is written, because the place of the apostrophe indicates the meaning, but when it is spoken the sound is exactly the same. As, for example:

The lady's hats.
The ladies' hats.

Written out in this way, you know that in the first instance I am speaking of the hats belonging to one lady, but in the second instance of the hats belonging to two or more ladies. But when it is spoken, you can not tell whether I mean one lady or a number of ladies. So we use a phrase and say, *The hats of the lady*; or, *The hats of the ladies*. Then the meaning is entirely clear.

320. Sometimes we want to use two possessives together, and in this case it is better to change one of them into a phrase; for example, *This is my comrade's father's book*. This is an awkward construction. Say instead, *This is the book belonging to my comrade's father*.

321. Do not overlook the fact, however, that the phrase beginning with *of* does not always mean possession. Consider the following examples and see if there is not a difference in meaning:

The history of Wilson is interesting.
Wilson's history is interesting.

In the first instance, I mean the history of Wilson's life is interesting; in the second instance I mean the history belongs to or written by Wilson is interesting. So there is quite a difference in the meaning. The phrase *of Wilson* used in the first example does not indicate possession.

Note the difference in meaning between the following sentences:

The picture of Millet is good.
Millet's picture is good.

The statue of Rodin stands in the park.
Rodin's statue stands in the park.

Would you say:

The invention of gunpowder, or gunpowder's invention?
The destruction of Louvain, or Louvain's destruction?
The siege of Antwerp, or Antwerp's siege?
The boat's keel, or the keel of the boat?

COMMON ERRORS

322. Prepositions are usually very small and seemingly unimportant words, yet we make a great many mistakes in their use. It is these little mistakes that are most difficult to avoid.

Notice carefully in your own speech this week, and in the conversation which you overhear, the use of the prepositions. Notice especially the following cautions:

1. Do not use prepositions needlessly. We often throw a preposition in at the close of a sentence which we have already used in the sentence, and which we should not use again. The little preposition *at* is most frequently used in this way. See how many times this week you hear people use such phrases as:

> At which store do you trade at?
> At what corner did you stop at?

The last *at* is entirely unnecessary. It has already been used once and that is enough. We also use *at* and *to* at the close of sentences beginning with an interrogative adverb, where they are not necessary. For example, we say:

> Where did you go to?
> Where did you stop at?
> Where am I at?

The correct form of these sentences is:

> Where did you go?
> Where did you stop?
> Where am I?

Do not use *at* and *to* in this way, they are entirely superfluous and give a most disagreeable sound to the sentence. Do not close a sentence with a preposition in this way.

2. Do not omit the preposition where it properly belongs. For example, we often say:

> The idea is no use to me.

We should say, *The idea is of no use to me.*

> I was home yesterday.

We should say, *I was at home* yesterday.

3. Do not use the preposition *of* with a verb that requires an object. The noun cannot be the object of both the verb and the preposition. As, for example:

He does not remember *of* seeing you.
Do you approve *of* his action?

Remember and *approve* are both incomplete verbs requiring an object, and the nouns *seeing* and *action* are the objects of the incomplete verbs *remember* and *approve*. The preposition *of* is entirely superfluous. The sentences should read:

He does not remember seeing you.
Do you approve his action?

Other verbs with which we commonly use the preposition *of* in this way are the verbs *accept* and *recollect*. As, for example:

Will you accept *of* this kindness?
Will you try to recollect *of* it?

These sentences should read:

Will you accept this kindness?
Will you try to recollect it?

The Correct Preposition

323. We make a great many mistakes also in the choice of prepositions. For example, the preposition *between* refers to two objects and should never be used when you are speaking of more than two, thus:

We settled the quarrel *between* the two men.

This is correct, but it is incorrect to say:

We settled the quarrel *between* the members of the Union.

We cannot settle a quarrel between a *dozen* people. When there are more than two, use the word *among*. We can perhaps attempt to settle a quarrel *among* a dozen people. *Between* refers to two objects, *among* refers to more than two. For example:

Divide the work *between* the two men.
Divide the work *among* twenty men.

324. Do not confuse the use of *in* and *into*. When entrance is denoted use *into*. As, for example:

He came into the room.
He got into the auto.

Often the use of *in* will give an entirely different meaning to the sentence. For example:

He ran *in* the water.
He ran *into* the water.
The man acted as our guide *in* the city.
The man acted as our guide *into* the city.
The horse ran *in* the pasture.
The horse ran *into* the pasture.

325. Do not use *below* and *under* to mean *less* or *fewer* in regard to an amount or number. *Below* and *under* have reference to place only. It is correct to say:

He went *under* the bridge.
He came out *below* the falls.

But it is incorrect to say:

The price is *below* cost.
There were *under* fifty present.

Say instead:

The price is *less* than cost.
There were *fewer* than fifty present.

326. Do not misuse *over* and *above*. These prepositions have reference only to *place*. They are incorrectly used to mean *more than* or *greater than*.

It is correct to say:

The boat anchored above the landing.
He flew over the city.

It is incorrect to say:

He bought above a hundred acres.
He lives over a mile from here.

These sentences should be:

He bought more than a hundred acres.
He lives more than a mile from here.

THE PREPOSITION WITH VERBS

327. In our first lesson on prepositions, we had a list of verbs and the correct preposition to use with these verbs. There are a few words which we use very commonly in which the meaning is slightly different according to the preposition which we use in connection with the verb. Foreigners especially who are learning the English language have great difficulty with the prepositions. Here are a few of these common words:

Adapt. With *adapt* we can use either the preposition *to* or *for*. For example; we adapt ourselves *to* circumstances, that is, we accommodate or conform ourselves; but a thing can be adapted *for* a certain purpose.

Agree. We can use the prepositions *with* and *to* with the verb *agree*, but with different meanings. For example, we say, We agree *with* you about a certain matter; and, We agree *to* the proposal which you make.

Ask. We ask a favor *of* a person. We ask a friend *for* a favor. We ask *about* some one or thing that we wish to hear about.

Charge. There are several prepositions we can use with the verb *charge*. Your grocer charges you *for* the things that you buy. If you run an account you are charged *with* a certain amount. These things are charged *to* you; but in war the enemy charges *upon* you.

Compare. One thing is compared *with* another in quality, but it is compared *to* another when we are using the comparison for an illustration.

Complain. We make complaint *to* the manager *of* the things we do not like.

Comply. We comply *with* the request of another, but he does a thing *in* compliance *with* that request. Do not use the preposition *to* with compliance.

Correspond. With correspond, we use either the preposition *with* or *to*. For example, I may correspond *with* you, meaning that I communicate with you by letter, but one thing corresponds *to* another, meaning that it is like the other.

Disgust. We are disgusted *with* our friends sometimes *at* the things which they do. We are disgusted *with* people and *at* things.

Reconcile. With reconcile, we use either the preposition *with* or *to*. For example, I may become reconciled *with* you; that is, I am restored to friendship or favor after an estrangement. But we reconcile one thing *to* another; that is, we harmonize one thing with another.

Taste. We have a taste *for* music, art or literature, but we enjoy the taste *of* good things to eat. When taste refers to one of the five senses, use the preposition *of*, but when you use it to mean intellectual relish or enjoyment, use the preposition *for*.

Exercise 2

Mark all of the prepositional phrases in the following poem:

THE ANGEL OF DISCONTENT

When the world was formed and the morning stars
Upon their paths were sent,
The loftiest-browed of the angels was made
The Angel of Discontent.

And he dwelt with man in the caves of the hills,
Where the crested serpents sting,
And the tiger tears and the she-wolf howls,
And he told of better things.

And he led them forth to the towered town,
And forth to the fields of corn,
And told of the ampler work ahead,
For which his race was born.

And he whispers to men of those hills he sees
In the blush of the misty west;
And they look to the heights of his lifted eye—
And they hate the name of rest.

In the light of that eye does the slave behold
A hope that is high and brave;
And the madness of war comes into his blood—
For he knows himself a slave.

The serfs of wrong by the light of that eye
March with victorious songs;
For the strength of the right comes into their hearts
When they behold their wrongs.

'Tis by the light of that lifted eye
That error's mists are rent;
A guide to the table-lands of Truth
Is the Angel of Discontent.

And still he looks with his lifted eye,
And his glance is far away,
On a light that shines on the glimmering hills
Of a diviner day.

—*Sam Walter Foss.*

Exercise 3

Mark all of the prepositions in the following poem. Write the entire phrases and mark the word which is the object of the preposition. For example, in the phrase in the second line; *from a rich dream*, *dream* is the object of the preposition *from*; and *a* and *rich* modify the noun *dream*.

Abou Ben Adhem (may his tribe increase)
Awoke one night from a rich dream of peace,
And saw, within the moonlight of his room,
Making it rich, and like a lily in bloom,
An angel, writing in a book of gold.
Exceeding peace had made Ben Adhem bold,
And to the Presence in the room he said,
"What writest thou?" The Vision raised its head,
And, with a look made of all sweet accord,
Answered, "The names of those who love the Lord."
"And is mine one?" said Abou. "Nay, not so,"
Replied the Angel. Abou spoke, more low,
But cheerily still; and said, "I pray thee, then,
Write me as one that loves his fellow-men."
The angel wrote and vanished. The next night

It came again, with a great wakening
light,
And showed the names whom love of
God had blessed,
And lo! Ben Adhem's name led all the
rest.

—*Leigh Hunt.*

SPELLING

LESSON 19

There are a few prepositions which might really be called derivative prepositions.

1. A few prepositions are formed from verbs. These are really participle prepositions, for they are the present participles of the verbs but have come to be used like prepositions. These are such as *concerning*, *excepting*, *regarding*, *respecting*, *during*, *according*, etc. Nearly all of these participle prepositions can be expressed by a preposition phrase, as for example, we can either say; I wrote *regarding* these facts, or I wrote you *in regard to* these facts. I mentioned them all *excepting* the last, or, I mentioned them all *with the exception of* the last. I have gone *according* to the directions, or, I have gone *in accord with* the directions.

2. Derivative prepositions are also formed by prefixing *a* to other parts of speech, as *along*, *around*, *abroad*, etc. Strictly speaking these might be called compound prepositions for the prefix *a* is really from the preposition *on*.

3. We have also compound prepositions formed:

By uniting two prepositions, as *into*, *within*, *throughout*, etc.

By uniting a preposition and some other part of speech, usually a noun or an adjective, as *beside*, *below* and *beyond*.

We also have a number of compound verbs which are made by prefixing a preposition to a verb. Some of these compound words have quite a different meaning from the meaning conveyed by the two words used separately; as for example, the compound verb *withstand*, derived from the preposition *with* and the verb *stand*, has almost the opposite meaning from *stand with*.

Our spelling lesson this week includes a number of these compound verbs formed by the use of the verb and a preposition. Look up the meaning in the

dictionary. Use them in sentences in the compound form; then the two words separately as a verb and a preposition and note the difference in the meaning.

Monday

Upset
Withdraw
Outrun
Overlook
Understand

Tuesday

Oversee
Undergo
Outnumber
Withhold
Overcome

Wednesday

Overflow
Undertake
Overreach
Overthrow
Outshine

Thursday

Overhear
Withstand
Overgrow
Overhaul
Overrun

Friday

Concerning
Regarding
Respecting
According
Excepting

Saturday

Against
Throughout
Around
Between
Beneath

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 20

Dear Comrade:

We are taking up in this lesson the study of the last important part of speech. We have spent some little time on the study of these parts of speech, but it has been time well spent. We cannot use good English and construct sentences that express our thoughts without an adequate knowledge of the words we use in sentence building. As soon as we finish the study of the parts of speech, we will spend several weeks in sentence building. This will give us a review of these lessons in which we have studied separate words.

The English language is one of the most interesting of all to study. It is the most truly international of all languages, for the English language contains words from almost every language in the world. Did you ever stop to think that we could have internationalism in language as well as in other things? We can be as narrowly patriotic concerning words as concerning anything else.

Nations have been prone to consider all those who do not speak their language as barbarians. Germany, perhaps, possesses as strong a nationalistic spirit as any country, and in Germany this spirit has found expression in a society formed for the purpose of keeping all foreign words out of the German language. They have published handbooks of native words for almost every department of modern life. They insist that the people use these words, instead of foreign importations. The German State takes great pride in the German language and considers it the most perfect of any spoken today. The rulers of Germany believe that it is a part of their duty to the world to see that all other nations speak the German language. In conquered Poland, only German is permitted to be taught in the schools or to be spoken as the language of commerce. The patriots in language seem to believe that there is some connection between purity of language and purity of race.

In English, however, we have the beginnings of an international speech. Our civilization is derived from various sources. Here in America we are truly the melting-pot of the nations, and this is mirrored forth in our language which is, in a way, a melting-pot also, in which have been thrown words from every tongue. Those for whom nationalism is an important thing will probably cling to the idea of a pure unmixed language, but to those of us to whom Internationalism is not an empty word, but a living ideal, an international language becomes also part of the ideal.

There is a wealth of wonderful literature open to us once we have gained a command of the English language. Pay especial attention to the quotations given in each lesson. These are quotations from the very best literature. If there are any of them that arouse your interest and you would like to read more from the same author, write us and we shall be glad to furnish you full information concerning further reading.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

CONJUNCTIONS

328. You remember that in Lesson 3, where we studied the parts of speech, we found that we had another connective word besides the preposition,—the conjunction.

A preposition connects two words and shows what one of them has to do with the other. The conjunction plays a different part as a connective, for it connects not only words but also phrases and clauses. Note the following sentences:

Shall we be men *or* machines?
We must struggle for ourselves *and* for our children.
We pray for peace *but* furnish ammunition for war.

The use of the conjunction saves a great deal of tiresome repetition, for, by its use, where two subjects have the same predicate or two predicates have the same subject, we can combine it all into one sentence.

You will readily realize how important this part of speech is to us. If we did not have conjunctions our speech would be cumbersome and we would have to use a great many short sentences and a great deal of repetition. If we wanted to make the same statement concerning a number of things, without conjunctions, we would have each time to repeat the entire statement. Try to write a description of a scene and avoid the use of conjunctions and you will see what an important part these connective words play in our power of expression.

Without the use of the conjunction, you would necessarily use a great many short expressions and repeat the same words again and again, and your description would be a jerky, tiresome, unsatisfactory piece of writing.

Exercise 1

Rewrite the following sentences, writing in separate sentences the clauses that are united by the conjunctions:

1. The birds are singing *and* spring is here.
2. We talk of peace, *but* war still rages.
3. The unemployed cannot find work *and* they are dying of hunger.
4. We believed in war for defense *and* every nation is now fighting for defense.
5. We believe in education *and* we are struggling for universal education.
6. The old order is fast passing *and* the new order is rapidly appearing.
7. Profit is the keynote of the present, *but* service shall be the keynote of the future.
8. All children should be in school, *but* thousands must earn their bread.

Note that these sentences are made up of two or more simple sentences combined; and each of these simple sentences is called a clause, and each clause must contain a subject and a predicate.

Exercise 2

Rewrite the following simple sentences, using conjunctions to avoid a repetition of the same subject and predicate. Rewrite these into a paragraph,

making as well written a paragraph as you possibly can:

One hundred years ago the workers fought for universal education.
As a result we have our public schools of today.
Our public schools have been our chief bulwark against oppression.
Our public schools are our chief bulwark against oppression.
Our public schools are our greatest safeguard for the protection of such liberty as we enjoy.
Our public school system embodies a socialistic ideal.
Our public school system is the most democratic of our institutions.
There has been a subtle subversion of the ideal.
The public school system has been made to serve the master class.
We have spent millions to make the ideal a reality.
Have we realized the ideal?
Is there universal education?
Is there education for every child beneath the flag?
The grounds of our public schools have cost millions.
The buildings have cost millions.
The courses of study are many.
They are varied.
They are elaborate.
But the workers of the world do not enjoy this feast.
The children of the workers do not enjoy this feast.

CLASSES OF CONJUNCTIONS

329. Conjunctions are divided into classes, as are other parts of speech, according to the work which they do. Notice the following sentences and notice how the use of a different conjunction changes the meaning of the sentence.

We are united *and* we shall win.
When we are united, we shall win.

In the first sentence the conjunction *and* connects the two clauses, *we are united* and *we shall win*. They are both independent clauses, neither is dependent upon the other, and both are of equal importance. But by the use

of the conjunction *when*, instead of the conjunction *and*, we have changed the meaning of the sentence. There is quite a difference in saying, *We are united and we shall win*, and *When we are united we shall win*.

By connecting these two statements with the conjunction *when*, we have made of the clause, *we are united*, a dependent clause, it modifies the verb phrase *shall win*. It tells *when* we shall win, just as much as if we had used an *adverb* to modify the verb phrase, and had said, *We shall win tomorrow*, instead of, *We shall win when we are united*.

So in these two sentences we have two different kinds of conjunctions, the conjunction *and*, which connects clauses of equal rank or order, and the conjunction *when*, which connects a dependent clause to the principal clause.

330. So the conjunctions like *and* are called co-ordinate conjunctions. *Co-ordinate* means literally of equal rank or order. Conjunctions like *when* are called sub-ordinate conjunctions. *Sub-ordinate* means of inferior rank or order.

So we have our definitions:

331. A conjunction is a word that connects words or phrases or clauses.

A co-ordinate conjunction is one that joins words, phrases or clauses having the same rank.

A subordinate conjunction is one that connects a dependent clause to the principal clause.

CO-ORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS

332. Co-ordinate conjunctions connect words, phrases or clauses of equal rank. The most commonly used co-ordinate conjunctions are; *and*, *but*, *or*, *nor*.

333. But there are a number of words which we often use as adverbs, which may also be used as co-ordinate conjunctions. These words are not always

conjunctions, for they are sometimes used as adverbs. When they are used as conjunctions they retain something of their adverbial meaning; but still they are conjunctions, for they are used to show the connection between two clauses of equal rank. Thus:

I am not in favor of the motion, *nevertheless* I shall vote for it.
The deputies voted for the war appropriation, *notwithstanding* they had carried on an extensive anti-war propaganda.
I did not believe in the change, *however* I did not oppose it.

334. The co-ordinate conjunctions which we use with this adverbial meaning also, are; *therefore*, *hence*, *still*, *besides*, *consequently*, *yet*, *likewise*, *moreover*, *else*, *than*, *also*, *accordingly*, *nevertheless*, *notwithstanding*, *otherwise*, *however*, *so* and *furthermore*.

These conjunctions always refer to what has been said before and serve to introduce and connect new statements.

335. We often use these conjunctions, and also, *and*, *but*, *or*, and *nor*, at the beginning of a separate sentence or paragraph to connect it in meaning with that which has gone before. You will often see the use of these conjunctions as the first word of a new paragraph, thus relating this paragraph to that which has preceded it.

336. Co-ordinate conjunctions connect words of equal rank.

NOUNS

Co-ordinate conjunctions may connect two or more *nouns* used as the subject of a verb. As:

Death and *disaster* follow in the wake of war.

In this sentence, *death* is just as much the subject of the verb *follow* as is the word *disaster*, but no more so. You can omit either of these words and the other will make a subject for the sentence. They are both of equal importance, both of the same rank in the sentence, and neither depends upon the other. These two words taken together form the subject of the

sentence. This is called the *compound subject*, for it consists of two simple subjects.

Co-ordinate conjunctions may connect two or more nouns used as the *object* of a verb.

He studies history and science.

In this sentence the words *history* and *science* are both used as objects of the verb *studies*.

Co-ordinate conjunctions may connect two or more nouns used as the object of a *preposition*.

He called for the letters and the papers.

In this sentence *letters* and *papers* are both objects of the preposition *for*, connected by the co-ordinate conjunction *and*.

Exercise 3

Note in the following sentences the nouns which are connected by conjunctions and decide whether they are used as the subject of the sentences or the object of verbs or of prepositions. Draw a line under compound subjects.

1. John and Henry are going home.
2. Music and painting are fine arts.
3. The grounds and buildings of our public schools have cost millions.
4. The time calls for brave men and women.
5. We struggle for truth and freedom.
6. Will you study English or arithmetic?
7. Education and organization are necessary for success.
8. We must learn the truth about production and distribution.
9. We demand justice and liberty.
10. The great struggle is between the working class and the ruling class.

PRONOUNS

337. Co-ordinate conjunctions may also connect pronouns.

These are used in the same way as nouns,—either as subject or object. Nouns have the same form whether used as subject or object. Pronouns, however, have different forms when used as the object. Here is where we often make mistakes in the use of pronouns. When the pronouns are connected by co-ordinate conjunctions they are of the same rank and are used in the same construction;—if they are used as subjects both must be used in the subject form;—if they are used as objects, both must be used in the object form. For example, it is incorrect to say, *He told the story to her and I*. Here *her* is properly used in the object form, for it is the object of the preposition *to*; the pronoun *I* connected with *her* by the use of the conjunction *and* is also the object of the preposition *to*, and the object form should be used. You would not say, *He told the story to I*. The sentence should read, *He told the story to her and me*.

Co-ordinate conjunctions may connect two pronouns used as the *subject* of a sentence, as for example:

She and *I* arrived today.

Co-ordinate conjunctions may connect two pronouns used as the *object* of the verb, as for example:

Did you call *her* or *me*?

Co-ordinate conjunctions may connect two pronouns used as the object of the *preposition*, as:

He gave that to *you* and *me*.

Exercise 4

Study closely the following sentences and correct those in which the wrong form of the pronoun is used.

1. He and I are old friends.
2. Did you ask him or me?

3. They promised him and I that they would come.
4. Find the place for she and me.
5. Me and him will get it for you and she.
6. She and I will go with you.
7. You and I must decide matters for ourselves.
8. You will find him and her to be loyal comrades.

VERBS

338. Co-ordinate conjunctions are also used to connect verbs. Verbs connected in this way have the same subject; and with the use of the conjunction to connect the verbs, we save repeating the subject.

He *reads* and *studies* constantly.

In this sentence *reads* and *studies* are words of the same kind and of the same rank; either could be omitted and the other would make a predicate for the sentence. They are of equal importance in the sentence and are connected by the conjunction *and*. They have a single subject, the pronoun *he*.

This is called a compound predicate.

In the sentence, *He reads constantly*, we have a simple predicate, the single verb *reads*; but in the sentence, *He reads and studies constantly*, we have a compound predicate, compound of the two verbs *reads* and *studies*. A sentence may have both a compound subject and a compound predicate. As, for example:

John and James read and study constantly.

In this sentence *John* and *James* is the compound subject of both the verbs, *read* and *study*. So we have a compound subject and a compound predicate.

Exercise 5

Notice the verbs in the following sentences connected by co-ordinate conjunctions. Draw lines under each compound predicate.

1. The days come *and* go in a ceaseless round.
2. The brave man dreams *and* dares to live the dream.
3. The coward dreams *but* dares not live the dream.
4. We produce splendidly *but* distribute miserably.
5. The bought press twists *and* distorts the facts.
6. Only a traitor aids *or* supports the enemy.
7. We agitate *and* educate for the cause of liberty.

ADJECTIVES

339. Co-ordinate conjunctions are used to connect adjectives.

In this way we use a number of adjectives to modify the same word without tiresome repetition. When several adjectives are used to modify the same word, the conjunction is used only between the last two adjectives. As, for example:

A *simple*, *clear* and *concise* course has been prepared.

Exercise 6

In the following sentences, underscore the adjectives which are connected by co-ordinate conjunctions.

1. The plains of France are covered with the dead and dying soldiers.
2. Education should be both universal and free.
3. They are faithful and loyal comrades.
4. This was only our just and legal right.
5. Old and hoary was the man who sat on the stool by the fireless and godless altar.
6. The service of humanity is a sweet and noble task.
7. We must be brave and true.
8. He lived a noble and courageous life.
9. All was old and cold and mournful.

10. Most powerful and eloquent is the voice of the disinherited.

ADVERBS

340. Co-ordinate conjunctions are also used to connect adverbs. This gives us the power to describe the action expressed in verbs without the tiresome repetition of the verb. For example:

He spoke *fluently* and *eloquently*.

Exercise 7

In the following sentences underscore the adverbs which are connected by co-ordinate conjunctions:

1. Man selfishly and greedily prevents his fellow men from the enjoyment of nature's bounties.
2. She is wonderfully and gloriously brave.
3. He speaks eloquently and impressively, but very slowly.
4. Nature has provided lavishly and bountifully for her children.
5. Advice spoken truly and wisely is always in season.
6. We must resist injustice bravely and courageously.
7. He feels keenly and deeply the wrongs of his class.
8. He writes easily and rapidly.
9. The words, calmly and coolly spoken, were instantly opposed.
10. He reached that conclusion naturally and inevitably.
11. He was gently but unwaveringly firm.
12. The revolution comes slowly but surely.

PHRASES

341. Co-ordinate conjunctions are used, not only to connect words, but also to connect phrases.

Verb Phrases

342. Verb phrases may be connected by conjunctions. For example:

> The People's College *is owned* and *controlled* by the working class.
> We *have made* and *are making* a fierce struggle for a free press.

In this last sentence the two verb phrases, *have made* and *are making* are connected by the co-ordinate conjunction *and*. Often in using verb phrases, we use phrases in which the same helping verb occurs in both phrases. When this is the case the helping verb is quite often omitted in the second phrase and only the participle is connected by the conjunction. As, for example:

> The People's College is owned and controlled by the working class.

In this sentence the helping verb *is* belongs in both the phrases but is omitted in the second phrase in order to make a smoother sounding sentence. In the second phrase, only the past participle *controlled* is used. It is understood that we mean,

The People's College *is owned* and *is controlled* by the working class.

Exercise 8

Note the use of the conjunction in the following sentences to connect the verb phrases. Supply the helping verb where it is omitted.

1. Our system of education is rooted and grounded in outgrown dogmas.
2. We have written but have received no answer.
3. Will you come or stay?
4. Man must struggle or remain in slavery.
5. The workers are organizing and demanding their rights.
6. We must arouse and educate our comrades.
7. We have sought but have not found.

Prepositional Phrases

343. Co-ordinate conjunctions are used to connect prepositional phrases.

These phrases may be used as adjective phrases. For example:

The books *in the book case* and *on the table* belong to me.

These phrases may be used as adverb phrases. For example:

He works *with speed* and *with ease*.

Exercise 9

Note in the following sentences, the prepositional phrases which are connected by co-ordinate conjunctions. Mark which are used as adjective and which as adverb phrases.

1. Education is the road out of ignorance and into the light.
2. The army charged over the plain and up the hill.
3. The first men lived in groups and in clans.
4. Democracy means government of the people and by the people.
5. Shall we take the path toward progress or toward barbarism.
6. They are not fighting for their country but for their king.
7. Human rights are not protected by the law nor by the courts.
8. The problem of the working class and of society is the problem of equitable distribution.
9. They are deceived by their leaders and by their press.
10. You can pay either by the week or by the month.
11. Our government is not the rule of the majority but of the minority.

Infinitives and Participles

344. Co-ordinate conjunctions are also used to connect infinitives and participles.

Exercise 10

In the following sentences mark the infinitives and participles connected by co-ordinate conjunctions.

1. Those words will inspire us to dream and to dare.
2. We shall learn to produce and to distribute.
3. To be or not to be, that is the question.
4. Puffing and panting, the great engine pulled up to the station.
5. A cringing and trembling coward fears to demand his own.
6. The warped and twisted facts in the daily press deceive the masses.
7. Singing and dancing should be enjoyed by all children.
8. The exploiting and robbing of the people is made a virtue in ruling class ethics.

CLAUSES

345. Co-ordinate conjunctions are also used to connect clauses of equal rank. For example:

The floods came and the winds blew.

Each of these clauses is a complete sentence in itself, but they are combined into one compound sentence by the use of the co-ordinate conjunction, *and*. Clauses united in this way may have a compound subject and a compound predicate, but two complete clauses must be united by a co-ordinate conjunction in order to form a compound sentence. For example:

The rain and snow fell, *and* the wind blew a mighty gale.

Here the first clause in the compound sentence, *the rain and snow fell*, contains a compound subject, *rain and snow*.

The boys are running and shouting, *and* the girls are gathering flowers.

Here the first clause has a compound predicate, *are running* and *shouting*. The second *and* connects the two clauses forming the compound sentence.

CORRELATIVES

346. Certain co-ordinate conjunctions are used in pairs, such as *both, and*; *either, or*; *neither, nor*; *whether, or*. These pairs are called correlatives. The first word in the pair, as, *both*, *either*, *neither*, or *whether*, is used as an assistant conjunction helping the other to do the connecting. These are used in such sentences as:

I have *both* seen *and* heard him.
They will join us *either* in April *or* in May.
Labor has received *neither* liberty *nor* justice.
Whether to go forward *or* to retreat was the problem.

Note that *nor* is always the proper correlative to use with *neither* and also with the negatives *not* and *never* when they apply to what follows as well as to what precedes. For example:

There are thousands in this country who can *neither* read *nor* write.
Neither you *nor* I can foretell the future.
He will *not* write *nor* should you.
Capital punishment is *nothing* more *nor* less than legalized murder.
We shall *never* lower our colors *nor* retreat.

Or is always used with the correlative *either*. For example:

We will *either* come *or* write you.
Either he was mistaken *or* he deliberately lied.

Exercise 11

Note the use of the co-ordinate conjunctions *and*, *but*, *or* and *nor*, in the following quotation. Mark especially the use of *and* as an introductory conjunction, introducing a new sentence, but connecting it with that which has gone before.

In my judgment slavery is the child of ignorance. Liberty is born of intelligence. Only a few years ago there was a great awakening in the human mind. Men began to inquire, "By what right does a crowned robber make me work for him?" The man who asked this question was called a traitor.

They said then, and they say now, that it is dangerous for the mind of man to be free. I deny it. Out on the intellectual sea there is room for every sail. In the intellectual air, there is space enough for every wing. And the man who does not do his own thinking is a slave, and does not do his duty to his fellow men. For one, I expect to do my own thinking. And I will take my oath this minute that I will express what thoughts I have, honestly and sincerely. I am the slave of no man and of no organization. I stand under the blue sky and the stars, under the infinite flag of nature, the peer of every human being.

All I claim, all I plead is simple liberty of thought. That is all. I do not pretend to tell what is true nor all the truth. I do not claim that I have floated level with the heights of thought, nor that I have descended to the depths of things; I simply claim that what ideas I have, I have a right to express, and any man that denies it to me is an intellectual thief and robber.

Every creed that we have today has upon it the mark of the whip or the chain or the fagot. I do not want it. Free labor will give us wealth, and has given us wealth, and why? Because a free brain goes into partnership with a free hand. That is why. And when a man works for his wife and children, the problem of liberty is, how to do the most work in the shortest space of time; but the problem of slavery is, how to do the least work in the longest space of time. Slavery is poverty; liberty is wealth.

It is the same in thought. Free thought will give us truth; and the man who is not in favor of free thought occupies the same relation to those he can govern that the slaveholder occupied to his slaves, exactly. Free thought will give us wealth. There has not been a generation of free thought yet. It will be time to write a creed when there have been a few generations of free-brained men and splendid women in this world. I don't know what the future may bring forth; I don't know what inventions are in the brain of the future; I don't know what garments may be woven, with the years to come; but I do know, coming from the infinite sea of the future, there will never touch this "bank and shoal of time" a greater blessing nor a grander glory, than liberty for man, woman and child.

Oh, liberty! Float not forever in the far horizon! Remain not forever in the dream of the enthusiast and the poet and the philanthropist. But come and take up thine abode with the children of men forever. —*Ingersoll.*

SPELLING

LESSON 20

We found that we often formed adjectives by adding suffixes to other words. We also form many adverbs by the addition of suffixes to other words. Derivative adverbs are formed in the following ways:

1. By adding suffixes to adjectives, chiefly the suffix *ly*, as for example; *chiefly*, *truly*, *really*, *lately*, etc.

2. By changing *ble* to *bly*, as in *ably*, *nobly*, etc.

3. By adding the suffix *ward*, as in *forward*, *upward*, *skyward*, *downward*, *homeward*, etc.

4. We have some adverbs formed by adding the prefix *a* to adjectives and nouns, as *ahead*, *afoot*, *afresh*, also by adding the prefix *be*, as in *besides*, *beyond*.

We often misspell a number of adverbs by adding *s* where it does not rightfully belong; as, *anywheres*, *everywheres*, *backwards*, *forwards*, *towards*, *upwards*, *downwards*, *afterwards*, *homewards*, etc. All of these words should be written without the *s*.

We also have a number of compound adverbs which are made by the union of two other parts of speech, such as *sometime*, *henceforth*, *forever*, *overheard*, *outside*, etc.

In the lesson for Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, adjectives are given having opposite meanings. Make the proper adverbs from these adjectives by the addition of the suffix *ly*.

Thursday's and Friday's lessons are made up of both adjectives and adverbs that end in *ly*. Look up in your dictionary and be sure you know which are adjectives and which are adverbs.

Saturday's lesson is made up of compound adverbs.

Monday

Haughty—Humble
Wise—Ignorant
Careful—Careless
Firm—Wavering

Tuesday

Honest—Deceitful
Fearful—Fearless
Punctual—Tardy
Identical—Different

Wednesday

Thoughtful—Thoughtless
Rich—Poor
Attentive—Inattentive
Industrious—Lazy

Thursday

Quickly
Lovely
Clearly
Cleanly

Friday

Homely
Truly
Courtly
Nearly

Saturday

Otherwise
Herewith
Sometime
Always

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 21

Dear Comrade:

In this lesson we are completing the study of conjunctions. We have studied the conjunction last among the parts of speech and in the order of the development of language, the conjunction naturally comes last. The need of connective words does not come in any language until the language is quite well developed. You will notice that the connective words, such as prepositions and conjunctions are the last words the child begins to use. The child first begins to use the names of the things with which it comes in contact, then it learns the words that express what these things do. But it is not until the child begins to reason that it begins to use connective words. These become necessary when we have reached a stage of development where we can consider the relationship existing between things.

The use of conjunctions, however, can be greatly overdone. The long and involved sentences are more difficult to understand. If you will note the authors which you enjoy the most, it will probably be those who use short and crisp sentences. We have some authors who by the use of conjunctions can string one sentence out over several pages. You wonder how they manage to exist so long without stopping for breath. It is very easy for us to fall into this error when we are thinking rapidly and our thoughts all seem to be closely connected. But no mind can grasp many ideas at one time. Break your sentences up and express your ideas concisely and clearly. Use conjunctions rather sparingly, especially these subordinate conjunctions. Do not have too many subordinate clauses in one sentence.

Notice in your reading for this week those who use the short, crisp sentences and those who use the longer and more involved sentences. Notice which are understood more readily and which are more enjoyable to read. Take some of the paragraphs from those who write long and involved sentences and break them up into short sentences and see if these shorter sentences do not make the meaning simpler and clearer. This will be excellent practice also in gaining the power of expression.

Especially in the class struggle do we need those who can write clearly and simply of the great problems of the day. As the work of the world is conducted today, the workers have too little time for reading. They are apt, after a hard day's work, to be too tired to follow an author through long, winding, involved passages.

In the spoken word, this is also true. You will find your hearers much more in sympathy with you if you will use short sentences. Break your thought up so they can readily grasp your meaning and follow you to your conclusion.

Conjunctions are very important to save us from tiresome repetitions and short, jerky sentences, but we must avoid using them too frequently.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS

347. We have found that co-ordinate conjunctions connect words, phrases and also clauses that are entirely independent; that is, they do not depend in the slightest degree upon any other word, phrase or clause. Subordinate conjunctions connect inferior clauses to the main clauses of the sentence. These inferior clauses are dependent clauses. Subordinate conjunctions never connect words or phrases; but only dependent clauses, to the rest of the sentence. Note the following sentences:

He came *quickly*.
He came *on time*.
He came *when he was called*.

In the first sentence the word *quickly* is an adverb modifying the verb *came* and answers the question *when*. It tells *when* he came. In the second sentence, the phrase *on time* is an adverb phrase modifying the verb *came*, and answers the question *when*. It tells *when* he came. In the third sentence, the clause *when he was called*, also answers the question *when*, and tells *when* he came. Therefore, it is a clause used as an adverb. It is different

from the phrase *on time*, for the phrase *on time* does not contain a subject and a predicate.

348. The difference between the phrase and the clause is that the phrase does not contain either a subject or a predicate, while the clause *always* contains both a subject and a predicate. So in the clause, *when he was called*, *he* is the subject and *was called* is the predicate, and *when* is the subordinate conjunction, which connects this adverb clause to the verb *came*, which it modifies. The clause *he came*, and the clause *when he was called*, are not of equal rank and importance, because the clause, *when he was called*, simply modifies the verb contained in the clause *he came*, by describing the *time* of the action expressed in the verb *came*. So the clause, *when he was called*, is a subordinate or dependent clause, and the conjunctions which connect this class of clauses to the main clause are called subordinate conjunctions.

349. A subordinate conjunction is one that connects a dependent clause to the principal clause.

CLASSES OF SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS

350. Most subordinate conjunctions are used to make adverb clauses. These clauses will answer some one of the questions answered by adverbs. They will tell *how*, *when*, *where* or *why* the action expressed in the verb in the principal clause occurred. There are six classes of these subordinate conjunctions which are used to introduce adverb clauses. They introduce:

351. Adverb clause of time. These clauses will answer the question *when* and are introduced by such subordinate conjunctions as, *before*, *since*, *as*, *while*, *until*, *when*, *after* and *as soon as*. Notice in the following sentences the difference made in the meaning of the sentences by the use of the different conjunctions:

We waited *until* you came.
We waited *after* you came.
We waited *as* you came.
We waited *before* you came.

We waited *since* you came.
We left *while* you were gone.
We left *when* you were gone.
We left *as soon as* you were gone.

352. Adverb clause of place. These answer the question *where*, and are introduced by the conjunctions, *where*, *whence*, *whither*.

I will go *where* you go.
The wind blows *whither* it listeth.
He went *whence* he came.

353. Adverb clauses expressing cause or reason. These will answer the question *why*. They are introduced by such subordinate conjunctions as, *because*, *for*, *since*, *as*, *whereas*, *inasmuch as*, etc.

Note the difference in the meaning of the following sentences expressed by the use of different conjunctions:

I will come *because* you expect me.
I will come *since* you expect me.
I will come *as* you expect me.
I will come *for* you expect me.
I will come *inasmuch as* you expect me.

354. Adverb clauses of manner. These clauses will answer the question *how*, and are introduced by such subordinate conjunctions as, *as*, *as if*, *as though*, etc.

Study *as though* you were in earnest.
Come *as if* you had been called.
Do *as* I say, not *as* I do.

In these clauses of *manner*, introduced by *as if*, and *as though*, *were* is used in the present form with either singular or plural subjects. For example:

He writes as if he *were* informed of the facts.
They talk as though they *were* confident of success.

You act as though I *were* your slave.

355. Adverb clauses of comparison. These clauses are introduced by the subordinate conjunctions *than* and *as*. The verbs are often omitted in these dependent clauses introduced by *than* and *as*. For example: *He is taller than I.* The complete sentence would be: *He is taller than I am. He is not so tall as I.* Here the sentence would be: *He is not so tall as I am.*

When the pronoun occurs in these dependent clauses, be sure to use the proper form of the pronoun. It may be the subject or the object of the verb which is not expressed. For example; it is incorrect to say: *I am not so tall as him.* The correct form is: *I am not so tall as he.* The complete sentence would be: *I am not so tall as he is*, and the pronoun should be in the subject form, for it is the subject of the verb *is*, which is understood and omitted.

The use of the *subject* or of the *object* form may make a difference in the meaning of your sentence. For example, you say: *I admire them as much as he.* You mean that you admire them as much as he admires them. But if you say, *I admire them as much as him*, you mean that you admire them as much as you admire him. Quite a different meaning!

Be careful in the use of your pronouns in this way, for you can express quite a different meaning. For example, if you say, *I care more for you than he*, you mean, I care more for you than he cares for you. But if you say, *I care more for you than him*, you mean, I care more for you than I care for him. A mistake like this might mean a great deal to you some time, if the one to whom you had been speaking had been studying a course in Plain English!

356. Adverb clauses of condition. These clauses are introduced by such conjunctions as, *if*, *provided*, *supposing*, *unless*, *except*, *otherwise*, *though*, *notwithstanding*, *albeit*, and *whether*. For example:

I will come *if* you need me.
I will come *provided* you need me.
I will go *notwithstanding* you need me.
I will not go *unless* I am called.
He will not go *except* he is called.
He will not go *though* he is called.

He came, *otherwise* I would go.
He will go *whether* you go or stay.

When subordinate clauses beginning with *if*, *though* or *unless* are joined to clauses containing *might*, *could*, *would* or *should*, the verb *were* is sometimes used with a singular subject, in such sentences as:

If this *were* true, I should know it.
Unless I *were* positive, I would not say so.
Though our leader *were* lost, yet we would not despair.
If he *were* here, he would explain it himself.
If I *were* with you, I might make you understand.

Sometimes in sentences like these, *if* is omitted in the clause, and the verb placed first. For example:

Were he here, he would deny these slanders.
Were he truly class-conscious, he would oppose this war.
Were this fact known, the people would never submit.

These clauses express something which is uncertain, or which is to be decided in the future; a supposition contrary to a fact or a wish. Occasionally you will find the verb *be* used instead of *is*, in clauses of this kind introduced by *if*, *though*, *unless*, *except*, *lest*, etc. For example:

If it *be* true, I will hear it.
Though he *be* guilty, we will not desert him.

In subordinate clauses connected by *if*, *unless*, etc., with a principal clause which expresses future time, the present form of the verb is used in the subordinate clause. For example:

If they are willing, we will join them.
Unless he comes, I shall not leave.
If it rains, we will not go.

357. Adverb clauses expressing purpose. These are introduced by such subordinate conjunctions as, *that*, *in order that* and *lest*. For example:

Take good care *that* you understand this lesson.
I will go today *in order that* I may meet him.
Watch these carefully *lest* they be stolen.
Read the labor press *that* you may know the truth.

Notice that *that*, when used in this way, as a pure conjunction, means *in order that*. For example, the sentence above might read:

Read the labor press *in order that* you may know the truth.

358. Adverb clauses expressing result. These are introduced by the subordinate conjunction *that*, as for example:

They were so late *that* I could not go.

SUMMARY

359. We have then adverb clauses introduced by subordinate conjunctions expressing:

1. **Time.** Answer the question *when*.
2. **Place.** Answer the question *where*.
3. **Cause or reason.** Answer the question *why*.
4. **Manner.** Answer the question *how*.
5. **Comparison.** Used to compare.
6. **Condition.** Answer the question *on what condition*.
7. **Purpose.** Answer the question *for what purpose*.
8. **Result.** Answer the question *to what result*.

Exercise 1

In the following sentences, mark the conjunctions and tell to what class they belong; ask the question *when*, *where*, *why*, *how*, *on what condition*, *for what purpose*, *to what result*. Underscore the subordinate clauses. The subjects of the subordinate clauses are printed in italics.

1. Speech was developed that *we* might be able to communicate with one another.
2. The International failed in the crisis because *it* had no definite war program.
3. We will fail if *we* have no definite program.
4. If *labor* were united, we could destroy wage slavery.
5. When the *people* understand, they will no longer submit.
6. Labor cannot win until *it* learns solidarity.
7. After the terrible *war* is over, the workers in all countries may come closer together.
8. We are convinced of the folly of nationalism since the *war* has been declared.
9. If *we* knew the facts we could not be misled.
10. Inform yourself before *you* seek to teach others.
11. We must unite in order that *we* may possess power.
12. It is more than the *heart* can bear.
13. May you have courage to dare ere *you* have ceased to dream.
14. If *we* remain ignorant, we shall remain enslaved.
15. We sometimes fear to trust our own thought because *it* is our own.
16. Though *we* should lose the strike we will not despair.
17. The battle waged so fiercely that *thousands* were slain.

PHRASE CONJUNCTIONS

360. There are certain phrases which have come to be used together as conjunctions so commonly that we may consider them as conjunctions. They are:

As if, *as though*, *but also*, *but likewise*, *so that*, *except that*, *inasmuch as*, *notwithstanding that*, *in order that*, *as well as*, *as far as*, *so far as*, *as little as*, *provided that*, *seeing that*, etc.

Exercise 2

Write sentences using these phrase conjunctions to introduce clauses.

NOUN CLAUSES

361. We have found that there are two kinds of clauses, principal clauses and subordinate clauses.

A principal clause is one that does not depend on any word.

A subordinate clause is one that depends upon some word or words in the principal clause.

We have found, also, that these principal clauses are always connected by co-ordinate conjunctions, for they are of equal rank and importance; neither is dependent upon the other.

Subordinate clauses are always connected with the principal clause by a subordinate conjunction. The subordinate clauses which we have been studying have all been adverb clauses which are used to describe the action expressed in the verb contained in the principal clauses.

The subordinate clause in a sentence may also be used as a noun. When the subordinate clause is used as a noun it is called a noun clause.

362. A noun clause is a clause used as a noun.

A noun clause may be used in any way in which a noun is used, except as a possessive. It may be used as a subject, an object, a predicate complement, or in apposition with a noun. These noun clauses may be introduced by either relative pronouns, interrogative pronouns or by conjunctions. For example:

I know *who* he is.
He asked, "*what* do you want?"
I know *where* it is.

In the first sentence, *who he is*, is a noun clause used as the object of the verb *know*. It tells *what* I know, and is the object of the verb *know*,—just as if I had said; *I know the facts.* In this sentence the noun, *facts*, is the object of the verb *know*.

In the second sentence, *He asked, "what do you want?"* the noun clause *what do you want* is the object of the verb *asked*, and is introduced by the interrogative pronoun *what*.

We will study in a subsequent lesson the use of noun clauses introduced by relative pronouns. In this lesson we are studying the conjunctions.

In the last sentence, *I know where it is*, the noun clause *where it is*, is the object of the verb *know*, and is introduced by the conjunction *where*.

363. Noun clauses are introduced by the subordinate conjunctions, *where*, *when*, *whence*, *whither*, *whether*, *how*, *why*, and also by the subordinate conjunction *that*. For example:

I know *where* I can find it.
I inquired *when* he would arrive.
We do not know *whence* it cometh nor whither it goeth.
Ask *whether* the train has gone.
I don't know *how* I can find you.
I cannot understand *why* he does so.
I believe *that* he is honest.

In all of these examples the noun clauses are used as the objects of the verb. Noun clauses may also be used as objects of prepositions. As, for example:

You do not listen to *what is said*.
He talked to me about *what had happened*.
He told me to come to *where he was*.

364. Noun clauses may also be used as the subject of a sentence. As for example:

That he is innocent is admitted by all.
That he was guilty has been proven.
Why he should do this is very strange.
How we are to live is the great problem.

In all of these sentences, the noun clause is used as the subject of the verb. You will note that most frequently the noun clause used as subject of the verb is introduced by the subordinate conjunction *that*. But quite often we write these sentences in a somewhat different way. For example:

It is admitted by all *that he is innocent*.
It has been proven *that he was guilty*.

You will notice in these sentences we have expressed practically the same thought as in the sentences where the noun clause was used as the subject of the verb.

But now we have this little pronoun *it* used as the subject, instead of the clause, which is the real subject of the sentence. *It* is simply used as the introductory word in the sentence. The noun clause is in reality the subject of the sentence.

365. Noun clauses may also be used as the predicate complement with a copulative verb. For example:

The general opinion is *that he is innocent*.
The problem is *how we may accomplish this quickly*.
The question was *why any one should believe such statements*.

In all of these sentences the noun clause is used as the complement of the incomplete verbs *is* and *was*, to complete the meaning, just as we use a noun as the predicate complement of a copulative verb in such sentences as, *Socialism is a science. War is murder.*

366. A noun clause may also be used in apposition to a noun to explain its meaning. Apposition means to place alongside of. Note in the following sentences:

The fact, *that such a law had been passed*, alters the situation.
His motion, *that the matter should be laid on the table*, was adopted.

In the first sentence, the clause, *that such a law had been passed*, is placed beside the noun *fact* and explains *what* that fact is. The clause, *that the*

matter should be laid on the table, is in apposition to and explains the noun *motion*.

These noun clauses are used in apposition.

Exercise 3

Complete the following sentences by inserting the appropriate conjunctions and pronouns in the blank spaces:

1. Can you tell.....Germany has a million fighting men?
2. Would you be pleased.....the United States should intervene in Mexico?
3. The Mexican revolution will continue.....the people possess the land.
4. No one may vote in the convention.....he has credentials.
5. .....Debs was in Woodstock jail, he became in Socialist.
6. .....the treaty was signed, hostilities ceased.
7. We shall win.....we have the courage.
8. .....we have lost this battle we shall not cease to struggle.
9. All are enslaved.....one is enslaved.
10. Humanity will be free.....labor is free.
11. Let us do our duty.....we understand it.
12. Man will never reach his best.....he walks side by side with woman.
13. We must struggle.....we would be free.
14. .....we shout for peace, we support war.
15. All our sympathies should be with the man.....toils,.....we know.....labor is the foundation of all.
16. .....all have the right to think and to express their thoughts every brain will give to all the best.....it has.
17. .....man develops he places greater value upon his own rights.
18. .....man values his own rights he begins to value the rights of others.
19. .....all men give to all others the rights.....they claim for themselves this world will be civilized.

Exercise 4

Note all the co-ordinate and subordinate conjunctions in the following verses from "The Ballad of Reading Gaol." Underscore the subordinate clauses. Are they adverb or noun clauses? Do the co-ordinate conjunctions connect words, phrases or clauses?

I know not *whether* Laws be right,
Or whether Laws be wrong;
All that we know who lie in gaol
Is *that* the wall is strong;
And that each day is like a year,
A year whose days are long.

But this I know, *that* every Law
That men have made for Man,
Since first Man took his brother's life,
And the sad world began,
But straws the wheat *and* saves the chaff
With a most evil fan.

This too I know—*and* wise it were
If each could know the same—
That every prison that men build
Is built with bricks of shame,
And bound with bars *lest* Christ should see
How men their brothers maim.

With bars they blur the gracious moon,
And blind the goodly sun:
And they do well to hide their Hell,
For in it things are done
That son of God *nor* son of Man
Ever should look upon!

In Reading gaol by Reading town
There is a pit of shame,
And in it lies a wretched man
Eaten by teeth of flame,
In a burning winding sheet he lies,
And his grave has got no name.

And there, *till* Christ call forth the dead,
In silence let him lie:
No need to waste the foolish tear,
Or heave the windy sigh:
The man had killed the thing he loved,
And so he had to die.

And all men kill the thing they love,
By all let this be heard,
Some do it with a bitter look,
Some with a flattering word,

The coward does it with a kiss,
The brave man with a sword.

—*Oscar Wilde.*

SPELLING

LESSON 21

In Lesson No. 17 we studied concerning abstract nouns derived from qualifying adjectives. We found that we formed these nouns expressing quality from adjectives that describe quality by the addition of suffixes.

Adjectives may likewise be formed from nouns and also from verbs by the addition of suffixes. There are a number of suffixes which may be used to form adjectives in this way; as, *al*, *ous*, *ic*, *ful*, *less*, *able*, *ible*, *ary* and *ory*. Notice the following words: nation, *national*; peril, *perilous*; reason, *reasonable*; sense, *sensible*; custom, *customary*; advise, *advisory*; hero, *heroic*; care, *careful*, *careless*.

To some words, more than one suffix may be added and an adjective of different meaning formed; for example, use, *useless*, *useful*; care, *careless*, *careful*.

Make as many adjectives as you can from the nouns and verbs given in the spelling lesson for this week by the addition of one or more of the following suffixes:

Al, *less*, *ous*, *ic*, *ful*, *able*, *ible*, *ary*, *ory*, and *ly*.

Monday

Accident
Danger
Origin
Commend
Element

Tuesday

Critic
Libel
Attain
Revolution
Contradict

Wednesday

Cynic
Injury
Respect
Station
Migrate

Thursday

Event
Parent

Order
Virtue
Marvel

Friday

Second
Fashion
Consider
Murder
Incident

Saturday

Constitution
Industry
Vibrate
Tribute
Compliment

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 22

Dear Comrade:

We have practically finished the study of the different parts of speech. We are now in possession of a knowledge of the tools which we need to use in expressing ourselves. We are ready to make practical application of this knowledge in writing and speaking. We will find that with our increasing ability to express ourselves there comes also the power to think clearly. The analysis of language has meant a growing power to *think* on the part of the people.

We sometimes imagine that simplicity of language was a part of primitive life, but this is not true. Simplicity of language is the product of high civilization. Primitive life was marked, not by simplicity of language, but by the scarcity of language. They made one word stand for an entire sentence, and if they wished to express a little different meaning, an entirely different word had to be used, as for example, in the primitive language: *I said to her*, would be one word, and *I said to him*, would be another, entirely different, word.

But as the power of thought began to develop, we began to analyze our meaning and we found that this thought was identical except the *him* and the *her*. So as we analyzed our thought our expression of it became more simple. In most languages, the different meaning of the verb, for example, is expressed by an arbitrary change in the verb form. This is called the inflection of the verb. In English we would use several words to express the same thing. For example, the Latin word *Fuissem* requires four English words to express the same meaning; *I should have been*, we say in English. So instead of having to learn a great number of different changes in the verb form, we, by the use of auxiliary verbs, *have*, *shall*, *do*, *be*, etc., are able to express all these shades of thought much more simply and clearly.

Most other languages also have changes for gender. Every noun has a gender of its own and sometimes this form gives the wrong gender to living beings and attributes sex to sexless objects and the only way to know the gender of the noun is simply by memory. Then the adjectives, possessive pronouns and the articles *a* and *the* have gender also and have to be changed to suit the gender of the noun; this involves a great effort of memory. So while the English may seem somewhat involved to you, it is, after all, much simpler than other languages. It has been freed from many superfluous endings and unnecessary complications.

Take a little time each day to read something out of the best literature. The quotations given in each of these lessons are from our very best writers. A study of these will be a wonderful help and inspiration to you and bring you in touch with some of the great thinkers of the revolution. They are our comrades and are putting into words the thoughts and hopes and dreams of our lives.

Yours for the Revolution,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

367. In our study of subordinate clauses, we have studied subordinate clauses used as adverbs and as nouns. We have found that adverb clauses can be used in the same way as adverbs, to describe the time, place, manner, cause, condition or purpose of the action expressed in the verb. We have found, also, that a noun clause may be used in any way in which a noun can be used, as the subject of the sentence, the object of a verb or preposition or as the predicate complement. But these are not the only uses to which the subordinate clause may be put. Note the following sentences:

Wealthy men desire to control the education of the people.
Men *of wealth* desire to control the education of the people.
Men *who are wealthy* desire to control the education of the people.

Do you see any difference in the words which are used to modify the noun *men*? In the first sentence, *wealthy* is an adjective, modifying the noun *men*. In the second sentence, *of wealth* is a prepositional phrase, used as an adjective modifying the noun *men*. In the last sentence, *who are wealthy* is a clause used in exactly the same way that the adjective *wealthy* and the adjective phrase *of wealth* are used, to modify the noun *men*.

We have expressed practically the same meaning in these three ways: by a word; by a phrase; by a clause.

368. A word used to describe and modify a noun is an adjective.

A phrase used to describe and modify a noun is an adjective phrase.

A clause used to describe and modify a noun is an adjective clause.

Note the difference between a phrase and a clause.

369. A prepositional phrase, used as an adjective, consists of the preposition and the noun which is its object, together with its modifiers. A phrase never has either a subject or a predicate. *Who are wealthy*, is a clause because it does contain a subject and a predicate. The pronoun *who* is the subject in the clause, and the predicate is the copulative verb *are* with the predicate complement, the adjective *wealthy*.

Exercise 1

In the following sentences change the adjective into a phrase and also into a clause, if possible. For example:

A *fearless* man always defends his rights.
A man *without fear* always defends his rights.
A man *who is fearless* always defends his rights.

1. The *unemployed* men are becoming desperate.
2. The *uneducated* masses are demanding equal opportunity.
3. The discovery of gold was an *important* discovery.
4. *Unorganized* labor is helpless.
5. The revolution needs *intelligent* rebels.
6. A few *wealthy* men are striving to control education.
7. This will be a *progressive* movement.

8. *Labor-saving* inventions throw men out of employment.
9. *Scientific* men prophesy a great advance for the mass.

THE INTRODUCING WORD

370. You will notice that these adjective clauses are introduced by the relative pronouns *who*, *which* and *that*. These relative pronouns fulfil something of the office of a conjunction, because they are serving as connecting elements; they join these subordinate clauses to the words which they modify. But you will note, also, that these relative pronouns not only serve as connecting elements, but they also play a part in the subordinate clause, as either the subject or object. For example:

The man who has no education is handicapped in the struggle.
Are these the books that you ordered?

In the first sentence, *who has an education* is an adjective clause modifying the noun *man*, introduced by the relative pronoun *who*, which is also the subject of the verb *has*.

In the second sentence, *that you ordered* is an adjective clause, modifying the noun *books*, introduced by the relative pronoun *that*, which is also the object of the verb *ordered*.

371. There is no need to be confused in this matter of clauses. If the clause is used as a noun, either as the subject or the object or in any other way in which a noun can be used, it is a noun clause. If it is used as an adverb and will answer any of the questions *why*, *when*, *where*, or *how*, etc., it is an adverb clause. If it is used as an adjective,—if it modifies a noun or pronoun,—it is an adjective clause.

You will note that the only way in which a noun is used that does not have its corresponding clause is as a possessive. We do not have possessive clauses. The clause used as an adjective always modifies a noun or pronoun.

372. An adjective clause is a clause used as an adjective and hence always modifies a noun or pronoun.

An adjective clause may be introduced by the relative pronouns, *who*, *which* or *that*. The use of this clause is a great help to us in the expression of our ideas, for it enables us to combine several sentences containing related thoughts into one sentence so we have it all presented to the mind at once.

Exercise 2

In the following sentences, note which are the noun clauses and which are the adjective clauses and which are the adverb clauses. The verb in the subordinate clause is in italics.

1. Life is what we *make* it.
2. We acquire the strength that we *overcome*.
3. While he *slept* the enemy came.
4. All that he *does* is to distribute what others *produce*.
5. When faith *is lost*, when honor *dies*, the man is dead.
6. Thrice is he armed who *hath* his quarrel just; he is naked though he *be locked* up in steel whose conscience with injustice is *corrupted*.

7. When strength and justice *are* true yoke fellows, where can we find a mightier pair than they?
8. You will gain a good reputation if you *endeavor* to be what you *desire* to appear.
9. Live as though life *were* earnest and life will be so.
10. He that *loveth* makes his own the grandeur that he *loves*.
11. Who *does* the best his circumstance *allows* does well; angels could do no more.
12. He is not worthy of the honeycomb that *shuns* the hive because the bees *have* stings.
13. We always may be what we *might have been*.
14. Rich gifts wax poor when givers *prove* unkind.
15. Let me make the songs of the people and I care not who *makes* the laws.
16. Attention is the stuff that memory *is made* of.
17. A great writer has said that grace *is* beauty in action; I say that justice *is* truth in action.
18. If we do not *plant* knowledge when young it will give us no shade when we *are* old.
19. You can no more exercise your reason if you *live* in constant dread of laughter than you *can enjoy* your life if you *live* in constant dread and terror of death.

WHICH RELATIVE PRONOUN TO USE

373. We are sometimes confused as to which relative pronoun to use in introducing an adjective clause. We hesitate as to whether we should use *that* or *who* or *which*. Remember that *who* always refers to *persons*, *which* refers to *animals* or *things*, and *that* may refer to either *persons*, *animals* or *things*.

So when referring to a *person*, we may use either *who* or *that*, and when referring to *animals* or *things*, we may use either *which* or *that*. As, for example, we may say, either, *The man who was here yesterday came back today*, or *The man that was here yesterday came back today*. Either is correct, for *who* and *that* both refer to persons.

374. We may make a little distinction in the use of *who* and *that* when referring to *persons*, however. A clause introduced by *that* is usually a restrictive clause. It limits or restricts the meaning of the noun which it modifies. When you say, *The man that was here yesterday*, you mean *that* man and no other, limiting your meaning to that particular man. On the other hand, when you say, *The man who was here yesterday*, there is no restriction or limitation expressed in the use of the clause, but it is merely a descriptive clause, adding a new fact to our knowledge concerning that particular man.

The same is true when we are speaking of *things* using either *that* or *which*. The clause introduced by *which* is presumably a descriptive clause. We do, however, often use *who* or *which* when the sense of the clause is restrictive, but we should never use *that* to introduce an adjective clause, unless the sense is restrictive. When in your sentences you can use, instead of the relative pronoun *who* or *which*, the conjunction *and*, you can know that the use of the pronoun *who* or *which* is correct. As, for example:

I have read the book, *which* I found very interesting.

You could say instead:

I have read the book *and* I found it very interesting.

This would express the same meaning. But if you say: *I have read the book that I found very interesting*, you mean that you limit your idea to this particular book.

375. We do not always observe these niceties in our spoken and written speech, but it is interesting to know the shades of thought and meaning which you can express by the proper use of the language. The man who runs an engine and learns to know and love his machine almost as though it were a human being, can easily recognize the slightest change in the action of his machine. His ear catches the least difference in the sound of the running of the machine, a difference which we, who do not know and love the machine, would never notice.

So it is in language. Once we have sensed its beauty and its wondrous power of expression, we notice all these slight differences and shades of meaning which may be expressed by the use of words. In just the same manner the musician catches the undertones and overtones of the music, which we, who possess an uneducated ear, cannot know; and the artist also has a wondrous range of color, while we, who are not sensitive to color, know only a few of the primal colors.

ADJECTIVE CLAUSES WITH CONJUNCTIONS

376. The adjective clauses which we have been studying so far have been introduced by relative pronouns. Adjective clauses may also be introduced by conjunctions, such as, *where*, *when*, *whence*, or *why*. As, for example:

Antwerp is the place where a terrible battle was fought.
No man knows the hour when opportunity will be his.
Each group has a different reason why this world-war was precipitated.

Note in these sentences the clauses, *where a terrible battle was fought*, *when opportunity will be his*, *why this world-war was precipitated*, are all adjective clauses modifying the nouns *place*, *hour* and *reason*, and are introduced by the conjunctions *where*, *when*, and *why*. These are adjective clauses because they modify, by either limiting or describing, the nouns with which they are used. You will note that we could omit the nouns in the first two of these sentences and these clauses would become noun clauses, for they would be used in the place of a noun. As, for example:

Antwerp is where a terrible battle was fought.
No man knows when opportunity will be his.

377. We determine whether a clause is an adjective or an adverb or a noun clause just as we determine whether a word is an adjective, adverb or noun, by the work which it does in a sentence. Noun clauses are used in the place of a noun; adverb clauses modify verbs, adjectives, and adverbs; adjective clauses modify nouns and pronouns.

THE LITTLE WORD "AS"

378. Adjective clauses may also be introduced by *as*. *As* is a very convenient word and may be used in several different ways; sometimes as an adverb, sometimes as a conjunction; and it may also be used as a relative pronoun after *such*, *same* and *many*. For example:

Such books *as* you should read are listed here.
No such person *as* he ever came here.
We are facing the same crisis *as* our comrades faced.
This is the same *as* you gave before.
He has made as many mistakes *as* you have.

In these sentences *as* is really used as a relative pronoun, connecting these adjective clauses to the words which they modify. *As* may also be used as an adverb. *I am as tall as you are.*

Here the first *as* modifies *tall* and is used as an adverb; the second *as* is a conjunction connecting the subordinate clause *you are*, with the principal clause. Note that in making comparisons, *as* is always used when the comparison is equal, *so* when it is unequal, thus:

I am *as* tall as you are.
She is not *so* tall as you are.

We have found that *as* is also used as a conjunction to introduce an adverb clause. For example:

She is as beautiful *as* she is good.

The clause, *as she is good*, is an adverb clause, modifying the adjective *beautiful*. In the sentence, *Do as I say*, *as I say* is an adverb clause of manner, modifying the verb *do*.

CONNECTIVE WORDS

379. Let us not be confused in this matter of connectives. There are just four classes of connective words:

1. **Copulative verbs.**
2. **Relative pronouns.**
3. **Prepositions.**
4. **Conjunctions.**

380. The copulative verb is not a pure connective, for it serves another purpose in the sentence. For example, in the sentence, *The book is interesting*, the copulative verb *is* connects the adjective *interesting* with the noun *book*, which it modifies; but it also is the asserting word in the sentence. So it fulfils a double function. It is an asserting word and also a connective word.

381. The relative pronoun also is not a pure connective, for it serves two purposes in the sentence. It not only connects the clause which it introduces, with the word which it modifies, but it also serves as either the subject or object in the clause. For example: *The man who was here has gone.* The clause, *who was here*, is introduced by the relative pronoun *who*, which connects that clause with the noun *man*, which the clause modifies. *Who* also serves as the subject of the verb *was*.

In the sentence, *The men whom we seek have gone*, the clause, *whom we seek*, is introduced by the relative pronoun *whom*, which connects the clause with the word *men*, which it modifies. *Whom* also serves as the object of the verb in the clause, the verb *seek*.

382. A preposition is not a pure connective, since it serves a double function. It shows the relation of its object to the rest of the sentence and also governs the form of its object. As, for example, in the sentence: *The man before me is not the culprit*, the preposition *before* connects its object *me* with the noun *man*, which the prepositional phrase modifies, showing the relation between them; and it governs the form of its object, for the pronoun following a preposition must be used in the *object* form.

383. Even co-ordinate conjunctions can scarcely be considered pure connectives unless it be the co-ordinate conjunction *and*. Co-ordinate conjunctions such as *but*, *yet*, *still*, *however*, etc., not only connect words, phrases and clauses of equal rank, but in addition to connecting the words and expressions they also indicate that they are opposite in thought.

384. Co-ordinate conjunctions like *therefore*, *hence*, *then*, etc., connect words, phrases and clauses of equal rank, and also introduce a *reason* or *cause*. Co-ordinate conjunctions like *or*, *either*, *nor*, *neither*, *whether*, etc., connect words, phrases and clauses of equal rank, and also express the choice of an alternative. Thus these co-ordinate conjunctions can scarcely be considered as pure connectives.

385. Subordinate conjunctions are most frequently used to introduce adverb clauses and have an adverbial meaning. They express, as do adverbs, *place*, *time*, *manner*, *cause*, *reason*, *purpose*, *condition* or *result*. Some authorities indicate this double function by calling such words as these conjunctive adverbs, because, even when they are used as conjunctions, they retain some of their adverbial force.

But according to our rule that every word in the sentence is classified according to the function which it performs in that sentence, all words that perform the function of a conjunction are called conjunctions, although we understand that these conjunctions which introduce dependent clauses do still retain some of their adverbial meaning.

Exercise 3

In the following sentences the connectives are in italics. Determine whether they are copulative verbs, relative pronouns, prepositions, co-ordinate conjunctions or subordinate conjunctions.

1. They *are* slaves *who* dare not be *in* the right *with* two *or* three.
2. *In* the twentieth century war *will be* dead, dogmas *will be* dead, *but* man will live.
3. The abuse *of* free speech dies *in* a day, *but* its denial slays the life *of* the people *and* entombs the race.
4. Liberty *for* the few *is* not liberty.
5. Liberty *for* me *and* slavery *for* you means slavery *for* both.
6. The greatest thing *in* the world *is for* a man to know *that* he *is* his own.
7. Nothing can work me damage *except* myself.
8. He *that* loveth maketh his own the grandeur *which* he loves.
9. My life *is* not an apology, *but* a life.
10. I cannot consent to pay *for* a privilege *where* I have intrinsic right.
11. It *is* difficult to free fools *from* the chains *which* they revere.
12. Desire nothing *for* yourself *which* you do not desire *for others*.
13. All our liberties *are* due *to* men *who*, *when* their conscience compelled them, have broken the laws *of* the land.
14. "It takes great strength to live *where* you belong,
    When other people think *that* you *are* wrong."
15. *If* the truth shall make you free, ye *shall be* free indeed.
16. He *is* true *to* God *who is* true *to* man.

Exercise 4

In the following sentences underscore all the connectives—copulative verbs, prepositions, relative pronouns, co-ordinate and subordinate conjunctions.

"There was a bird's egg once, picked up by chance upon the ground, and those who found it bore it home and placed it under a barn-yard fowl. And in time the chick bred out, and those who had found it chained it by the leg to a log lest it should stray and be lost. And by and by they gathered round it, and speculated as to what the bird might be.

One said, "It is surely a waterfowl, a duck, or it may be a goose; if we took it to the water it would swim and gabble." But another said, "It has no webs to its feet; it is a barn-yard fowl; if you should let it loose it will scratch and cackle with the others on the dungheap." But a third speculated, "Look now at its curved beak; no doubt it is a parrot, and can crack nuts."

But a fourth said, "No, but look at its wings; perhaps it is a bird of great flight." But several cried, "Nonsense! No one has ever seen it fly! Why should it fly? Can you suppose that a thing can do a thing which no one has ever seen it do?" And the bird, with its leg chained close to the log, preened its wings.

So they say about it, speculating and discussing it: and one said this, and another that.

And all the while, as they talked, the bird sat motionless, "Suppose we let the creature loose to see what it will do?"—and the bird shivered. But the others cried, "It is too valuable; it might get lost. If it were to try to fly it might fall down and break its neck." And the bird, with its foot chained to the log, sat looking upward into the clear sky; the sky, in which it had never been—for the bird—the bird, knew what it would do—because it was an eaglet!"

—*Olive Schreiner*.

Exercise 5

These stirring lines are taken from Arturo Giovannitti's "Arrows in the Gale" and are a part of the poem "The Sermon on the Common." Note the use of the conjunctions. Mark all of the clauses.

Ye are the power of the earth, the foundations of society, the thinkers and the doers of all things good and all things fair and useful, the makers and dispensers of all the bounties and the joys and the happiness of the world, and if ye fold your mighty arms, all the life of the world stands still and death hovers on the darkened abodes of man.

Ye are the light of the world. There was darkness in all the ages when the torch of your will did not blaze forth, and the past and the future are full of the radiance that cometh from your eyes.

Ye are eternal, even as your father, labor, is eternal, and no power of time and dissolution can prevail against you.

Ages have come and gone, kingdoms and powers and dynasties have risen and fallen, old glories and ancient wisdoms have been turned into dust, heroes and sages have been forgotten and many a mighty and fearsome god has been hurled into the lightless chasms of oblivion.

But ye, Plebs, Populace, People, Rabble, Mob, Proletariat, live and abide forever.

Therefore I say unto you, banish fear from your hearts, dispel the mists of ignorance from your minds, arm your yearning with your strength, your vision with your will, and open your eyes and behold.

Do not moan, do not submit, do not kneel, do not pray, do not wait.

Think, dare, do, rebel, fight—ARISE!

It is not true that ye are condemned to serve and to suffer in shame forever.

It is not true that injustice, iniquity, hunger, misery, abjection, depravity, hatred, theft, murder and fratricide are eternal.

There is no destiny that the will of man cannot break.

There are no chains of iron that other iron cannot destroy.

There is nothing that the power of your arms, lighted by the power of your mind, cannot transform and reconstruct and remake.

Arise, then, ye men of the plow and the hammer, the helm and the lever, and send forth to the four winds of the earth your new proclamation of freedom which shall be the last and shall abide forevermore.

Through you, through your united, almighty strength, order shall become equity, law shall become liberty, duty shall become love and religion shall become truth.

Through you, the man-beast shall die and the man be born.

Through you, the dark and bloody chronicles of the brute shall cease and the story of man shall begin.

Through you, by the power of your brain and hand,

All the predictions of the prophets,

All the wisdom of the sages,

All the dreams of the poets,

All the hopes of the heroes,

All the visions of the martyrs,

All the prayers of the saints,

All the crushed, tortured, strangled, maimed and murdered ideals of the ages, and all the glorious destinies of mankind shall become a triumphant and everlasting reality in the name of labor and bread and love, the great threefold truth forever.

And lo and behold, my brothers, this shall be called the revolution.

SPELLING

LESSON 22

In our study of the spelling of English words we have found that there are not many rules that apply. In fact, the only way to learn to spell correctly is by sheer dint of memory.

In last week's lesson we found that a number of adjectives can be formed from nouns or verbs by the addition of *able* or *ible*, but we find it difficult to determine whether to add *able* or *ible*. The sound is practically the same and we are confused as to whether we should use *a* or *i*. There is no rule which applies in this case and there is nothing to do but to master the spelling of these words by memory. These are words which we use a great deal and which are very helpful members of our working vocabulary.

Our list of words in this week's lesson contain some of the most common words which we use ending in *ible* or *able*. The words for Monday, Tuesday, and Wednesday all end in *able*; the words for Thursday, Friday, and Saturday will end in *ible*. Notice them carefully and get fixed firmly in mind the correct spelling. Notice also that most of these adjectives can be changed into adverbs by changing *ble* to *bly*. So when you have added these adjectives to your vocabulary, you have also added the adverbs as well.

Monday

Probable
Capable
Usable
Considerable
Respectable

Tuesday

Durable
Salable
Advisable
Available
Equitable

Wednesday

Tolerable
Profitable
Remarkable
Valuable
Comfortable

Thursday

Possible
Horrible

Plausible
Intelligible
Terrible

Friday

Credible
Visible
Infallible
Responsible
Sensible

Saturday

Forcible
Permissible
Feasible
Corruptible
Eligible

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 23

Dear Comrade:

In this lesson we are taking up the study of interjections. Interjections are the language of emotion. This was probably the earliest form of speech. You notice that children use these exclamations often, and the sounds which are imitations of the noises about them. This language belongs also to the savage, whose peculiar and expressive grunts contain whole areas of condensed thought. As we progress from feeling to thinking, the use of the interjection diminishes.

You will not find interjections used in a book on mathematics or physical science or history. To attempt to read one of these books may make you use interjections and express your emotion in violent language, but you will not find interjections in these books. These books of science are books that express thought and not feeling. But if you turn to fiction and to oratory you will find the interjection used freely, for these are the books which treat of the human emotions and feelings. Especially in poetry will you find the interjection used, for poetry is the language of feeling and the interjection is an important part of the poet's stock in trade.

In conversation, these exclamatory words are very useful. They fill the gaps in our conversation and they help to put the listener and the speaker in touch with one another. They are usually accompanied by a gesture, which adds force to the word. The tone of the voice in which they are expressed also means a great deal. You can say, Oh! in half a dozen different ways; you may express surprise, wonder, joy, sorrow, pain, or disgust. A great many different and widely separated feelings can be expressed simply by the tone in which you use the exclamatory words. Some one has said that these words grease the wheels of talk. They serve to help the timid, to give time to the unready and to keep up a pleasant semblance of familiarity.

When we use them in the stress of emotion to express deep feeling, their use is perfectly justified. But one author has called these words "the miserable refuge of the speechless." We use them many times because we have no words with which to express ourselves. This use is unjustified. Be careful that you do not use them in this way. It has been said that the degree of a man's civilization can be pretty fairly judged by the expletives which he uses. Do not sprinkle your conversation with interjections and even stronger words because you are at a loss for other words.

There is a rich mine of words at your disposal. Do not be satisfied with bits of glass that have no value, when the rich diamonds of real expression can be yours for just a little digging. Save your emotional language for the time when you really need it to express deep emotion.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

INTERJECTIONS

386. We have been studying the parts of speech,—the elements of which sentences are composed. But we have another class of words which we call parts of speech because they are spoken and

written as words, but which are really not parts of speech in the same sense as the words which we have been discussing. These are words which we call interjections.

Interjection means, literally, thrown between, from *jecto*, to throw,and *inter*, between. So interjections do not enter into the constructionof sentences but are only thrown in between. Every word that is really a part of the sentence is either a noun, a pronoun, a verb, an adjective, an adverb, a preposition or a conjunction.

There are words, however, that we use with sentences which do not enter into the construction. For example, you say:

Oh! I am wounded.
Aha! I have conquered.
Alas! He came too late.

387. Words which we use in these sentences, like, *oh*, *aha*, *alas*, are used to express the emotion which you feel in making the statement. Your *Oh!* in a sentence like: *Oh! I am wounded*, would probably sound very much like a groan. But your *Aha!* in the, *Aha! I have conquered*, will sound like a shout of victory, and your *Alas!* in the sentence, *Alas! He came too late*, will express grief or regret over the fact that he came too late.

These words do not assert anything and very much of the meaning which we give them must come from the tone in which they are uttered. Every one, upon hearing them, knows at once whether they express grief or delight.

388. An interjection is an exclamatory word or phrase used to express feeling or to imitate some sound.

389. Interjections may be divided into four classes:

1. **Words which we use instead of an assertion to express feeling of various kinds**, as:

(a) Surprise or wonder; as, *Oh*, *Aha*, *What*.
(b) Pleasure, joy, or exaltation; as, *Hurrah*, *Ha, Ha*.
(c) Pain, sadness or sorrow; as, *Alas*, *Alack*.
(d) Contempt or disgust; as *Fie*, *Fudge*, *Ugh*, *Pshaw*.

2. **Words used instead of a question**; as, *Eh? Hey?*

3. **Words used instead of a command**; as:

(a) To call attention; as, *Hello*, *Ahoy*, *Whoa*.
(b) To express silence; as, *Shh*, *Hush*, *Hist*.
(c) To direct or drive out, etc., as, *Whoa*, *Gee*, *Haw*, *Scat*.

4. **Words used to imitate sounds made by animals, machines, etc.**, as, *Bow-wow*, *Ding-dong*, *Bang*, *Rub-a-dub*.

When we wish to imitate noises or sounds made by animals, machines, etc., in writing, we spell out the words as nearly as we can, just as we write *ding-dong* to represent the sound of the bell or *tick-tock* to indicate the ticking of a clock.

Note that a number of our verbs and nouns have been formed from imitating the sound which these nouns or verbs describe or express, as for instance, *crash*, *roar*, *buzz*, *hush*, *groan*, *bang*, *puff*, etc.

Exercise 1

Mark the interjections in the following sentences. Which express surprise? Which joy? Which sorrow? Which disgust?

1. Alas! We shall never meet again.
2. Bravo! You have done well.
3. Pshaw! Is that the best you can do?
4. Ship ahoy! All hands on deck.
5. Hello! When did you come?
6. Hurrah! We have won the victory.
7. Alas, alack! Those days will never come again.
8. Hist! You must be as still as mice.

Exercise 2

Write sentences using an interjection to express: 1. Joy. 2. Surprise. 3. Pain. 4. Sorrow. 5. Disgust. 6. To ask a question. 7. To call attention. 8. To silence. 9. To direct. 10. To imitate the sound made by an animal. 11. By a machine.

EXCLAMATORY WORDS

390. Interjections express only emotion or feeling. They do not express ideas. However, we have a number of words which are used somewhat as interjections are used, which we may class as exclamatory words, but they express more than interjections, for they express ideas as well as emotions; but, like interjections, they are used independently and have no part in the construction of the sentence.

391. Many ordinary words and phrases are used in this way as exclamations. When they are so used they have no place in the construction of the sentence; that is, they do not depend upon the sentence in which they are used, in any way. A noun used in this way is not used as the subject or the object, but simply as an exclamation.

For example; the noun *nonsense* may be used as an interjection, as in the sentence; *Nonsense! I do not believe a word of it.* In this sentence, *nonsense* is a noun used as an interjection and plays no part in the sentence, either as subject or object, but is an independent construction. There are a number of words used in this way:

1. Nouns and pronouns, as *fire*, *mercy*, *shame*, *nonsense*, *the idea*, *what*.

2. Verbs like, *help*, *look*, *see*, *listen*, *hark*, *behold*, *begone*.

3. Adjectives like, *good*, *well*, *brave*, *welcome*, *strange*.

4. Adverbs like, *out*, *indeed*, *how*, *why*, *back*, *forward*.

5. Prepositions like, *on*, *up*, *down*.

6. Phrases like, *Oh dear*, *dear me*, *good bye*.

Words and phrases such as these, used as exclamations, are not true interjections, for they express a little more than feeling. They express an idea which, in our haste, we do not completely express. The other words necessary to the expression of the idea are omitted because of the stress of emotion. For example:

Silence! I will hear no more.

In this sentence it is understood that we mean, *Let us have silence, I will hear no more*. But in the stress of our emotion, we have omitted the words, *Let us have*.

If we say, *Good! that will do splendidly*, you know that we mean, *That is good*, we have simply omitted *That is*, which is necessary to complete the sentence. Sometimes when we are greatly excited we abandon our sentence construction altogether and use only the most important words. For example:

A sail! a sail!

This is not a sentence, for it does not contain a verb, yet we know that what was meant was, *I see a sail, I see a sail*.

Exercise 3

Write sentences using the words given in the foregoing list as exclamatory words, and add as many more to the list as you can think of.

YES AND NO

392. The words *yes* and *no*, which we use in reply to questions were originally adverbs, but we no longer use them as adverbs. We no longer combine them with other words as modifying or limiting words, but use them independently. They are in themselves complete answers. Thus, if you ask me the question, *Will you come?* I may say *Yes*, meaning, *I will come*; or, *No*, meaning, *I will not come*.

The responsives *yes* and *no* thus stand for whole sentences, so they are really independent words. We may use them in connection with other sentences. For example; I may say, *Yes, I will come*, or *No, I will not come*. Used in this way, they still retain an independent construction in the sentence. We call them responsives because they are used in response to questions.

OTHER INDEPENDENT EXPRESSIONS

393. Other words may be used in an independent construction in sentences, without depending upon the sentence in which they are used or without having the sentences depend upon them, such as:

1. **A word used in address.** For example:

Mr. President, I move that a committee be now appointed.
Fellow Workers, I rise to address you.

In these sentences, *Mr. President* and *Fellow Workers* are nouns used independently; that is, they are neither the subject of the sentence nor used as object or predicate complement. They are independent of all other words in the sentence.

The most common use of words used independently in direct address occurs with imperative sentences. For example:

Comrades, rouse yourselves.
Men, strike for freedom.

2. **Exclamatory expressions.** These are nouns used in the manner in which we have already discussed, as in the sentence:

Nonsense! I do not believe a word of it.
Alas! poor *Yorick*! I knew him well.

3. **Words and phrases used parenthetically**, as for example:

By the way, I met a friend of yours today.
We cannot, *however*, join you at once.
He called, *it seems*, while we were gone.

In these sentences such words as, *however*, and such phrases as, *by the way*, and, *it seems*, are used independently,—in parenthesis, as it were; that is, they are just thrown into the sentences in such a way that they do not modify or depend upon any other word in the sentence. When we analyze our sentences, these independent words are not considered as elements of the sentences in which they are used. It is sufficient to say that they are independent words.

4. **Conjunctions used as introductory words.** We have noted the use of conjunctions like the co-ordinates *and*, *but*, etc., and the subordinates *because*, *in order that*, *so*, *for*, *wherefore*, *how*, *whether*, etc., which are used to introduce sentences and connect them in thought with sentences and paragraphs which have gone before.

INTRODUCTORY WORDS

394. We have a number of words which we use to introduce our sentences. They are such words as, *so*, *well* and *why*. These are ordinarily adverbs, but when they are used merely to introduce a sentence they retain little of their adverbial force. For example:

So, that is your only excuse.
Well, I cannot understand why you should accept it.
Why, that is no reason at all.

In these sentences, *so*, *well* and *why* do not modify any of the words in the sentences, but are used merely to introduce the sentences. They serve in a measure to connect them with something which has gone before.

395. The adverb *there* is also used as an introductory word. When it is used in this manner, it loses its adverbial force. *There*, as ordinarily used, is an adverb of place, but it is often used to introduce a sentence. For example: *There is some mistake about it.* In this sentence *there* is not used

as an adverb, but it is used simply as an introductory word. It is used to introduce a sentence in which the verb comes before the real subject. *Mistake* is the real subject of the verb is, and *there* is used simply as the introductory word.

396. The indefinite pronoun *it* is also used as an introductory word, to introduce a sentence in much the same manner as *there*. The real subject of the verb occurs later in the sentence. For example:

It is best to know the truth.

This could be written, *To know the truth is best*, and the entire meaning of the sentence would be conveyed.

397. Adverbs of mode. You remember in our study of adverbs, we had certain adverbs which were called adverbs of mode. These are used to modify the entire sentence. They express the feeling in which the entire sentence is uttered. Adverbs of mode may be regarded also as independent words. They are such words as, *indeed*, *surely*, *certainly*, *perhaps*, etc. For example:

Indeed, I cannot tell you now.
Surely, I will comply with your request.
Perhaps it may be true.
I *certainly* hope to do so before long.

Exercise 4

Note in the following sentences the words which are pure interjections, and those which are other parts of speech used as exclamatory words. Mark those which are used in direct address, those which are used parenthetically, and those which are used as mere introductory words.

1. Oh, it seems impossible to believe it.
2. Surely, you will accept my word.
3. Nonsense, there is not the least truth in the story.
4. It will be impossible for us to join.
5. Therefore we urge you to join in this campaign.
6. There is only one solution to the problem.
7. It is difficult to discover the true facts.
8. Well, I have done my best to persuade you.
9. Mr. Chairman, I rise to a point of order.
10. Comrades, come and stand for your rights.
11. Yes, I have studied that philosophy.
12. Enough! we have been enslaved too long.
13. Hark! we hear the tramp of the army of labor.
14. Alas! that any should refuse to join in this battle.
15. You have not, it seems, understood the issue.
16. Indeed, solidarity is our only hope.
17. Br-r-r-r-r-r-r, thus whirl the machines that grind our children's lives.
18. Hush! Over the crash of the cannon sounds the wail of Europe's women and children.

EXPLANATORY WORDS

398. We sometimes use words which do not belong in the construction of a sentence to explain other words in the sentence. For example:

We, *the undersigned*, subscribe as follows:
Helen Keller, *the most wonderful woman of this age*, champions the cause of the working class.

In the first sentence, the words, *the undersigned*, are added to the pronoun *we* to explain who *we* means. In the second sentence, the words, *the most wonderful woman of this age*, are added to explain who Helen Keller is. Words added to other words in this way are called explanatory words. They are placed in apposition to the noun which they explain. Apposition means *by the side of*, or *in position near*. You remember that in clauses we found that a clause may be placed in apposition with a noun to explain the meaning of that noun. For example:

There is an old saying, *in union there is strength*.

These words in apposition may themselves be modified or limited by other words or phrases or clauses. For example:

Helen Keller, the most wonderful woman of this age, champions the cause of the working class.

In this sentence, *woman* is the noun placed in apposition to the particular name, Helen Keller, and the noun *woman* is modified by the adjectives *the*, and *wonderful*, and by the phrase *of this age*.

Sometimes a second explanatory word is placed in apposition to the first one. This is quite often the case in legal documents or resolutions, where the language is quite formal. For example:

We, the undersigned, *members of Local No. 38*, do hereby move, etc.
I, John Smith, *Notary Public*, in and for the county of Clay, etc.

These words, *undersigned* and *members*, are both placed in apposition to the pronoun *We*, explaining to whom that pronoun refers.

Exercise 5

In the following sentences note the explanatory words and their modifiers:

1. Wendell Phillips, the great abolitionist, was a man of genius.
2. Buckle, the historian, writes from the view point of the materialistic conception of history.
3. Giovannitti, the poet, wrote "Arrows in the Gale."
4. Helen Keller, champion of the working class, wrote the introduction to this book.
5. We, the workers of the world, will some day claim our own.
6. He was found guilty of treason, a crime punishable by death.
7. Ferrer, the martyr of the twentieth century, was put to death by the Spanish government.
8. Jaures, the great French socialist, was the first martyr to peace.
9. But ye, Plebs, Populace, People, Rabble, Mob, Proletariat, live and abide forever.
10. Ye are eternal, even as your father, labor, is eternal.
11. This document, the Constitution of the United States, hinders the progress of the people.
12. The memory of Guttenberg, the inventor of the printing press, should be reverenced by every class-conscious worker.
13. Wallace, the scientist and author, was co-discoverer with Darwin of the theory of evolution.

14. Karl Marx, the thinker, applied this theory to social forces.
15. Do you understand the three basic principles of Socialism—the class struggle, economic determinism and surplus value?

Exercise 6

Read the following list of words and note the ideas which they suggest to you, then make sentences containing these words, *modified by a word or group of words in apposition*, which explain more fully these words.

Law, martyr, society, education, inventor, commander, freedom, Eugene V. Debs, Karl Marx, Kaiser Wilhelm, The Balkan, Lawrence, Colorado, Calumet.

ABSOLUTE CONSTRUCTION

399. We have found that every word in a sentence bears some relation to every other word, except these words which we have been studying, which we use independently. These explanatory words which we have just been studying are not used independently, but do in a sense modify the noun with which they are placed in apposition. Sometimes we place a noun or a pronoun and its modifiers alongside the whole sentence and it does not really modify any part of the sentence, but modifies the whole sentence in a way, for it expresses an attendant thought or an accompanying circumstance. For example:

> The workers being unorganized, the strike was easily defeated.
> The strikers having won, work was resumed on their terms.

The workers being unorganised and *the strikers having won* are not clauses for they do not contain a verb. *Being unorganized* and *having won* are participles. Neither do they modify any word in the sentence. They are not placed in apposition with any other word. While they do express a thought in connection with the sentence, in construction they seem to be cut loose from the rest of the sentence; that is, they are not closely connected with the sentence, hence they are called absolute constructions. *Ab* means from, and *solute*, loose; so this means, literally, loose from the rest of the sentence.

We speak of these as absolute constructions, instead of independent, because the thought expressed is connected with the main thought of the sentence and is really a part of it. Notice that the noun used in the absolute construction is not the *subject* of the sentence.

Take the sentence, *The workers being unorganized, the strike was easily defeated*, the noun *strike* is the subject of the sentence, and the noun *workers* is used in the absolute construction with the participle, *being unorganized*.

These absolute constructions can ordinarily be rewritten into adverb clauses. For example, this sentence might read: *The strike was easily defeated because the workers were unorganized.* Do not make the mistake of rewriting your sentences and using the noun in the absolute construction as the subject of the sentence. For example:

> The workers, being unorganized, were easily defeated.

This is not the meaning of this sentence. The meaning of the sentence is that the *strike* was easily defeated *because* the workers were unorganized. But the adverb clause, *because the workers were unorganized*, instead of being written as an adverb clause, has been written in the absolute construction, *the workers being unorganized*.

While it is nearly always possible to change these absolute constructions into adverb clauses the sentences are sometimes weakened by the change. These absolute constructions often enable us to make a statement in a stronger manner than we could make it with a clause or in any other way.

Exercise 7

In the following sentences, note the groups of words which are used in absolute construction. Rewrite these sentences and if possible change these words used in absolute construction into equivalent adverb phrases or clauses. Note how some of the sentences are weakened when you make this change.

1. *Nationalism having been taught to generation after generation*, the workers obeyed the call of the master class to slaughter their fellow workers.
2. *The hour having arrived*, Ferrer was blindfolded and led forth to die.
3. *The mass being without education*, capitalism gains an easy victory.
4. *The class struggle being a fact*, why should we hesitate to join our class?
5. *These facts being true*, such a conclusion is inevitable.
6. *Darwin having stated the theory of evolution*, Marx applied its principles to social science.
7. *Chattel slavery having been destroyed*, wage-slavery became the corner stone of capitalism.
8. *The price having been paid*, we claim our own.
9. *The battle ended*, the army left the trenches.

Exercise 8

Mark the interjections in the following quotations. Note the independent constructions. Mark the words used as explanatory words in apposition.

> In the mind's eye, I see a wonderful building, something like the Coliseum of ancient Rome. The galleries are black with people; tier upon tier rise like waves the multitude of spectators who have come to see a great contest. A great contest, indeed! A contest in which all the world and all the centuries are interested. It is the contest—the fight to death—between Truth and Error.
>
> The door opens, and a slight, small, shy and insignificant looking thing steps into the arena. It is Truth. The vast audience bursts into hilarious and derisive laughter. What! Is this Truth? This shuddering thing in tattered clothes, and almost naked? And the house shakes again with mocking and hisses.
>
> The door opens again, and Error enters—clad in cloth of gold, imposing in appearance, tall of stature, glittering with gems, sleek and huge and ponderous, causing the building to tremble with the thud of its steps. The audience is for a moment dazzled into silence, then it breaks into applause, long and deafening. "Welcome!" "Welcome!" is the greeting from the multitude. "Welcome!" shout ten thousand throats.
>
> The two contestants face each other. Error, in full armor—backed by the sympathies of the audience, greeted by the clamorous cheering of the spectators; and Truth, scorned, scoffed at, and hated. "The issue is a foregone conclusion," murmurs the vast audience. "Error will trample Truth under its feet."
>
> The battle begins. The two clinch, separate, and clinch again. Truth holds its own. The spectators are alarmed. Anxiety appears in their faces. Their voices grow faint. Is it possible? Look! See! There! Error recedes! It fears the gaze of Truth! It shuns its beauteous eyes! Hear it shriek and scream as it feels Truth's squeeze upon its wrists. Error is trying to break away from Truth's grip. It is making for the door. It is gone!

The spectators are mute. Every tongue is smitten with the palsy. The people bite their lips until they bleed. They cannot explain what they have seen. "Oh! who would have believed it?" "Is it possible?"—they exclaim. But they cannot doubt what their eyes have seen—that puny and insignificant looking thing called Truth has put ancient and entrenched Error, backed by the throne, the altar, the army, the press, the people and the gods—to rout.

The pursuit of truth! Is it not worth living for? To seek the truth, to love the truth, to live the truth? Can any religion offer more? —*Mangasarian.*

SPELLING

LESSON 23

Many words contain letters for which there are no corresponding sounds in the spoken words. Thus, in the spoken word *though* there are only two sounds, the *th* and the *o*; *u* and *g* and *h* are silent. There are a great many words in the English language which contain these silent letters. There has been a movement inaugurated for the purpose of simplifying the spelling of these words, omitting these silent letters. Some writers have adopted this method of simplified spelling, and so in some magazines and books which you read you will find these silent letters dropped; for example, you will find *though* spelled *tho*, *through* spelled *thru*.

This method of simplified spelling has not been universally adopted and we have not followed it in these lessons because we feared that it would be confusing. Probably in most of your reading you will find the old method of spelling followed and all of these silent letters included. No doubt, as time goes on, we shall adopt this simplified method of spelling and drop all of these silent and useless letters.

In our spelling lesson for this week we have a number of words containing silent letters.

MONDAY

In a number of words you will find *ea* pronounced as short *e*. The board of simplified spelling has suggested that we drop the *a*, which is a silent letter, from these words. If we adopted their suggestion, words like *head* would be spelled *hed*. Note the spelling of the following words in which *ea* is pronounced as short *e* and the *a* is silent.

Spread, stead, threat, meant, pleasant, stealth.

TUESDAY

We have a number of words ending in *ough* in which the *gh* is silent.

1. In some of these words the *ou* is pronounced like *ow*. We have already changed the spelling of a few of these words, for example, we no longer use *plough*, but write it *plow*.

2. In other words ending with *ough* the *ugh* is silent and the words end with a long *o* sound, as in *though*. Many writers have dropped the silent letters ugh and spell this simply *tho*.

3. A few other words ending with *ough* end with a *u* sound and those who adopt the simplified spelling have dropped the *ough* and used simply *u*, as in *through*; many writers spell it simply *thru*. Observe the spelling of the following words and mark the silent letters:

Bough, through, thorough, furlough, borough, though.

WEDNESDAY

We have a number of words ending in *mn* in which the *n* is silent. Note the spelling of the following words:

Autumn, solemn, column, kiln, hymn, condemn.

THURSDAY

We have a number of words containing a silent *b*. Notice the spelling of the following words:

Doubt, debt, dumb, limb, thumb, lamb.

FRIDAY

A number of words end with silent *ue* after *g*. Some writers omit the ue and probably after a while we will drop this silent *ue*, but you will find it used now in most of your reading. These are such words as:

Catalogue, demagogue, decalogue, tongue, league, harangue.

SATURDAY

We have a number of words ending with *gh* in which the *gh* has the sound of *f*, as in the following words:

Trough, rough, enough, laugh, tough, cough.

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 24

Dear Comrade:

We have finished our study of the different parts of speech and are going to enter upon the work of sentence building. In the next few lessons we will gather up all that we have been studying in these lessons so far. This is a good time to give this work a thorough review. Perhaps there have been a number of things in the lessons which you have not thoroughly understood, or perhaps there have been some rules for which you have not seen the reason. Now as we begin to construct our sentences, all of this will fit into its place. We shall find the reason for many of the things which may not have seemed thoroughly clear to us.

There *is* a science in language as in everything else, and language, after all, is governed by the will of the people. This has seemed so self-evident to those who make a special study of the language and its development that they have given this power a special name. They speak of the "Genius of the Language" as though there was some spirit guiding and directing the developing power of language.

There is a spirit guiding and directing the developing power of language. That spirit is the creative genius of the people. It is the same spirit that would guide and direct all phases of life into full and free expression, if it were permitted to act. There being no private profit connected with the control of the language, the creative genius of the people has had fuller sway.

The educator sitting in his study cannot make arbitrary rules to change or conserve the use of words. The people themselves are the final arbiter in language. It is the current usage among the masses which puts the final stamp upon any word. Think what this same creative genius might do if it were set free in social life, in industrial life. It would work out those principles which were best fitted to the advance of the people themselves. But those who would profit by the enslavement of the people have put stumbling blocks,—laws, conventions, morals, customs,—in the way of the people.

Their creative genius does not have full sway or free sweep, but let us rejoice that in language, at least, we are free. And let us, as we realize the power of the people manifest in this phase of life, determine that the same power shall be set free to work out its will in all life. Some day the revolution will come. The people will be free to rule themselves, to express their will, not in the realms of words alone, but in their social and economic life; and as we become free within, dare to think for ourselves and to demand our own, we each become a torch of the revolution, a center of rebellion—one of those who make straight the path for the future.

Yours for the Revolution,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

SENTENCE BUILDING

400. Every expression of a complete thought is a sentence. A sentence is the unit in language. Words are the material out of which we build our sentences, so we have been studying the various parts of speech that are used in sentence building. Now we are ready to use these parts of speech in the

building of sentences. We have found that there are eight parts of speech, though the interjection, which is termed the eighth part of speech, is not in reality a part of the sentence; but is a complete, independent construction. So in your sentences all of the many hundreds of words which we use can be grouped into seven divisions; *nouns*, *pronouns*, *adjectives*, *verbs*, *adverbs*, *prepositions* and *conjunctions*.

401. You remember in our first lesson we found that there were just three kinds of sentences. The *assertive*, the *interrogative* and the *imperative*; or in other words, sentences which state a *fact*, ask a *question* or give a *command*. We also found that these three kinds of sentences could all be expressed in *exclamatory* form.

THREE KINDS OF SENTENCES

Assertive. Makes a statement.
Interrogative. Asks a question.
Imperative. Gives a command.

Assertive sentence; *I remember the day.*
Interrogative sentence; *Do you not remember the day?*
Imperative sentence; *Remember the day.*

In Exclamatory Form

Assertive; *Nonsense! I remember the day.*
Interrogative; *What! Do you not remember the day?*
Imperative; *Oh come! Remember the day.*

ANALYSIS—SIMPLE SENTENCES

402. Now that we have finished the study of the various parts of speech, we are ready for sentence building and for sentence analysis. Sentence analysis is the breaking up of the sentence into its different parts in order to find out how and why it is thus put together. To analyze anything is to break it up or separate it into its different parts. We speak of analyzing a sentence when we pick out the subject and the predicate and their modifiers, because we thus unloosen them or separate them from one another.

These parts of the sentence are called the elements of the sentence. The elements of a sentence consist of the words, phrases and clauses used in forming the sentence.

403. Let us begin from the simplest beginning and build up our sentences, using the various parts of speech as we have studied them. Let us take the simplest form of sentence which we can consider. For example:

Men work.

There are only three parts of speech which can be used to make a simple sentence in this manner, and these are, either the noun and the verb, or the pronoun and the verb. We might say instead of *Men work*, *They work*, and have a complete sentence.

In the sentence *Men work*, *men* is the subject and *work* is the predicate. The subject and the predicate are the two principal elements in a sentence. No sentence can be formed without these two parts and these two parts can express a thought without the help of other elements. Now we may begin to enlarge the subject by adding modifiers.

You remember we have found that a noun may be modified by an adjective. So we add the adjective *busy*, and we have:

Busy men work.

Our simple subject is still the noun *men*, but the complete subject is the noun with its modifier, *busy men*. We may add other adjectives and say:

The busy, industrious men with families work.

Here we have our simple subject *men* modified by the adjectives, *the*, *busy* and *industrious*, and also by the adjective phrase, *with families*. So the complete subject of the sentence now is, *the busy, industrious men with families*.

Our predicate is still the single verb *work*. Let us now enlarge the predicate. We have found that adverbs are used to modify verbs, and so we may say:

The busy, industrious men with families work hard.
The busy, industrious men with families work hard in the factory.

Our simple predicate, *work* is now enlarged. It is modified by the adverb, *hard* and the adverb phrase, *in the factory*. So our complete predicate is now, *work hard in the factory*.

404. These sentences with the simple subject and the simple predicate and their modifying words and phrases form simple sentences.

A simple sentence is one which expresses a single statement, question or command.

405. A simple sentence, therefore, will contain but one subject and one predicate. The subject may be a compound subject and the predicate may be a compound predicate, but still the sentence expresses a single thought. For example: *The boys sing.* This is a simple statement with a simple subject and a simple predicate. Then we may say: *The boys sing and play.* We still have a single statement, but a compound predicate, *sing and play*.

Now we may make a compound subject, and say, *The boys and girls sing and play*, but we have still a single statement, for both predicates are asserted of both subjects. So, *The boys and girls sing and play*, is a simple sentence.

If we say, *The boys sing and the girls play*, we have a compound sentence, composed of two simple sentences, *The boys sing*, *The girls play*.

If we say, *The boys sing while the girls play*, we have a complex sentence formed of the simple sentence, *The boys sing*, and the dependent clause, *while the girls play*.

406. Now let us sum up our definitions:

Every sentence must contain two parts, a subject and a predicate.

The subject of a sentence is that part about which something is said.

The predicate is that part which asserts something of the subject.

The simple subject of a sentence is a noun, or the word used in place of a noun, without modifiers.

The simple predicate is the verb or verb phrase without its modifiers.

The complete subject of a sentence is the simple subject with all of its modifiers.

The complete predicate of a sentence is the simple predicate with all of its modifiers.

A simple sentence is one which expresses a single statement, question or command.

A complex sentence is one containing an independent clause and one or more dependent clauses.

A compound sentence is one containing two or more independent clauses.

A clause is a part of a sentence containing a subject and a predicate.

Exercise 1

In the following sentences the simple subject and the simple predicate are printed in *italics*. Find all of the modifiers of the subject and all of the modifiers of the predicate, and draw a single line under the complete subject and two lines under the complete predicate.

1. Beautiful *pictures hang* on the wall.
2. Those elm *trees grow* rapidly every year.
3. A terrible *storm broke* unexpectedly at sea.
4. The clear, crystal *water runs* swiftly to the sea.
5. The beautiful *flowers fade* quickly in the heat.
6. The happy, boisterous *children play* at school every day.
7. The sturdy *oak* in the forest *stands* bravely through every storm.
8. Their arching *tops* almost *speak* to us.
9. A *cry* of joy *rings* through the land.
10. The *leaves* of the trees *flutter* in the wind.
11. Great *clouds* of smoke *float* in the air.

Exercise 2

Note carefully the following simple sentences. Each of these groups of two words will suggest ideas and pictures to you. Lengthen each sentence by adding modifiers to the simple subject and to the simple predicate so as to make a fuller and more definite statement. For example: *Ships sail.* This is a simple subject and simple predicate. We add adjectives and an adjective phrase and adverbs and an adverb phrase as modifiers and we have, as follows:

The stately *ships* in the bay *sail* proudly away to foreign shores.

Snow melts.
Winds blow.
House stands.
Boys run.
Soldiers fight.
Tides flow.
Children play.
Ships sail.
Guns boom.
Women endure.

ANOTHER ELEMENT

407. You will note that all of these verbs which we have used in these sentences have been complete verbs as *hang*, *grow*, *runs*, *fade*, etc. A complete verb, you will remember, is a verb that does not need an object or a complement. It is complete within itself. It may be modified by an adverb or an adverb phrase, but when you leave off these modifiers you still have complete sense.

In any of the sentences above you may cross out the adverb or the adverb phrase which modifies the verb and you will still have complete sentences. For example:

Great clouds of smoke float in the air.

Here, the adverb phrase, *in the air*, may be omitted and still we have complete sense, thus:

Great clouds of smoke float.

408. The incomplete verbs, however, require either an object or complement to complete their meaning.

Incomplete verbs are of two kinds; those that express *action* and those that express *state* or *condition*.

An incomplete verb that expresses action requires an object which is the receiver of the action expressed in the verb, so we have another element which enters into the simple sentence, when we use an incomplete verb. For example:

The busy man makes shoes.

In order to complete the sentence, we must use an object with the incomplete verb *makes*. To say, *The busy man makes*, is not enough. We must have an object which is the receiver of the action expressed in the verb, *makes*. Verbs of action often have two objects. One object names the *thing* that *receives* the action and the other names the *thing* indirectly *affected* by the action. For example:

The tailor made him a coat.

409. *Coat* is the *direct* object of the verb *made*. But we have another object in the pronoun *him*. We do not mean that the tailor made *him*, but that the tailor made him a *coat*. *Coat* is the direct object

and *him* is the indirect object. The indirect object is always placed before the direct object. The indirect object may be used as the object of the preposition *to* or *for*. As for example, this sentence might be rewritten to read, *The tailor made a coat for him*. In this sentence, *him* is not the indirect object of the verb, but is the object of the preposition *for*.

410. The direct object of the verb always answers the question *what?* As for example, the tailor made *what?—a coat*. The indirect object of the verb names the person or thing *to* or *for* which the act is done,—*the tailor made a coat for whom?*—for *him*.

The direct and indirect object become a part of the complete predicate of the sentence. There may be other modifiers also, as adverbs or adverb phrases, and all of these taken together form the complete predicate in the sentences where you have used an incomplete verb. As for example:

The tailor gladly made him a coat for the occasion.

The complete predicate is, *gladly made him a coat for the occasion*, formed of the verb *made*, the direct object, *coat*, the indirect object *him*, the adverb modifier, *gladly*, and the phrase modifier, *for the occasion*.

Exercise 3

In the following sentences, underscore the direct object with one line and the indirect object with two lines. The verb is in italics.

1. He *gave* her a book.
2. He *wrote* me a long letter.
3. Her father *bought* her a watch.
4. The nurse *gave* the patient his medicine.
5. The mother *gave* her daughter a present.
6. *Give* me time to think.
7. The clerk *sold* her a dress.
8. The teacher *read* the children a story.
9. The company *furnishes* the men food and shelter.
10. The man *showed* us his wounds.

Exercise 4

In the following sentences underscore the complete subject and the complete predicate. Notice especially the direct and the indirect objects of the incomplete verbs. The simple subjects and the direct objects are in italics.

1. A great many *miles* separate *us* from our friends.
2. The merry *shouts* of the children fill the *air* with music.
3. A gentle *breeze* brings us the *perfume* of the flowers.
4. A careless *druggist* gave the unfortunate man the wrong *medicine*.
5. His admiring *friends* gave him a beautiful *ring*.
6. *Soldiers* obey *orders* from their superiors.
7. This terrible *war* claims *thousands* of victims.
8. The *power* of hunger drives the *unemployed* to rebellion.

9. The *workers* of the world produce *enough* for all.
10. The retiring *secretary* showed us a *letter* from the president.
11. The old sea *captain* told them an interesting *story* of life at sea.
12. *Labor* produces all *wealth*.

COPULATIVE VERBS

411. We have another class of incomplete verbs which require a complement to complete their meaning. These are the copulative verbs. The number of copulative verbs is small. They are: all forms of the verb *be*; also, *like*, *appear*, *look*, *feel*, *sound*, *smell*, *become*, *seem*, etc. These verbs require a noun or an adjective or a phrase as a complement, to complete their meaning. They are really connective words serving to connect the noun or adjective or phrase used in the predicate with the noun which they modify. The noun or adjective or phrase used to complete the meaning of the copulative verb is called a predicate complement. For example:

The man is a hero.

Here we have a noun, *hero*, used as a predicate complement after the copulative verb, *is*, to describe the noun *man*.

The man is class-conscious.

In this sentence, we have an adjective, *class-conscious*, in the predicate to modify the subject, *man*. It is connected with the subject by the copulative verb *is*.

The man is in earnest.

Here we have a phrase, *in earnest*, used in the predicate to modify the noun *man*, and connected with the subject by the copulative verb *is*.

412. So in the predicate with the copulative verbs—incomplete verbs which express state or condition—we may use a noun or an adjective or a phrase. A noun used as the predicate complement may have modifiers. It may be modified by one or more adjectives or adjective phrases. These adjectives in turn may be modified by adverbs. The complete predicate, then, is the copulative verb with its predicate complement and all its modifiers. For example:

Grant was the most famous general of the Civil war.

In this sentence, *Grant* is the complete subject, *was the most famous general of the Civil war* is the complete predicate. *Was* is the copulative verb; *general* is the noun used as the predicate complement; *the* and *famous* are adjectives modifying *general*; *most* is an adverb modifying the adjective *famous*, and, *of the Civil war* is an adjective phrase modifying *general*, so our complete predicate is, *was the most famous general of the Civil war*.

When an adjective is used in the predicate complement it, too, may have modifiers and more than one adjective may be used. For example:

The man is very brave and loyal to his class.

Here we have two adjectives used in the predicate complement, *brave* and *loyal*. *Brave* is modified by the adverb *very*, and *loyal* is modified by the adverb phrase, *to his class*. The complete predicate is, *is very brave and loyal to his class*.

When we use a phrase as a predicate complement, it, too, may have modifiers and more than one phrase may be used. For example:

The man is in the fight and deeply in earnest.

In this sentence, two phrases are used in the predicate complement, *in the fight* and *in earnest*. The second phrase, *in earnest* is modified by the adverb *deeply*. The complete predicate is, *is in the fight and deeply in earnest*.

Exercise 5

Fill the blanks in the following sentences with a noun and its modifiers used as predicate complement. Name all of the parts of speech which you have used in the predicate complement as we have done in the sentences analyzed above:

The men are *loyal members of the Union*.
Slavery is.....
Liberty will be.....
War is.....
The machine is.....
The children were.....

Fill the blanks in the following sentences with one or more adjectives and their modifiers used in the predicate complement.

The work is *hard and destructive to the children*.
The history will be.....
Labor has been.....
Peace will be.....
Poverty is.....

Fill the blanks in the following sentences with a phrase used in the predicate complement.

His service was *for his class*.
Socialism is.....
The workers are.....
The message shall be.....
The government is.....
The opportunity is.....

VERB PHRASES

413. Note that in most of the sentences which we have used, we have used the simple form of the verb, the form that is used to express *past* and *present* time. In expressing other time forms we use verb phrases. Note the summary given in section 145, which gives the different time forms of the verb.

414. Sometimes in using the verb phrase you will find that other words may separate the words forming the phrase. When you analyze your sentence this will not confuse you. You will easily be able to pick out the verb phrase. For example:

I shall very soon find out the trouble.

Here the adverbs, *very* and *soon*, separate *find* from its auxiliary *shall*. The verb phrase is, *shall find*. The negative *not* very often separates the words forming a verb phrase. For example:

I will not go.

In this sentence, *will go* is the verb phrase.

When we use the auxiliary verb *do* to express emphasis, and also the negative *not*, *not* comes between the auxiliary verb *do*, and the principal verb. For example:

I do not obey, I think.

In this sentence, *do obey* is the verb phrase.

In interrogative sentences, the verb phrase is inverted and a part of the verb phrase is placed first and the subject after. For example:

Will you go with us?

You is the subject of this interrogative sentence and *will go* is the verb phrase; but in order to ask the question, the order is inverted and part of the verb phrase placed first. In using interrogative adverbs in asking a question, the same inverted order is used. For example:

When will this work be commenced?

In this sentence, *work* is the subject of the sentence and *will be commenced* is the verb phrase. If you should write this in assertive form, it would be:

This work will be commenced when?

By paying close attention we can easily distinguish the verb phrases even when they are used in the inverted form or when they are separated by other parts of speech.

LET US SUM UP

415. The elements of a sentence are the words, phrases or clauses of which it is composed.

A simple sentence is one which contains a single statement, question or command.

A simple sentence contains only words and phrases. It does not contain dependent clauses. The elements of a simple sentence are:

The complete subject	{	The simple subject—the noun, or the word used in place of the noun— and all its modifiers.

The complete predicate	{	The simple predicate—the verb, and all its modifiers.

Exercise 6

In the following sentences, the simple subjects and the simple predicates of the principal clauses are printed in italics. Locate all the modifiers of the subjects and predicates, and determine the part of speech of each word in the sentence.

Sentences Nos. 1, 5, 6, 14, 15, 16, 18, 30, 31, 32 and 37 are simple sentences.

Sentences Nos. 2, 4, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 22, 26, 28, 33, 34 and 36 are complex.

Sentences Nos. 3, 10, 12, 21, 23, 24, 25, 29 and 35 are compound.

No. 8 is incomplete, having neither subject nor predicate.

No. 9 is incomplete, there being no predicate in the principal clause.

No. 20 is a simple sentence, with a complex sentence in parenthesis.

No. 27 consists of two dependent clauses.

In the complex sentences, draw a line under the dependent clauses.

"Br—r—r—r—r—r—r—r—."

1. What *are* the *machines saying*, a hundred of them in one long room?
2. *They must be talking* to themselves, for I see no one else for them to talk to.
3. But yes, there *is* a boy's red *head* bending over one of them, and beyond *I see* a pale face fringed with brown curly locks.
4. There *are* only five *boys* in all, on the floor, half-hidden by the clattering machines, for one bright lad can manage twenty-five of them.
5. Each *machine makes* one cheap, stout sock in five minutes, without seam, complete from toe to ankle, cutting the thread at the end and beginning another of its own accord.
6. The *boys have* nothing to do but to clean and burnish and oil the steel rods and replace the spools of yarn.
7. But how rapidly and nervously *they do* it—the slower hands straining to accomplish as much as the fastest!
8. Working at high tension for ten hours a day in the close, greasy air and endless whirr——
9. *Boys* who ought to be out playing ball in the fields or taking a swim in the river this fine summer afternoon.
10. And in these good times, the *machines go* all night, and other *shifts* of boys *are kept* from their beds to watch them.
11. The young *girls* in the mending and finishing rooms downstairs *are* not so strong as the boys.
12. *They have* an unaccountable way of fainting and collapsing in the noise and smell, and then *they are* of no use for the rest of the day.
13. The kind *stockholders have had* to provide a room for collapsed girls and to employ a doctor, who finds it expedient not to understand this strange new disease.

14. Perhaps their *children will be* more stalwart in the next generation.
15. Yet this *factory is* one of the triumphs of our civilization.
16. With only twenty boys at a time at the machines in all the rooms, *it produces* five thousand dozen pairs of socks in twenty-four hours for the toilers of the land.
17. *It would take* an army of fifty thousand hand-knitters to do what these small boys perform. "Br—r—r—r—r—r—r—r—r—."
18. What *are* the *machines saying*?
19. *They are saying*, "We are hungry."
20. "*We have eaten* up the men and women. (There is no longer a market for men and women, they come too high)—
21. *We have eaten* up the men and women, and now *we are devouring* the boys and girls.
22. How good *they taste* as we suck the blood from their rounded cheeks and forms, and cast them aside sallow and thin and careworn, and then call for more.
23. Br—r—r—r—r—r—r—r! how good *they taste*; but *they give* us so few boys and girls to eat nowadays, although there are so many outside begging to come in—.
24. Only one *boy* to twenty of us, and *we are* nearly *famished*!
25. *We eat* those they give us and *those* outside *will starve*, and soon *we shall be left* almost alone in the world with the stockholders.
26. Br—r—r—r—r—r—r—r! What shall we do then for our food?" the *machines chatter* on.
27. "When we are piling up millions of socks a day for the toilers and then there are no toilers left to buy them and wear them.
28. Then perhaps we shall have to turn upon the kind stockholders and feast on them (how fat and tender and toothsome they will be!) until at last we alone remain, clattering and chattering in a desolate land," *growled the machines*.
29. While the *boys went* on anxiously, hurriedly rubbing and polishing, and the *girls* downstairs *went* on collapsing.
30. "Br—r—r—r—r—r—r—r!" *growled* the *machines*.
31. The *devil has* somehow *got* into the machines.
32. *They came* like the good gnomes and fairies of old, to be our willing slaves and make our lives easy.
33. Now that, by their help, one man can do the work of a score, why *have we* not plenty for all, with only enough work to keep us happy?
34. *Who could have foreseen* all the ills of our factory workers and of those who are displaced and cast aside by factory work?
35. The good wood and iron *elves came* to bless us all, but *some* of us *have succeeded* in bewitching them to our own ends and turning them against the rest of mankind.
36. *We must break* the sinister charm and *win* over the docile, tireless machines until they refuse to shut out a single human being from their benefits.
37. *We must cast* the devil out of the machines. —*Ernest Crosby.*

SPELLING

LESSON 24

Among the common suffixes in English are the suffixes *or* and *er*. These suffixes mean *one who* or *that which*. For example, *builder*, one who builds; *actor*, one who acts; *heater*, that which heats. But we are confused many times to know whether to add the suffix *or* or *er* to form these derivative words. There is no exact rule which can be given, but the following rule usually applies with but few exceptions:

To the shorter and commoner words in the language add the suffix *er*. For example, *writer*, *boxer*, *singer*, etc. To the longer and less common words, usually those derived from the Latin or the Greek, add the suffix *or*. For example, *legislator*, *conqueror*, etc.

There are a number of words in the English like *honor*, in which the last syllable used to be spelled *our* instead of *or*. You will probably run across such words as these in your reading. This mode of spelling these words, however, is being rapidly dropped and the ending *or* is being used instead of *our*. There are also a number of words in our language like *center*, which used to be spelled with *re* instead of *er*. The *re* ending is not used any more, although you may run across it occasionally in your reading. The proper ending for all such words as these is *er*. There are a few words, however, like *timbre* (a musical term) and *acre*, which are still properly spelled with the *re* ending.

The spelling lessons for Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday and Thursday, contain words from which derivatives can be formed by adding *er* or *or*. Look these words up in the dictionary and be sure that you have added the proper suffix. The list for Friday consists of words which you may find in your reading spelled with the *our* ending. The list for Saturday contains words which you may find spelled with the *re* ending instead of the *er*.

Monday

Create
Produce
Profess
Debate
Govern

Tuesday

Edit
Consume
Consign
Legislate
Design

Wednesday

Solicit
Pay
Success

Observe
Invent

Thursday

Vote
Debt
Organize
Sail
Strike

Friday

Labor
Neighbor
Rumor
Valor
Candor

Saturday

Theater
Scepter
Fiber
Somber
Meager

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 25

Dear Comrade:

In logic, we have two ways of reasoning, from the general to the particular and from the particular to the general. In other words, we may take a certain number of facts and reason to a conclusion; or we may go the other way about and start with our conclusion and reason back to the facts which produce the conclusion. Scientists use the former method. They gather together all the facts which they possibly can and from these facts they reach their conclusions.

This was what Karl Marx did for the social problems of his day. He analyzed these problems. He gathered together all of the facts which he could obtain concerning conditions of his day and from these facts he reached certain conclusions. He foretold the rise of capitalism and outlined present day conditions so perfectly that had he lived long ago among superstitious people, they would probably have called him a prophet.

This mastery of analysis, of marshaling our facts and from them reaching conclusions, is a wonderful power to possess, and this is exactly what we are doing in our English work. We are analyzing our sentences, finding the elements of which they are composed, and then building the sentence; and since neither the thought nor the sentence can be really studied except in connection with each other, this analysis of sentences gives us an understanding of the thought. The effort to analyze a difficult sentence leads to a fuller appreciation of the meaning of the sentence. This, in turn, cultivates accuracy in our own thought and in its expression.

So do not slight the analysis of the sentence or this work in sentence building. You will find it will help you to a quicker understanding of that which you are reading and it will also give you a logical habit of mind. You will be able to think more accurately and express yourself more clearly. After a little practice in analysis you will find that in your reading you will be able to grasp the author's meaning quickly. You will see at a glance, without thinking about it consciously, the subject and the predicate and the modifiers in the sentence. Then you will not confuse the meaning. You will not have to go back and reread the passage to find out just what the author was talking about; and when you come to write and speak yourself, you will have formed the habit of logical expression. In this way you will be able to put your thought in such a manner that your listener can make no mistake as to just what you mean.

Now, no habit comes without practice. You cannot do a thing unconsciously until you have done it consciously a great many times. So practice this analysis of sentences over and over. It really is an interesting game in itself, and the results which it will bring to you are tremendously worth while.

Nothing is too much trouble which will give us the power to think for ourselves and to put that thought into words.

Yours for Freedom,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

THE SUBJECT OF A SIMPLE SENTENCE

416. We have found that the two parts of a simple sentence are the complete subject and the complete predicate. The noun is most often used as the subject of a sentence. It may have a number of modifiers, but when we strip away these modifiers we can usually find a noun which is the subject of the sentence. Occasionally the subject is a pronoun or a participle or adjective used as a noun but most frequently the subject is a noun. As for example:

A wild piercing *cry* rang out.
Hopeless, helpless *children* work in the cotton mills.
The golden *age* of peace will come.
Little child *lives* are coined into money.
Defenseless, helpless *children* suffer most under capitalism.
Every neglected *child* smites my conscience in the name of humanity.
The thrilling, far-sounding *battle-cry* shall resound.

Note that in all of these sentences the word in italics is a noun, which is the simple subject of the sentence. All of the other words which comprise the complete subject are the modifiers of this noun, or modifiers of its modifiers.

But in our study of words, we have found that there are a number of other words which can be used in place of a noun and these may all be used as the subject of a sentence.

417. A pronoun may be used as the subject of a sentence, for the pronoun is a word used in place of the noun; and a pronoun used as the subject of a sentence may have modifiers just as a noun. It may be modified by adjectives or adjective phrases, as for example:

We are confident of success.
He, worried and out of employment, committed suicide.
She, heartsick and weary, waited for an answer.
She, with her happy, watchful ways, blessed the household.
They, victorious and triumphant, entered the city.
How can *I*, without money or friends, succeed?

"Out of the night that covers me,
Black as the pit from pole to pole,
I thank whatever Gods there be
For my unconquerable soul."

In all of these sentences the pronoun is the simple subject of the sentence, and the pronoun with all of its modifiers is the complete subject of the sentence.

418. The participle may be used as a noun, the subject of the sentence. For example:

Traveling is pleasant.

Here the present participle *traveling* is used as a noun, subject of the sentence.

Participle phrases may also be used as nouns, as for example:

Being prepared will not save us from war.
His *having signed* the note was the cause of the trouble.

In these sentences, *being prepared* and *having signed* are participle phrases used as nouns, the subjects of the verbs *will save* and *was*. Note the use of the participle used as the subject in the following sentences:

Painting is an art.
Making shoes is his work.
Being discovered seems to be the real crime.
His *having joined* his comrades was a brave act.
Your *remaining* here will be dangerous.

Note that when the participle is used as a noun, the possessive form of the pronoun is always used with it, as in the sentence above:

Your remaining here will be dangerous.

Notice that in some of these sentences the participle has an object; as, making *shoes*, his having joined his *comrades*. The participle still retains some of its verb nature in that it may take an object. The entire phrases, *His having joined his comrades*, and, *Making shoes*, are the subjects of the sentences.

419. The infinitive may also be used as a noun, the subject of the sentence. Note in the following sentences the use of the infinitive as the subject of the sentence:

To err is human; *to forgive* is divine.
To be or not *to be* is the question.
To toil all day is wearisome.
To aim is one thing; *to hit* the mark is another.
To remain ignorant is to remain a slave.

420. An adjective can also be used as the subject. You remember in our study of adjectives we found that an adjective may be used as a noun, as for example:

The *strong* enslave the weak.

Here the adjective *strong* is used as a noun, subject of the sentence. Note in the following sentences, the use of the adjectives as subjects:

The *wise* instruct the ignorant.
The *dead* were left upon the battlefields.
The *rich* look down upon the poor.
The *mighty* of the earth have forced this war upon us.
The *poor* are enslaved by their ignorance.
The *wounded* were carried to the hospitals.

PLACE OF THE SUBJECT IN A SENTENCE

The subject usually comes first in the sentence. If it has any modifiers, they alone precede the subject, as for example:

A wonderful, inspiring *lecture* was given.

The weary *army* slept in the trenches.

But occasionally we find the subject after the verb.

421. By simple inversion.

We will often find this use in poetry or in poetic prose, as for example:

Never have *I* heard one word to the contrary.

In this sentence *I* is the subject of the sentence, *have heard* is the verb, and *never* is an adverb modifying the verb phrase, *have heard*. But in order to place emphasis upon the word *never*, which is the emphatic word in the sentence, *never* is placed first, and the verb phrase inverted so that the subject *I* comes in between the two words which form the verb phrase. The sentence expressed in its usual order would be:

I have never heard one word to the contrary.

You will note that this statement does not carry the same emphasis upon the word *never* as the inverted statement.

422. In interrogative sentences, the subject comes after the helping verb or after the interrogative used to introduce the sentence. As for example:

Have *you* heard the news?
When will *we* hear from you?
How have the *people* been managing?
What will the *children* do then?
Will the *students* come later?
Can the *work* be accomplished quickly?
Must our *youth* end so quickly?

423. The real subject comes after the verb when we use the introductory word *it*. As for example:

It will not be safe *to go*.

To go is really the subject of the sentence. *To go will not be safe.*

It is sometimes the real subject of a sentence, as in the sentence; *It is a wonderful story.*

Here *it* is the subject of the sentence and *a wonderful story* is the predicate complement. But in the sentence:

It is wonderful to hear him tell the story.

To hear him tell the story is the real subject of the sentence. The first sentence, *It is a wonderful story*, could not be rewritten, but the second sentence could be rewritten, as follows:

To hear him tell the story is wonderful.

424. The introductory word *there* reverses the order of the sentence, just as the introductory word *it*. The real subject is used later in the sentence. As for example:

There were a great many people present.

This could be rewritten, omitting the introductory word *there*. We could say:

A great many people were present.

The noun *people* is the subject of the sentence.

Exercise 1

In the following sentences, underscore the complete subject with one line, and the simple subject with two lines, and decide whether the simple subject is a noun, pronoun, participle, infinitive or an adjective used as a noun:

1. A great man is universal and elemental.
2. To love justice was his creed.
3. A more inspiring and noble declaration of faith was never born of human heart.
4. The reading of good books should begin in childhood.
5. Dreaming of great things will not bring us to the goal.
6. The weary seek for rest.
7. To believe in yourself is the first essential.
8. He, speaking and writing constantly for the cause, has given his life to the movement.
9. To remain ignorant is to remain a slave.
10. A foolish consistency is the hobgoblin of little minds.
11. A great soul has simply nothing to do with consistency.
12. To be great is to be misunderstood.
13. Traveling is a fool's paradise.
14. It is not enough to be sincere.
15. We, seeking the truth, have found our own.
16. There are thousands of comrades with us.

THE COMPLETE PREDICATE

425. Look first in the predicate for your verb. It will always be the principal part of your predicate. It may be a verb or a verb phrase, but the first thing in analyzing the complete predicate of the sentence is to find the verb. The verb or verb phrase without any of its modifiers constitutes the simple predicate. If the verb is a complete verb, its only modifiers will be adverbs or adverb phrases. For example:

A splendid statue of Lincoln stands yonder in the park.

In this sentence, *stands yonder in the park* is the complete predicate. *Stands* is a complete verb. It requires no object, but it is modified by the adverb *yonder* and by the adverb phrase *in the park*.

INCOMPLETE VERBS

426. If the verb in the predicate is an incomplete verb of action, then the object of the verb is also part of the predicate. The complete predicate containing an incomplete verb of action may contain five parts; a verb, a direct object, an indirect object, an adverb and an adverb phrase. As for example:

The tailor gladly made him a coat at that time.

In this sentence, the complete predicate is *gladly made him a coat at that time*. *Made* is the verb. It is an incomplete verb of action, and *coat* is its direct object. *Him* is the indirect object. *Made* is also modified by the adverb *gladly*, and the adverb phrase, *at that time*.

All of these are not always used, of course, in every predicate; but these are the elements which may occur in the predicate with an incomplete verb.

THE OBJECT OF THE VERB

427. Words used as objects of a verb are practically the same as those which may be used for its subject.

We may have a noun used as the object of the verb. For example:

Hail destroyed the *crops*.
The banks rob the *farmers*.
We must educate the *children*.
Labor produces all *wealth*.

In these sentences, *crops*, *farmers*, *children* and *wealth* are nouns used as the object of the verb.

A pronoun may also be used as the object of a verb. For example:

Will you not teach *me*?
Send *them* to her.
They have invited *us*.
The comrades will remember *him*.

In the above sentences, *me*, *them*, *us* and *him* are the objects of the verbs, *will teach*, *send*, *have invited* and *will remember*.

Remember that in pronouns we have a different form for the object form, as, *me*, *her*, *him*, *us* and *them*.

428. An infinitive may also be used as the object of a verb, thus:

I like *to study*.
He asked *to go*.
I want *to learn* all that I can.

In this last sentence, the infinitive, *to learn*, is the direct object of the verb *want*. The object of the infinitive, *to learn*, is *all that I can*. All of this taken together with the verb *want*, forms the complete predicate, *want to learn all that I can*.

429. The participle may also be used as the object of a verb, thus:

We heard the *thundering* of the cannon.
We enjoyed the *dancing*.
Do you hear the *singing* of the birds?

In these sentences, the participles *thundering*, *dancing*, and *singing* are the objects of the verbs *heard*, *enjoyed* and *do hear*.

430. An adjective used as a noun may also be used as the object of a verb, thus:

I saw the *rich* and the *poor* struggling together.
The struggle for existence crushes the *weak*.
Seek the *good* and the *true*.

In these sentences the adjectives *rich*, *poor*, *weak*, *good* and *true*, are used as nouns and are the objects of the verbs *saw*, *crushes* and *seek*.

VERBS OF STATE OR CONDITION

We have found that with the incomplete verbs of state or condition, or copulative verbs, the predicate complement may be either a noun, as, *The man is a hero*; or an adjective, as, *The man is class-conscious*; or a phrase, as, *The man is in earnest*.

The predicate complement may also be:

431. A pronoun; as,

Who is she?
That was he.
This is I.

In these sentences the subjects of the verbs are *she*, *that* and *this*, and the pronouns *who*, *he* and *I* are used as predicate complements.

432. Infinitives may also be used as the predicate complement, thus:

To remain ignorant is *to remain* a slave.

To remain ignorant, is the subject of the copulative verb *is*, and the infinitive, *to remain*, with its complement, *a slave*, is the predicate complement.

433. A participle used as a noun may also be used as the predicate complement, thus:

Society is the mingling of many elements.

Mingling, in this sentence is a participle of the verb *mingle*, but is used as a noun, the predicate complement of the verb *is*. *Society* is the subject of the verb.

Where the present participle is used to form a verb phrase, the participle is part of the verb phrase, thus:

We are mingling in society.

Here, *are mingling*, is the present progressive verb phrase, and the participle *mingling* is not used as a noun or adjective, but is part of the verb phrase *are mingling*.

If you will observe the different parts of speech carefully, you will not be easily confused as to whether the participle is a noun or a part of the verb phrase.

Exercise 2

In the following sentences the incomplete verbs, including infinitives and participles, are in italics. Mark the words, phrases or clauses which are used as objects or complements, to complete the meaning of these verbs.

> There *is* no such thing in America as an independent press, unless it *is* in the country towns.
>
> You *have* it and I *know* it. There *is* not one of you who *dares to write* his honest opinions. If you did, you *know* beforehand that it would never appear in print.
>
> I *am paid* $150.00 a week for *keeping* my honest opinions out of the paper with which I am connected. Others of you *are paid* similar salaries for similar things. Any one of you who *would be* so foolish as *to write* his honest opinions *would be* out on the streets looking for another job.
>
> The business of the New York journalist *is to destroy* the truth, to lie outright, to pervert, to villify, to fawn at the feet of Mammon, and *to sell* his race and his country for his daily bread.
>
> You *know* this and I *know* it. So what folly *is* this *to be toasting* an "Independent Press."
>
> We *are* the tools and vassals of rich men behind the scenes. We *are* the jumping-jacks; they *pull* the strings and we dance. Our talents, our possibilities and our lives *are* all the property of other men. We *are* intellectual prostitutes. —*John Swinton.*

MODIFIERS OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE

434. Remember that a simple sentence is one that contains a single statement, question or command. It is a clause, for it contains a subject and a predicate; but it contains only the one subject and the one predicate. A sentence containing two principal clauses, or a principal clause and a subordinate clause, would contain two complete statements, questions or commands, therefore it would not be a simple sentence, but compound or complex.

Remember, however, that the simple sentences may contain two or more subjects with the same predicate, or two or more predicates with the same subject, or both a compound subject and a compound predicate.

435. The modifiers in a simple sentence are always words or phrases. The modifiers of the subject are either adjectives or adjective phrases. The modifiers of the predicate are either adverbs or adverb phrases. If an adjective or an adverb clause is used as a modifier, then the sentence is no longer a simple sentence, but becomes a *complex* sentence, for it now contains a dependent clause.

ORDER OF ELEMENTS

436. The usual order of the principal elements in the sentence is the subject, the predicate and the object or complement, thus:

Subject	*Predicate*
Men	*work*

Subject	*Predicate*	*Object*
Men	*build*	*houses*

Subject	*Predicate*	*Complement*
Books	*are*	*helpful*

This is called the natural or logical order. Logical means according to sense or reason.

Adjectives usually stand before the nouns they modify, thus:

Good books are helpful.

Adverbs may be placed either before or after the verbs they modify, thus:

The men *then* came *quickly* to the rescue.

The adverb *then* precedes the verb *came*, which it modifies; and the adverb *quickly* is placed after the verb.

Adverbs which modify adjectives or other adverbs are placed before the words which they modify, thus:

The *more* industrious students learn *quite* rapidly.

In this sentence, the adverb *more* is placed before the adjective *industrious*, which it modifies; and the adverb *quite* is placed before the adverb *rapidly*, which it modifies.

Adjective and adverb phrases usually follow the words which they modify, thus:

The men *in the car* came quickly *to the rescue*.
The manager *of the mine* remained *with the men*.

In this last sentence, the adjective phrase, *of the mine*, is placed after the noun *manager*, which it modifies, and the adverb phrase, *with the men*, is placed after the verb *remained*, which it modifies.

437. These sentences illustrate the logical order in which the elements of the sentence usually come. But this logical order is not strictly adhered to. Many times, in order to place the emphasis upon certain words, we reverse this order and place the emphasized words first, as:

Without your help, we cannot win.

The logical order of this sentence is:

We cannot win without your help.

But we want to place the emphasis upon *your help*, so we change the order of the words and place the phrase, *without your help*, first.

438. This inversion of the order helps us to express our thought with more emphasis. Our language is so flexible that we can express the same thought in different ways by simply changing the order of the elements in the sentence. Notice in the following sentences, the inversion of the usual order, and see what difference this makes in the expression of the thought.

Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.
A more terrible scene you cannot imagine.
With the shrieking of shot and shell the battle raged.
Louder and louder thundered the tempest.
Silently and sadly the men returned to their homes.

To transpose these inverted sentences—that is to place the elements in their logical order, gives us an insight into the thought expressed in the sentence. It is worth a great deal to us to be able in our reading to see the live elements in the sentence at a glance, and in this way we can grasp at once the thought of the sentence. So you will find that this analyzing of the sentences is very helpful to us in our reading.

439. When we have learned to analyze a sentence quickly we will not be lost in the maze of words. A paragraph is often like a string of pearls. The author has a single thread of thought running through the different sentences which compose the paragraph and if we have trained ourselves well in sentence analysis, we will never lose this thread. It will be like a life line to which we cling while the breakers of thought and emotion roar about us.

Exercise 3

In the following poem, study carefully the inverted order of the sentences. Rewrite them, placing the elements in their logical order. As for example:

To the poor man you've been true from of old.

The elements of the sentence are inverted in this quotation. Rewritten in their logical order this would read:

You've been true to the poor man from of old.

You will note that this inversion is quite common in poetry.

HUNGER AND COLD

Sisters, two, all praise to you,
With your faces pinched and blue;
To the poor man you've been true,
From of old;
You can speak the keenest word,
You are sure of being heard,
From the point you're never stirred,

Hunger and Cold!

Let sleek statesmen temporize;
Palsied are their shifts and lies
When they meet your bloodshot eyes,
Grim and bold;
Policy you set at naught,
In their traps you'll not be caught,
You're too honest to be bought,
Hunger and Cold!

Let them guard both hall and bower;
Through the window you will glower,
Patient till your reckoning hour
Shall be tolled;
Cheeks are pale, but hands are red,
Guiltless blood may chance be shed,
But ye must and will be fed,
Hunger and Cold!

God has plans man must not spoil,
Some were made to starve and toil,
Some to share the wine and oil,
We are told;
Devil's theories are these,
Stifling hope and love and peace,
Framed your hideous lusts to please,
Hunger and Cold!

Scatter ashes on thy head,
Tears of burning sorrow shed,
Earth! and be by Pity led
To love's fold;
Ere they block the very door
With lean corpses of the poor,
And will hush for naught but gore,
Hunger and Cold!

—*Lowell.*

SPELLING

LESSON 25

You remember in our lesson in the study of consonants we found there were a number of consonants in English which had more than one sound; for example, *c*, *s*, *g*, *x*, etc.

A number of other consonants have sounds which are similar; that is, they are made with the organs of articulation in the same position, only one is a soft, and the other a hard sound; for example, *p* and *b*, *t* and *d*, *f* and *v*, etc. These sounds are called cognate sounds. Cognate means literally *of the same nature*, and so these sounds are of the same nature, only in one the obstruction of the vocal organs is more complete than in the other.

Our language contains a number of words in which there is a difference in the pronunciation of the final consonant when the word is used as a noun and as a verb. The final consonants in these words are the cognate sounds, *f*, *v*; *t*, *d*; *th* soft or *th* hard, *s* soft, or *s* hard. When the consonant sound is a soft sound, the word is a noun; and when the consonant sound is a hard sound the word is a verb. For example; *use* and *use*; *breath* and *breathe*; *life* and *live*, etc.

The spelling lessons for Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday contain words ending in cognate sounds, in which the words ending with a soft sound are nouns and the words ending in the hard sounds are verbs. Add others to this list as they occur to you.

We have a number of words in the English beginning with *ex*. In some of these words, the *ex* has the sound of *eks*, and in some of the words the *ex* has the sound of *egs*. It is not easy at times to know which sound to use.

In regard to the use of *ex*, follow this rule: When a word beginning with *ex* is followed by an accented syllable beginning with a vowel, the *ex* is pronounced *egs*; in all other words *ex* is pronounced *eks*; for example, in *executor*, the *ex* is followed by an accented syllable beginning with a vowel, therefore, *ex* is pronounced *egs*. In *execute*, the *ex* is followed by an unaccented syllable beginning with a vowel, and therefore *ex* is pronounced *eks*. In *explain*, *ex* is followed by a syllable beginning with a consonant, and it is therefore pronounced *eks*.

Note that in words like *exhibit*, *exhort*, etc., the *ex* is followed by a vowel sound, the *h* being silent, and it is therefore, pronounced *egs*, for it is followed by an accented syllable beginning with a vowel sound.

The spelling list for Thursday, Friday and Saturday contains words beginning with *ex*. Watch carefully the pronunciation.

Monday

Excuse	Excuse
Abuse	Abuse
Grease	Grease
Sacrifice	Sacrifice

Device	Devise

Tuesday

Intent	Intend
Advice	Advise
Relief	Relieve
Cloth	Clothe
Reproof	Reprove

Wednesday

Ascent	Ascend
Strife	Strive
Mouth	Mouth
Grief	Grieve
Bath	Bathe

Thursday

Exile
Except
Exhibit
Expert
Exempt

Friday

Example
Excellent
Exhaust
Exit
Expropriate

Saturday

Exercise
Exist
Experiment
Exaggerate
Explanation

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 26

Dear Comrade:

There are really two things which will come to us out of the study of grammar. One of these, which we discussed in our letter last week, is the power of logical thinking. The second is the ability to express our thoughts correctly; that is, according to accepted usage. So you can consider your spoken and written speech from two viewpoints. First, you can look to see if you have used the words correctly. We have noted these common errors especially in our study of the various parts of speech. There are certain errors we often make, as for example, using a plural noun with a singular verb, or using the past time form of the verb for the past participle.

We have noted a great many of these errors in our speech. We might make ourselves understood and express ourselves fairly accurately and still make these mistakes, but it is wise for us to try to eliminate them from our speech for several reasons. To those who understand the use of correct English, these mistakes mark us as ignorant and uneducated. No matter how important and absolutely accurate the thought we are expressing, if we make these grammatical errors, they very naturally discount our thought also. They feel that if we cannot speak correctly, in all probability we cannot think accurately, either.

Then, too, these words in our speech distract the attention of our hearers from the things which we are saying. It is like the mannerism of an actor. If he has any peculiar manner of walking or of talking and persists in carrying that into whatever character he is interpreting, we always see the actor himself, instead of the character which he is portraying. His mannerisms get in the way and interfere with our grasp of the idea.

So in music. You may be absorbed in a wonderful selection which some one is playing and if suddenly he strikes a wrong note, the discord distracts your attention and perhaps you never get back into the spirit of the music again.

So we must watch these common errors in our speech, but we must not let our study of English be simply that alone. The greatest benefit which we are deriving from this study is the analytic method of thought and the logical habit of mind, which the effort to express ourselves clearly and accurately and in well-chosen words will give us. Put as much time as you can possibly spare into this analysis of sentences. Take your favorite writer and analyze his sentences and find out what is his particular charm for you. If there is any sentence which gives you a little trouble and you cannot analyze it properly, copy it in your next examination paper and state where the difficulty lies. Rewrite the passages which please you most and then compare your version with the author's and see if you really grasped his meaning. In this way you will add quickly to your enjoyment of the writing of others and to your power of expressing yourself.

Yours for Freedom,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE

440. We have been analyzing the simple sentence, which contains only words and phrases. We have found that there may enter into the simple sentence, the following elements:

1. The simple subject.
2. The simple predicate.
3. The modifiers of the subject.
4. The object of the verb.
5. The predicate complement.
6. The modifiers of the predicate.

This is not the order in which the elements will appear in the sentence, but this is the order of their importance. We first look for the simple subject and the simple predicate; then we can determine which words are the modifiers of the subject; then we find the object or predicate complement of the verb and the modifiers of the verb; and thus we have all of the elements which go into the construction of the simple sentence.

We may also have two nouns used as the subject or two verbs used in the predicate, connected by a co-ordinate conjunction, thus:

Marx and Engels lived and worked together.

Here we have two proper nouns used as the subject, *Marx* and *Engels*. We have also two verbs used as the predicate, *lived* and *worked*. We call this a compound subject and compound predicate.

So in one simple sentence, that is a sentence which makes a single assertion, we may have every part of speech. For example:

The most intelligent men and women think for themselves.

In this sentence, we have a *noun*, *verb*, *pronoun*, *adjective*, *adverb*, *conjunction* and *preposition*—every part of speech except the *interjection*, which is an independent element and does not enter into the construction of the sentence.

Exercise 1

Write simple sentences of your own containing:

1. A compound subject.
2. A compound predicate.
3. A noun as subject modified by one or more adjectives.
4. A noun as subject modified by a phrase.
5. An incomplete verb with a direct and an indirect object.
6. An incomplete verb with a predicate complement.
7. A predicate modified by one or more adverbs.
8. A predicate modified by an adverb phrase.

COMPLEX SENTENCES

441. The simple sentence is the unit of speech. It is a combination of words which makes a single statement, question or command. But many times a constant repetition of these short sentences

would become tiresome, and our written and spoken speech would not flow as smoothly and rapidly as we desire. So we have evolved a way in which we may combine these sentences into longer statements. Let us take the two *simple* sentences:

We are united.
We shall succeed.

We may combine these into a single sentence by using the co-ordinate conjunction *and*. Then our sentence reads:

We are united and we shall succeed.

This is a *compound* sentence, formed by uniting two simple sentences. Both of the clauses are independent and are of equal rank. Neither depends upon the other. They are united by the co-ordinate conjunction *and*. We can combine these sentences in a different way. For example, we may say:

If we are united, we shall succeed.

Now we have a subordinate clause, *if we are united*, which is used to modify the verb of the main clause, *succeed*. We have used the subordinate conjunction *if*, and so we have a *complex* sentence formed by uniting the principal clause and a dependent clause.

442. The next step in sentence building, after the simple sentence, is the complex sentence. A complex sentence is a combination of two or more simple sentences, which are so united that one sentence remains the main sentence—the backbone, as it were—and the other sentence becomes subordinate or dependent upon it.

443. A complex sentence is one containing a principal clause and one or more subordinate clauses.

A principal clause is one which makes a complete statement without the help of any other clause or clauses.

A subordinate or dependent clause is one which makes a statement dependent upon or modifying some word or words in the principal clause.

KINDS OF DEPENDENT CLAUSES

444. Dependent clauses are of three kinds. They may be used either as *nouns*, *adjectives* or *adverbs*, and so are called *noun clauses*, *adjective clauses* or *adverb clauses*.

NOUN CLAUSES

445. Noun clauses are those which are used in place of a noun. They may be used in any way in which a noun may be used, except as a possessive.

1. **The noun clause may be used as the subject of the sentence.** For example:

That he is innocent is admitted by all.

The clause, *that he is innocent* is used as a *noun*, the subject of the sentence.

2. **The noun clause may be used as the object of a verb**, thus:

I admit *that I cannot understand your argument*.

The clause, *that I cannot understand your argument*, is in this sentence the object of the verb *admit*.

3. **The noun clause may be used as the predicate complement**, thus:

The fact is *that this policy will never win*.

The clause, *that this policy will never win*, is here used in the predicate with the copulative verb *is*.

4. **The noun clause may also be used in apposition, explaining the noun with which it is used**, thus:

The motion, *that the question should be reconsidered*, was carried.

That the question should be reconsidered, is here a noun clause, used in apposition with the noun *motion*, and explains the meaning of the noun.

5. **The noun clause may also be used as the object of a preposition**, thus:

I now refer to *what he claims*.

The noun clause, *what he claims*, is here the object of the preposition, *to*.

Exercise 2

In the following sentences the noun clauses are printed in italics. Determine whether they are used as the subject, or object of the verb, as predicate complement, in apposition, or as the object of a preposition.

1. The fact is *that I was not listening*.
2. *Whatever King Midas looked upon* turned to gold.
3. He acknowledged *what we had suspected*.
4. We will never know *what the real situation was*.
5. The fact *that the wage is insufficient* can be easily proved.
6. He replied to *what had been asked*.
7. The claim was *that he had made a speech inciting to riot*.
8. The law *that labor unions are in restraint of trade* was upheld.
9. *That we cannot win by compromise* is readily apparent.
10. Labor demands *that it shall have its full product*.
11. *Whoever controls education* controls the future.
12. He came to *where the militia was in camp*.

Exercise 3

Write sentences containing noun clauses used:

1. As the subject of a verb.
2. As the object of a verb.
3. As a predicate complement.
4. In apposition.
5. As the object of a preposition.

ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

446. A dependent clause in a complex sentence may also be an adjective clause.

An adjective clause is a clause used as an adjective, and, hence, always modifies a noun or some word used as a noun, such as a pronoun or a participle. In Lesson 22, we studied adjective clauses and found that they could be introduced by the relative pronouns, *who*, *which*, *that* and *as*, and also by conjunctions such as, *when*, *where*, *whither*, *whence*, etc. An adjective clause may modify any noun or any word used as a noun in the sentence.

1. **An adjective clause may modify the subject**, thus:

Men *who have become class-conscious* do not make good soldiers.

In this sentence the clause, *who have become class-conscious*, modifies the noun *men*, and is introduced by the relative pronoun *who*.

2. **An adjective clause may modify the noun which is the object of the verb**, as:

The men supported the party *which fought for their rights*.

Here the clause, *which fought for their rights*, is an adjective clause introduced by the pronoun *which*, and it modifies the noun *party*, which is the object of the verb *supported*.

3. **An adjective clause may also be used to modify the noun which is used in the predicate complement**, as:

That was the book *which I enjoyed*.

In this sentence the clause, *which I enjoyed*, is an adjective clause modifying the noun *book*, which is used as the predicate complement with the copulative verb *was*.

4. **An adjective clause may also be used to modify the noun which is used as the object of a preposition**, as:

He arrived on the train *which was late*.

Here the adjective clause, *which was late*, modifies the noun *train*, which is the object of the preposition *on*.

Sometimes it is a little difficult to discover these adjective clauses, for frequently the connecting word is omitted, as for example:

I could not find the man *I wanted*.

In this sentence, the pronoun *whom* is omitted; the complete sentence would read:

I could not find the man *whom I wanted*.

Whom I wanted is an adjective clause modifying the noun *man*.

Exercise 4

In the following sentences the relative pronouns and the conjunctions introducing adjective clauses are omitted. Rewrite the sentences using the proper relative pronouns and conjunctions. The adjective clauses are in italics.

1. The people *you are seeking* are not here.
2. I have read the book *you brought*.
3. The articles *you mentioned* are not listed.
4. I will go to the place *you say*.
5. This is a book *you should read*.
6. Those are ideals *the people will readily grasp*.
7. We make Gods of the things *we fear*.
8. I listened to every word *he said*.
9. I should love the cause *you love*.
10. The things *the people demand* are just and right.

Exercise 5

In the following sentences the adjective clauses are all printed in italics. Determine whether they modify the subject or the object, the predicate complement or the object of the preposition.

1. In that moment *when he saw the light* he joined our cause.
2. Other men are lenses *through which we read our own minds*.
3. This is perhaps the reason *why we are unable to agree*.
4. He *that loveth* maketh his own the grandeur *that he loves*.
5. The other terror *that scares us from self-trust* is our consistency.
6. There is a popular fable of a sot *who was picked up dead drunk in the street, carried to the Duke's house, washed and dressed and laid in the Duke's bed, and, on his waking, treated with all ceremony like a duke and assured that he had been insane*.
7. He *who would gather immortal palms* must not be hindered by the name of goodness, but must explore if it be goodness.
8. Superstition, *who is the mother of fear and faith*, still rules many people.
9. We are looking for the time *when the useful shall be the honorable*.
10. He *who enslaves another* cannot be free.
11. He *who attacks the right* assaults himself.
12. The force *that is in every atom and every star, in everything that grows and thinks, that hopes and suffers*, is the only possible God.
13. He *who adds to the sum of human misery* is a blasphemer.
14. The grandest ambition *that can enter the soul* is the desire to know the truth.

ADVERB CLAUSES

447. The third kind of clause which we may use in a complex sentence is the adverb clause.

An adverb clause is a clause which takes the place of an adverb. It may modify a *verb*, an *adjective*, or an *adverb*. We studied adverb clauses in lesson 21 and we found eight classes of adverb clauses, expressing *time*, *place*, *cause* or *reason*, *manner*, *comparison*, *condition*, *purpose* and *result*. For example:

1. **Adverb clause of time:** No man is truly free *until all are free*.
2. **Adverb clause of place:** We must live *where we can find work*.
3. **Adverb clause expressing cause or reason:** We lost the strike *because the men were not class-conscious*.
4. **Adverb clause of manner:** We must work *as if the result depended entirely upon us*.
5. **Adverb clause of comparison:** The working class must become more class-conscious *than it is today*.
6. **Adverb clause of condition:** We will continue to be exploited *if we do not demand our rights*.
7. **Adverb clause expressing purpose:** We must read the labor press *in order that we may know the truth concerning conditions*.
8. **Adverb clause expressing result:** The battle raged so furiously *that thousands were slain*.

ANALYZING COMPLEX SENTENCES

448. To analyze a complex sentence; that is, to break it up into its different parts—treat the sentence first as a whole, then find the simple subject and the simple predicate. If a noun clause is the subject, treat it first as a noun. Treat adjective clauses as adjectives modifying certain words and the adverb clauses as adverbs modifying certain words.

In other words, analyze the sentence first as a simple sentence with dependent clauses considered as modifying words; then analyze each dependent clause as though it were a simple sentence. Make an outline like the following and use it in your analysis of the sentence. Let us take this sentence and analyze it:

> Conscious solidarity in the ranks would give the working class of the world, now, in our day,
> the freedom which they seek.

Simple subject, *solidarity*.

Simple predicate, *would give*.

Modifiers of the subject:

> Adjective, *conscious*.
> Adjective phrase, *in the ranks*.
> Adjective clause, (*none*).

Complete subject, *Conscious solidarity in the ranks*.

Modifiers of the predicate:

> Adverb, *now*.
> Adverb phrase, *in our day*.

Adverb clause, (*none*).

Direct object, *freedom*.

Modifiers of direct object:

Adjective, *the*.
Adjective phrase, (*none*).
Adjective clause, *which they seek*,

Indirect object, *class*.

Modifiers of indirect object:

Adjectives, *the*, *working*.
Adjective phrase, *of the world*.
Adjective clause, (*none*).

Complete predicate, *would give the working class of the world, now, in our day, the freedom which they seek*.

Analyze the dependent clause, *which they seek*, just as a principal clause is analyzed. *They* is the simple subject, *seek* is the simple predicate, *which* is the direct object. The complete predicate is *seek which*.

449. Notice that the first two sentences given in the exercise below are imperative sentences,—the subject, the pronoun *you*, being omitted so that the entire sentence is the complete predicate. As for example: *Take the place which belongs to you.* The omitted subject is the pronoun *you*. *Take the place which belongs to you* is the complete predicate, made up of the simple predicate *take*; its object, the noun *place*; the adjective *the*, and the adjective clause, *which belongs to you*, both of which modify the noun *place*.

Exercise 6

Using the outline given above, analyze the following complex sentences.

1. Take the place which belongs to you.
2. Let us believe that brave deeds will never die.
3. The orator knows that the greatest ideas should be expressed in the simplest words.
4. Gratitude is the fairest flower that sheds its perfume in the human heart.
5. Children should be taught that it is their duty to think for themselves.
6. We will be slaves as long as we are ignorant.
7. We must teach our fellow men that honor comes from within.
8. Cause and effect cannot be severed for the effect already blooms in the cause.
9. Men measure their esteem of each other by what each has.
10. Our esteem should be measured by what each is.
11. What I must do is all that concerns me.
12. The great man is he who, in the midst of the crowd, keeps the independence of solitude.
13. The only right is what is after my constitution.
14. Whoso would be a man must be a non-conformist.

15. They who build on ideas build for eternity.

Exercise 7

We have studied all the parts of speech, and now our work is to combine these parts for the expression of thought. It will be good practice and very helpful to us to mark these different parts of speech in our reading. This helps us to grow familiar with their use. It also helps us to add words to our vocabulary and to learn how to use them correctly. In the following quotation, mark underneath each word, the name of every part of speech. Use *n.* for noun, *v.* for verb, *pro.* for pronoun, *adv.* for adverb, *adj.* for adjective, *p.* for preposition and *c.* for conjunction. Write *v. p.* under the verb phrases. For example:

The	**workers**	**of**	**the**	**world**	**do**	**not**	**have,**
adj.	*n.*	*p.*	*adj.*	*n.*	*v.p.*	*adv.*	*v.p.*
under	**this**	**system,**	**very**	**many**	**opportunities**		
p.	*adj.*	*n.*	*adv.*	*adj.*	*n.*		
for	**rest**	**and**	**pleasure**	**for**	**themselves.**		
p.	*n.*	*c.*	*n.*	*p.*	*pro.*		

Mark in this manner every part of speech in the following quotation:

> The history of all hitherto existing society is the history of class struggles.
>
> Freeman and slave, patrician and plebeian, lord and serf, guildmaster and journeyman,—in a word, oppressor and oppressed,—stood in constant opposition to one another, carried on an uninterrupted, now hidden, now open fight, a fight that each time ended, either in a revolutionary re-constitution of society at large, or in the common ruin of the contending classes.
>
> In the earlier epochs of history, we find almost everywhere a complicated arrangement of society into various orders, a manifold gradation of social rank. In ancient Rome we have patricians, knights, plebeians, slaves; in the middle ages, feudal lords, vassals, guild-masters, journeymen, apprentices, serfs; in almost all of these classes, again, subordinate gradations.
>
> The modern bourgeois society, that has sprouted from the ruins of feudal society, has not done away with class antagonisms. It has but established new classes, new conditions of oppression, new forms of struggle in place of the old ones. —*Communist Manifesto.*

Exercise 8

In the following quotation, mark all of the clauses and determine whether they are dependent or independent clauses. If they are dependent clauses, determine whether they are noun, adjective or adverb clauses. Mark all the sentences and tell whether they are simple or complex.

> I see in the near future a crisis approaching that unnerves me, and causes me to tremble for the safety of my country. As a result of war, corporations have been enthroned, and an era of corruption in high places will follow. The money power of the country will endeavor to prolong its reign by working upon the prejudices of the people, until all the wealth is aggregated in a few hands, and the republic is destroyed. I feel at this moment more anxiety for the safety of our country than ever before, even in the midst of war. God grant that my forebodings may be groundless. Monarchy itself is sometimes hinted at as a refuge from the power of the people. In my present position I could scarcely be justified were I to omit to raise a warning voice against the approach of a returning despotism.... It is assumed that labor is available only in connection with capital; that nobody labors unless somebody else, owning capital, somehow, by the use of it, induces him to labor. Labor is prior to and independent

of capital. Capital is only the fruit of labor, and could not have existed if labor had not first existed. Labor is the superior of capital, and deserves much the higher consideration. I bid the laboring people beware of surrendering the power which they possess, and which, if surrendered, will surely be used to shut the door of advancement for such as they, and fix new disabilities and burdens upon them until all of liberty shall be lost.

In the early days of our race the Almighty said to the first of mankind, "In the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread," and since then, if we except the light and air of Heaven, no good thing has been or can be enjoyed by us without first having cost labor. And inasmuch as most good things have been produced by labor, it follows that all such things belong of right to those whose labor has produced them. But it has so happened, in all ages of the world, that some have labored and others have without labor enjoyed a large portion of the fruits. This is wrong, and should not continue. To secure to each laborer the whole product of his labor, as nearly as possible, is a worthy object of any government.

It seems strange that any man should dare to ask a just God's assistance in wringing bread from the sweat of other men's faces.

This country, with its institutions, belongs to the people who inhabit it. —*Lincoln.*

Exercise 9

In the following poem find all of the assertive, interrogative and imperative sentences. Mark all of the simple sentences and all of the complex sentences. Mark all of the dependent clauses and determine whether each is used as a noun, adjective or adverb clause. The verbs and the verb phrases are in italics.

Shall you *complain* who *feed* the world,
Who *clothe* the world,
Who *house* the world?
Shall you *complain* who *are* the world,
Of what the world *may do*?
As from this hour you *are* the power,
The world *must follow* you.

The world's life *hangs* on your right hand,
Your strong right hand,
Your skilled right hand;
You *hold* the whole world in your hand;
See to it what you *do*!
For dark or light or wrong or right,
The world *is made* by you.

Then *rise* as you never *rose* before,
Nor *hoped* before,
Nor *dared* before;
And *show* as never *was shown* before
The power that *lies* in you.
Stand all as one; *see* justice done;
Believe and *dare* and *do*.

—*Charlotte Perkins Gilman.*

SPELLING

LESSON 26

In our last lesson we had examples of words in which the *s* had the soft sound, and also of words in which the *s* had the sound of *z*. In some English words, it is difficult to determine which sound to use. There are a number of words in English beginning with *dis*. In a few of the words, the *s* has the sound of *z*, and in other words it has the sound of *s*. There are only a few words which are pronounced with the *diz* sound. *Discern*, *dismal* and *dissolve* are always pronounced with the *diz* sound. *Disease* and *disaster* are pronounced both ways. Some dictionaries give the *diz* sound and some give the *dis* sound.

The spelling lesson for Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday contains a number of words beginning with *dis*. Be sure of the pronunciation. Run through the words in the dictionary beginning with the *dis* sound and mark those in which the *dis* has the sound of *diz*.

We have also a number of words in the English language which end in *ise* or *ize*, and we are often confused to know which ending to use. There is a rule, which has very few exceptions, which covers the use of *ise* and *ize*. Words should be spelled with the *ize* ending when the *ize* can be cut off, and the word that is left can be used alone. For example; *author*, *authorize*. In this word you can cut off the *ize* and the word *author* can be used alone. But in the word *exercise*, if you cut off the *ise*, the remaining portion cannot be used alone.

Recognize and *criticise* are exceptions to this rule. When used as a suffix added to a noun or adjective to form a verb, *ize* is the proper ending; as *theory*, *theorize*, *civil*, *civilize*, etc. Final *e* or *y* is dropped before *ize*, as in the words *memorize*, *sterilize*, etc.

The spelling lesson for Thursday, Friday and Saturday contains a number of common words ending with *ize* or *ise*. Study carefully this list and add as many words to it as you can.

Monday

Disappear
Distress
Discern
Disburse
Discipline

Tuesday

Discount
Discredit
Distribute
Dismal
Disseminate

Wednesday

Disguise
Distance
Dissolve
Discontent
Disposition

Thursday

Franchise
Civilize
Surprise
Organize
Compromise

Friday

Monopolize
Revise
Legalize
Enterprise

Capitalize

Saturday

Memorize
Advertise
Theorize
Comprise
Systematize

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 27

Dear Comrade:

Ingersoll said: "Words are the garments of thought and the robes of ideas." This is a beautiful and poetic way of expressing the relationship between words and thoughts. Words are really the body which we give to our thoughts. Until they are clothed in words, our thoughts are only ghosts of ideas. Other people cannot see or come into contact with them, and they can have but little influence upon the world.

Without thought, no language is possible. It is equally true that without language, no growth of thought is possible. It is futile to try to determine which is first, language or thought. The two are entirely necessary to each other and make possible social and individual development.

Every time that you add a word to your vocabulary, you have added to your mental equipment. You have also added greatly to your power of enjoyment. Through these words you will come into a new relationship to your fellow men. Each new word enlarges the circle of your acquaintance. A knowledge of language brings us into a circle of wonderful friends. When we have learned to read we need never more be lonely. Some one has written in a book somewhere just the thing we are hungry for at this moment.

In the pages of a book we can meet and talk with the great souls who have written in these pages their life's experience. No matter what mood you are in, you can find a book to suit that mood. No matter what your need, there is a book which meets that need. Form the habit of reading and you will find it a wonderful source of pleasure and of profit.

Nor do we need to be barred because of our lack of educational advantages in our youth. Buckle, the author of the greatest history that has ever been written, left school at the age of fourteen, and it is said that at that age, except a smattering of mathematics, he knew only how to read; but when he

died at the age of forty, this man, who did not know his letters when he was eight years old, could read and write seven languages and was familiar with ten or twelve more. He had written a wonderful book and had become a teacher of teachers. Engraven upon his marble altar tomb is the following couplet:

"The written word remains long after the writer.
The writer is resting under the earth, but his words endure."

Good books are so cheap nowadays that they are within the reach of every one of us. Let us not be content to live in the narrow world of work and worry. Let us forget the struggle occasionally in the reading of books, and let us prepare ourselves, by reading and studying, for the battle for the emancipation of the workers of the world.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

KINDS OF SENTENCES

450. A simple sentence is a sentence which makes a single assertion, question or command.

The simple sentence contains only words and phrases.

451. A complex sentence is one which contains a principal statement and one or more modifying statements.

The statements made in addition to the principal statement are made in dependent clauses. The complex sentence has only one main clause and one or more dependent clauses.

452. A compound sentence is one which contains two or more independent clauses.

These compound sentences may contain any number of dependent clauses but they must always have at least two independent or principal clauses. These principal clauses are always connected by co-ordinate conjunctions, for the principal clauses in a compound sentence are always of equal rank or order.

Exercise 1

Review the lesson on co-ordinate conjunctions and notice which conjunctions are used to unite principal clauses into single sentences. Use these co-ordinate conjunctions to unite the following pairs of simple sentences into compound sentences. For example:

The sun rises *and* the day dawns.
The men work *but* the boys play.

The sun rises.	The day dawns.
He studies diligently.	He learns rapidly.
He came early.	He could not stay.
The weather is cold.	The plants are not growing.
The men work.	The boys play.
The day is cold.	The wind is blowing.

Take the above sentences and use subordinate instead of co-ordinate conjunctions, and make complex sentences instead of compound out of each pair of simple sentences. For example:

When the sun rises, the day dawns.
The men work *while* the boys play.

KINDS OF COMPOUND SENTENCES

453. Compound sentences may be made up of two simple sentences.

Rewrite the following compound sentences, making of each sentence two simple sentences:

The birds are singing and spring is here.
He believes in war but his brother is against it.
We must arouse ourselves or we shall be involved.
He will not study nor will he allow any one else to study.

454. A compound sentence may be made up of a simple sentence and a complex sentence, joined by a co-ordinate conjunction. For example:

John goes to school, but Mary stays at home in order that she may help her mother.

This compound sentence is made up of the simple sentence, *John goes to school*, and the complex sentence, *Mary stays at home in orderthat she may help her mother*.

455. Both parts of the compound sentence may be complex; that is, both principal clauses in a compound sentence may contain dependent clauses. For example:

John goes to school where his brother goes, but Mary stays at home in order that she may help her mother.

This compound sentence is made up of two complex sentences. The sentence, *John goes to school where his brother goes*, is complex because it contains the dependent clause, *where his brother goes*; the sentence, *Mary stays at home in order that she may help her mother*, is complex because it contains the dependent clause, *in order that she may help her mother*.

Exercise 2

Read carefully the following sentences, determine which are simple sentences, which are complex and which are compound.

1. When the state is corrupt, then the laws are most multiplied.
2. To teach the alphabet is to inaugurate revolution.

3. Freedom degenerates unless it has to struggle in its own defense.
4. The destroyers have always been honored.
5. Liberty of thought is a mockery if liberty of speech is denied.
6. Where slavery is, there liberty cannot be; and where liberty is, there slavery cannot be.
7. All our greatness was born of liberty and we cannot strangle the mother without destroying her children.
8. In the twentieth century, war will be dead, but man will live.
9. The abuse of free speech dies in a day, but the denial entombs the hope of the race.

SENTENCE ANALYSIS

456. There is no more important part of the study of English than the analysis of sentences. The very best result that can come to one from the study of grammar is the logical habit of mind. The effort to analyze a difficult passage gives us a fuller appreciation of its meaning. This cultivates in us accuracy, both of thought and of expression. So, spend as much time as you can on the analysis of sentences.

The subject and the predicate are the very body of the sentence, upon which all the rest of the sentence is hung. The other parts of the sentence are but the drapery and the garments which clothe the body of the sentence. Hence, the most important thing in sentence analysis is to be able to discover the *subject* and *predicate*.

In the expression of a thought, there are always two important essentials, that about which something is said,—which constitutes the subject,—and that which is said about the subject, which constitutes the predicate.

There may be a number of modifying words, phrases or subordinate clauses, but there is always a main clause which contains a simple subject and a simple predicate. Find these first, and you can then fit the modifying words and phrases and clauses into their proper places.

457. Let us take for study and analysis the following paragraph from Jack London:

> Man's efficiency for food-getting and shelter-getting has not diminished since the day of the cave-man. It has increased a thousand-fold. Wonderful artifices and marvelous inventions have been made. Why then do millions of modern men live more miserably than the cave-man lived?

Let us take the first sentence out of this paragraph and analyze it. *Man's efficiency for food-getting and shelter-getting has not diminished since the day of the cave-man.* What is the main word in this sentence—the word about which the entire statement is made? Clearly it is the word *efficiency*. *Efficiency* is the noun which is the subject of the sentence.

Then you might ask *what sort of* efficiency and *whose* efficiency? What sort of efficiency is explained by the adjective phrase, *for food-getting and shelter-getting*. Whose efficiency is explained by the possessive noun, *man's*. Therefore, the complete subject is, *Man's efficiency for food-getting and shelter-getting*.

Now we are ready to consider the predicate. What has efficiency done? It *has not diminished*. *Has diminished* is the verb phrase, which is the simple predicate of this sentence. It is modified by the adverb *not*, so we have *Man's efficiency has not diminished*. Then we might ask, *when* has it not diminished? And this is answered by the phrase, *since the day of the cave-man*. So we have our complete predicate, *Has not diminished since the day of the cave-man*.

In this way we can analyze or break up into its different parts, every sentence. First find the subject, then ask what that subject does, and the answer will be the predicate or verb. Do not confuse the verb with the words which state *how* or *why* the action is performed, and do not confuse the verb with the *object* of the action. The verb simply asserts the action. The other words will add the additional information as to how or why or when or upon whom the action was performed.

Let us finish the analysis of the sentences in the paragraph quoted from Jack London. In the second sentence, *It has increased a thousand-fold*, the personal pronoun *it*, which refers to the noun *efficiency*, is the subject of the sentence; and when you ask what *it* has *done*, you find that the question is answered by the verb, *has increased*. Therefore, *has increased* is the verb in the sentence. The noun, *thousand-fold* is used as an adverb telling how

much it has increased. It is an adverb-noun, which you will find explained in Section 291.

In the next sentence, *Wonderful artifices and marvelous inventions have been made*, we find two *nouns* about which a statement is made.*Artifices* have been made and *inventions* have been made; so *artifices* and *inventions* are both the *subjects* of the sentence. Therefore, we have a compound subject with a single verb, *have been made*. *Artifices* is modified by the adjective *wonderful*, and *inventions* is modified by the adjective *marvelous*, so we have *wonderful artifices and marvelous inventions*, as the complete subject, and *have been made*, as the complete predicate.

In the last sentence, *Why then do millions of modern men live more miserably than the cave-man lived?*, we find a sentence which is a trifle more difficult of analysis. It is written in the interrogative form. If you find it difficult to determine the subject and the verb or verb phrase in an interrogative sentence, rewrite the sentence in the assertive form, and you will find it easier to analyze.

When we rewrite this sentence we have, *Millions of modern men do live more miserably than the cave-man lived.* Now it is evident that the noun *millions* is the subject of the sentence. We see quickly that *men* cannot be the subject because it is the object of the preposition *of*, in the phrase, *of modern men*. So we decide that the noun *millions* is the simple subject.

When we ask the question what millions *do*, our question is answered by the verb phrase, *do live*. So *do live* is the simple predicate, and the skeleton of our sentence, the simple subject and the simple predicate, is *millions do live*. The subject *millions* is modified by the adjective phrase *of modern men*.

Then we ask, *how* do men live? And we find our question answered by *they live miserably*. But we are told *how* miserably they live by the adverb *more* and the adverb clause, *than the cave-man lived*, both modifying the adverb *miserably*. So we have our complete predicate, *do live more miserably than the cave-man lived*.

This interrogative sentence is introduced by the interrogative adverb *why*.

Do not drop this subject until you are able to determine readily the *subject* and *predicate* in every sentence and properly place all modifying words. There is nothing that will so increase your power of understanding what you read, and your ability to write clearly, as this facility in analyzing sentences.

Exercise 3

The following is Elbert Hubbard's description of the child-laborers of the Southern cotton-mills. Read it carefully. Notice that the sentences are all short sentences, and the cumulative effect of these short sentences is a picture of the condition of these child-workers which one can never forget. The subjects and predicates are in italics. When you have finished your study of this question, rewrite it from memory and then compare your version with the original version.

> *I thought* that *I would lift* one of the little toilers. *I wanted* to ascertain his weight. Straightway through his thirty-five pounds of skin and bone there *ran* a *tremor* of fear. *He struggled* forward to tie a broken thread. *I attracted* his attention by a touch. *I offered* him a silver dime. *He looked* at me dumbly from a face *that might have belonged* to a man of sixty. *It was* so furrowed, tightly drawn and full of pain. *He did* not *reach* for the money. *He did* not *know* what *it was*. There *were dozens* of such children in this particular mill. A *physician who was* with me *said* that *they would* probably all *be* dead in two years. Their *places would be* easily *filled*, however, for there *were* plenty *more*. *Pneumonia carries* off most of them. Their *systems are* ripe for disease and when *it comes* there *is* no *rebound*. *Medicine* simply *does* not *act*. *Nature is whipped, beaten, discouraged. The child sinks* into a stupor and *dies*.

Exercise 4

In the following sentences, mark the simple sentences, the complex sentences and the compound sentences, and analyze these sentences according to the rules given for analyzing simple sentences, complex sentences and compound sentences:

1. Force is no remedy.
2. Law grinds the poor, and the rich men rule the law.
3. Force and fraud are in war the two cardinal virtues.
4. Freedom is a new religion, a religion of our time.
5. Desire nothing for yourself which you do not desire for others.

6. An ambassador is a man who goes abroad to lie for the good of his country.
7. A journalist is a man who stays at home to pursue the same vocation.
8. Without free speech no search for truth is possible.
9. Liberty for the few is not liberty.
10. Liberty for me and slavery for you mean slavery for both.
11. No revolution ever rises above the intellectual level of those who make it.
12. Men submit everywhere to oppression when they have only to lift their heads to throw off the yoke.
13. Many politicians of our time are in the habit of saying that no people ought to be free till they are fit to use freedom. The maxim is worthy of the fool in the old story who resolved not to go into the water till he had learned to swim. If men are to wait for liberty till they become wise and good in slavery they may indeed wait forever.

SUMMARY

458. The following is a summary of that which we have learned in sentence building:

Sentences are classified according to
- Use
  - Assertive
  - Interrogative
  - Imperative
  - Exclamatory
- Form
  - Simple
  - Complex
  - Compound

Elements of The Sentence.
- **Words**, the eight parts of speech.
- **Phrases**, adjective, adverb and verb phrases.

Clauses, adjective, adverb and noun clauses.

459.

ESSENTIALS OF A SIMPLE SENTENCE

Subject	**Predicate**		
Subject	Complete Verb		
Subject	Copulative Verb	Predicate Complement	
Subject	Transitive Verb	Direct Object	
Subject	Transitive Verb	Direct Object	Indirect Object

460.

THE SUBJECT

The simple subject may be	{	*Noun*—The *man* came. *Pronoun—He* came. *Adjective*—The *poor* came. *Infinitive—To find* work is difficult. *Participle—Walking* is good exercise. *Clause—What I learn* cannot be lost.
Complete subject	—	Simple subject and modifiers.

Modifiers of the Subject

Adjective	{	Word—*Wealthy* men rule. Phrase—Men *of wealth* rule. Clause—Men *who are wealthy* rule.
Possessive	—	The *man's* energy was great.
Appositive	{	Word—The poet, *Lowell*, was the author. Clause—The fact, *that you came*, pleases me.
Participle	—	The soldiers, *wounded and dying*, were left on the field.
Infinitive	—	A plan *to end the war* was discussed.

461.

THE PREDICATE

The simple predicate	{	*Verb*—The man *came*. *Verb phrase*—The man *has been coming* daily.

A COMPLETE PREDICATE *equals a verb or verb phrase and*	{	**Predicate Complement**—The man was a *hero*. **Direct Object**—The man brought the *book*. **The Indirect Object**—The man brought *me* the book. **Adverb Modifiers** { *Word*—The man works *rapidly*.

		Phrase—The man works *in the factory*. *Clause*—The man works *whenever he can*.
SIMPLE SENTENCES CONTAIN ONLY	{	*Words*—The man works hard. *Phrases*—The man *on your right* works *in the factory.*
Complex sentences contain	{ *Words*,*Phrases* and *Dependent clauses.*	The man works steadily in the factory *whenever there is work*.
Compound sentences contain	two or more principal clauses, as:	*The sun rises* and *the day dawns*.

462. Take the simple subjects and simple predicates in Exercise 5, and build up sentences; first, by adding a word, then a phrase and then a clause to modify the subject; then add a word and a phrase and a clause to modify the predicate.

So long as you have only words and phrases you have simple sentences. When you add a dependent clause you have a complex sentence. When you unite two independent clauses in one sentence, then you have a compound sentence, and the connecting word will always be a co-ordinate conjunction. These will be readily distinguished for there are only a few co-ordinate conjunctions.

Go back to the lesson on co-ordinate conjunctions and find out what these are, and whenever you find two clauses connected by these co-ordinate conjunctions you know that you have a compound sentence. Remember that each clause must contain a subject and predicate of its own. When you have two words connected by these co-ordinate conjunctions you do not have a clause. Each clause must contain a subject and a predicate of its own.

463. Here is an example of a sentence built up from a simple subject and a simple predicate:

SIMPLE SUBJECT ENLARGED

Simple Subject and Predicate—*Soldiers obey.*

Adjectives added—*The enlisted* soldiers obey.

Phrase added—The enlisted soldiers *in the trenches* obey.

Clause added—The enlisted soldiers in the trenches, *who are doomed to die*, obey.

SIMPLE PREDICATE ENLARGED

Simple Subject and Predicate—*Soldiers obey.*

Object added—Soldiers obey *orders*.

Adverb added—Soldiers obey orders *quickly*.

Phrase added—Soldiers obey orders quickly and *without question*.

Clause added—Soldiers obey orders quickly and without question *because they are taught to do so*.

Combining our enlarged subject and predicate we have the sentence:

> The enlisted soldiers in the trenches, who are doomed to die, obey orders quickly and without question because they are taught to do

so.

This is a complex sentence because it contains dependent clauses. We might add another independent clause and make of this a compound sentence. For example:

> The enlisted soldiers in the trenches, who are doomed to die, obey orders quickly and without question because they are taught to do so, and *this is patriotism*.

Exercise 5

Enlarge the following simple subjects and simple predicates:

Men write.
Boys play.
People study.
The law rules.

Exercise 6

In the following poem underscore all of the dependent clauses. Determine whether they are noun, adjective or adverb clauses. Do you find any simple or compound sentences in this poem?

MEN! whose boast it is that ye
Come of fathers brave and free,
If there breathe on earth a slave,
Are you truly free and brave?
If ye do not feel the chain,
When it works a brother's pain,
Are ye not base slaves indeed,

Slaves unworthy to be freed?

Women! who shall one day bear
Sons to breathe New England air,
If ye hear without a blush,
Deeds to make the roused blood rush
Like red lava through your veins,
For your sisters now in chains,—
Answer! are you fit to be
Mothers of the brave and free?

Is true Freedom but to break
Fetters for our own dear sake,
And, with leathern hearts, forget
That we owe mankind a debt?
No! true freedom is to share
All the chains our brothers wear,
And, with heart and hand, to be
Earnest to make others free!

They are slaves who fear to speak
For the fallen and the weak;
They are slaves who will not choose
Hatred, scoffing, and abuse,
Rather than in silence shrink

From the truth they needs must think;
They are slaves who dare not be
In the right with two or three.

—*Lowell.*

SPELLING

LESSON 27

We have studied concerning the formation of derivatives by the addition of suffixes. Derivatives are also formed by the addition of prefixes. You remember that a prefix is a syllable which is placed before a simple word to form the derivative. Among the most common of these prefixes are *in*, *un* and *mis*. The prefix *in* used with an adjective or adverb means *not*; for example, *insane* means *not* sane; *incorrect* means *not* correct, etc.

The prefix *in* used with a noun means *lack of*; for example, *inexperience* means *lack of* experience; *inability* means *lack of* ability, etc.

In words beginning with *m* or *p*, *in*, meaning *not* or *lack of*, is changed to *im*. This is done for the sake of euphony. The *n* does not unite readily with the sound of *m* or *p*. So we do not say *inmodest* and *inpartial*, but *immodest* and *impartial*.

The prefix *un*, used with participles, means *not*; for example, *unprepared* means *not* prepared; *unguarded* means *not* guarded, etc.

The prefix *un* used with verbs, means to take off or to reverse; for example, *uncover* means to take off the cover; *untwist* means to reverse the process of the twisting.

The prefix *un* used with adjectives means *not*; for example, *uncertain* means *not* certain; *uncommon* means *not* common.

The prefix *mis* used with nouns or verbs, means *wrong*. For example, *mistreatment* means *wrong* treatment; *to misspell* means to spell *wrong*.

Add the prefix *in* to the nouns given in Monday's list; add the prefix *in* to the adjectives given in Tuesday's list; add the prefix *im* to the adjectives and nouns in Wednesday's lesson; add the prefix *un* to the participles and adjectives in Thursday's lesson; add the prefix *un* to the verbs in Friday's lesson, and add the prefix *mis* to the nouns and verbs in Saturday's lesson.

Monday

Tolerance
Frequency
Competence
Efficiency
Coherence

Tuesday

Convenient
Expedient
Famous
Adequate
Solvent

Wednesday

Pertinent
Morality
Patience
Moderate
Pious

Thursday

Balanced
Biased
Gracious
Stable
Solicited

Friday

Burden
Veil
Fasten
Screw

Furl

Saturday

Construe
Apprehension
Inform
Guide
Judge

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 28

Dear Comrade:

We are beginning with this lesson the study of the use of capitals and of punctuation. The use of capitals as well as punctuation has nothing to do with our spoken words, but both are very important in our written language.

There is nothing that will mark us as uneducated more quickly than bad spelling, faulty punctuation and the incorrect use of capitals.

The rules for the use of capitals may seem somewhat arbitrary. After an understanding of them, however, you will discover that they are not arbitrary, but are based upon a single principle. The word which is of the most importance, or which should receive the most emphasis is the word which is capitalized, as for example, the principal words in a title, the first words in a sentence, proper names, etc.

Study these rules carefully, note the use of the capitals in your reading and watch your written language carefully for a time. Soon the proper use of capitals will seem easy and most natural. In the meantime do not fail to keep up your study of words. Add at least one word to your vocabulary every day.

Did you ever consider how we think in pictures? Nearly every word that we use calls up a certain image or picture in our minds. The content of words has grown and developed as our ability to think has developed.

Take, for example, words like head or hand. Head originally referred to a portion of the body of a living thing; then it was used to refer to some part of an inanimate object which might resemble or call up a picture of an animal's head, for example, the head of a pin. Again, it was used to refer to some part of an inanimate thing which was associated with the head of a human being, as the head of the bed. Then, by the power of association, since the head was considered the most conspicuous and important part of

the body, that which was most conspicuous and important was called the head, as the head of the army, the head of the nation.

Then, since the head was the seat of the brain and of the mental faculties, the head was often used instead of the brain or mental faculties. We speak of a clear head or a cool head. Thus we have a number of idiomatic expressions. We may speak of the head of the river; or the subject matter was divided under four heads; or again, the matter came to a head; he is head and ears in debt; we cannot make head against the opposition, etc.

This transfer of our ideas from the physical to the mental and spiritual marks vividly the growth of the language and the development of thought. Trace the words like hands, arm, foot, eye, tongue, in their use, first as physical then as mental or spiritual.

This will be the most interesting pastime and will enlarge the content of the words which you use.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

CAPITAL LETTERS

464. In our written speech we often display our lack of education by our use of capital letters and punctuation. We may understand the use of words and be able to speak fairly well, but if we do not understand the proper use of capitals and of punctuation marks, our written language readily betrays our ignorance.

465. There are a number of rules for the use of capitals which we must observe. Some of the writers in our magazines defy these rules of capitalization, in an effort to seem different from other people, perhaps. These rules for the use of capital letters, like all other rules, are not arbitrary rules laid down by any body of men, but are simply a statement of accepted usage among people. We should not feel that we should say this or that or we are violating a rule of grammar. We should feel rather that the majority

of the people who speak and write good English do thus, and so, for this reason, I shall do it also.

This is simply obeying the standard of majority rule. If there is any good and sufficient reason why we feel this should not be a rule, we may be justified in breaking it and making a new rule. Many people feel that our spelling should be simplified and so they insist upon spelling certain words in a more simple way. They feel that they have good and sufficient reason for insisting upon this change and gradually if these reasons appeal to the majority as being good and sufficient reasons, then this simplified mode of spelling will become the accepted usage.

But there seems no good reason why any writer should scatter capital letters with a lavish hand throughout his writing. One feels as though a writer in so doing is expressing his desire to be different, in a very superficial manner. Let us be unique and individual in our thought. If this forces us to a different mode of living or of expression from the rest of the world, then we are justified in being different from the rest. We have thought and reason behind our action. This is far different from the attitude of one who poses as a radical and whose only protest is in the superficial external things. So let us learn and observe these rules for the use of capital letters.

RULES FOR THE USE OF CAPITAL LETTERS

466. Use a capital for the first word of every sentence.

When you begin a new sentence always begin that sentence with a capital letter. Each sentence is a statement of a complete thought and is independent of every other sentence. The use of the capital letter indicates this independence and calls attention to the fact that you are beginning a new thought.

467. Begin every line of poetry with a capital letter. Sometimes in poetry, the line is too long to be printed on a single line and must be carried over into another line; in this case, the first word of the second line does *not* begin with a capital letter.

468. Use a capital for every proper noun. This includes names of persons, countries, states, towns, cities, streets and geographical names, as the names of seas, lakes, mountains, rivers, etc.

469. The words North, South, East and West are capitalized when they are used to refer to geographical divisions. When these words simply refer to the points of the compass, they should not begin with a capital.

470. The pronoun *I* and the interjection *O* should always be capitals. Never write the pronoun *I* with a small *i*.

471. Every proper adjective should begin with a capital letter. Proper adjectives are adjectives derived from proper nouns. For example: the *Marxian* philosophy, the *Darwinian* theory, *Indian* money, *Japanese* labor, etc.

472. Always begin the names of the months and the days of the week with capital letters. For example: *January*, *February*, *August*, *Monday*, *Tuesday*, *Friday*, etc.

473. Use a capital letter for every name or title of the Deity. For example: *God*, *Jehovah*, *Christ*, *Jesus*, etc. It is also customary to capitalize all personal pronouns referring to God or Christ.

474. Begin with a capital letter names of all religious sects and political parties, also all adjectives derived from them. As for example: *Christian Church*, *Methodism*, *Republican Party*, *Mohammedan*, *Socialist*, etc.

475. Begin the names of all things spoken of as persons with a capital. In poetry or poetic prose we often speak of *war*, *fame*, *death*, *hope*, *fancy*, *liberty*, etc., as persons. Whenever these words are used in this way they should begin with a capital letter.

476. Use capital letters to begin important words in the title of a book or the subject of a composition. In titles the nouns, pronouns, adjectives, verbs and adverbs should begin with a capital, while the prepositions and conjunctions should begin with small letters. The articles, *the*, *a* and *an* are not capitalized unless they are the initial word in the title.

477. Use a capital to begin every direct quotation. The first word of an indirect quotation should begin with a small letter. A direct quotation is one which uses the exact words of the speaker. For example: *He said*, "*I will come.*" This is a direct quotation, but *He said that he would come*, is an indirect quotation.

478. Use a capital to begin an important statement or to ask a question. For example: *Resolved; That the United States should democratize war. The question is, Shall the people determine the question of war?*

479. Use capitals for the chief items of any enumeration of particulars. For example;

The bill is as follows:

For Composition	$20.00
For Press Work	10.00
Paper	25.00

480. Begin the words indicating titles of offices and honor with a capital. For example, *President Wilson*, *Doctor Smith*, *Professor Locke*. When you use a title of this kind as a general term, that is, not indicating any particular person, do not use a capital. As for example: *The society has had several presidents.* But if you use the title to take the place of the person's name, for example: *The President read the message to Congress*, always use a capital.

481. Use capitals for the titles at the beginning of a letter or in written composition and in direct address. For example: *My dear Father*, *My dear Mother*, *My dear Comrade*, *Dear Aunt Emma*, *Dear Friend*, *Dear Fellow Workers*, etc. Also in conversation.

Are you coming with me, Mother?
What did the Doctor say, Comrade Smith?

When these words are not used in direct address, however, they should not be capitalized. For example, at the close of a letter you would write:

Your sincere friend.
Your loving brother.

Or in conversation:

I asked my mother to go with me.
My brother wrote me concerning the matter.

482. Begin the names of important buildings and localities with a capital. For example:

Public Library, High School, The East Side, The Union Square, Central Market, etc.

These words used in a general sense, however, should not begin with a capital letter. For example:

Our public libraries, our high schools, jails, prisons, post offices, etc.

483. The words state and territory, when they refer to particular divisions of the country, should be capitalized. For example:

The State of New York, The Territory of Alaska, The French Government, etc.

State and *government* are also capitalized when they are used in place of proper names. For example:

The State is based on exploitation.
The Government has issued an edict of war.

We do not use a capital in such expressions as:

Church and state, state affairs; they occupy a large territory, etc.

484. In directing letters or other matter for the mail, capitalize all words except prepositions, conjunctions or articles. These should be capitalized only when they begin a line.

Exercise 1

Draw a line under each word in the following that should be begun with a capital:

john joffre, lake michigan, day, thursday, friday, spring, august, december, germany, country, france, man, jones, smith, doctor, doctor george, professor moore, girl, mary, susan, methodist, mohammedan, church, party, republican party, socialist, company, national electric light company, river, mississippi river, the red river, essex county, state of illinois, iowa, railway, new york, new york central railway, the french revolution, novel, the sea wolf, poem, arrows in the gale, american.

Exercise 2

Notice carefully the following quotations and sentences and capitalize every word that should begin with a capital letter.

1. iron, the twin brother of fire, the first born out of the matrix of the earth, a witness everlasting to the glory of thy labor, am i, o man.
2. therefore i say unto you, banish fear from your hearts.
3. but ye, plebs, populists, people, rebels, mob, proletariat, live and abide forever.
4. and they came here from all parts of the earth, the syrians and the armenians, the thracians and the tartars, the jews, the greeks and the romans, the gauls and the angles and the huns and the hibernians, even from the deserts of the sands to the deserts of ice they came to listen unto his words.
5. marx and engels wrote the communist manifesto.
6. its closing words are; working men of all countries unite.
7. italy was the last of the great powers of europe to become involved in the war.

8. john randolph submitted an amendment to the constitution providing that the judges of the supreme court of the united states shall be removed by the president on the joint address of both houses of congress.
9. eugene v. debs spent six months in woodstock jail for exercising his right of free speech.
10. col. the abbreviation for colorado, is easily confused with cal. the abbreviation for california.
11. the people's college is a college maintained by the working class.
12. william jennings bryan won his first nomination for president of the united states by a very dramatic speech delivered in the national democratic convention.
13. marion craig wentworth, a socialist playwright, has written a play called "war brides."
14. the play closes with these words; a message to the emperor: i refuse to bear my child until you promise there shall be no more war.
15. olive schreiner's "woman and labor" is full of fascinating thought.

Exercise 3

Notice carefully the use of capitals in the following quotations, and determine the reason for the use of every capital:

> As the nobles of England wrung their independence from King John, and as the tradesmen of France broke through the ring of privilege enclosing the Three Estates; so today the millions who serve society in arduous labor on the highways, and aloft on the scaffoldings, and by the sides of the whirring machines, are demanding that they, too, and their children, shall enjoy all of the blessings that justify and make beautiful this life. —*Frank Walsh.*

> "The toad beneath the harrow knows
> Exactly where the tooth-point goes.
> The butterfly beside the road
> Doth preach contentment to that toad."

> "When I came here, it was said that the Colorado Fuel and Iron Company voted every man and woman in their employ without any regard to their being naturalized or not; and even their mules, it used to be remarked, were registered if they were fortunate enough to possess names." *From a letter written by Mr. L. M. Bowers, Chairman of*

The Board of Directors of the Colorado Fuel and Iron Company, to the Secretary of Mr. John D. Rockefeller, Jr., under date of May 13, 1913.

Master, I've done Thy bidding, wrought in Thy many lands.
Not by my sins wilt Thou judge me, but by the work of my hands.
Master, I've done Thy bidding, and the light is low in the west,
And the long, long shift is over ... Master, I've earned it—Rest.
—*Robert Service.*

It's O! to be a slave
Along with the barbarous Turk,
Where woman has never a soul to save,
If this is Christian work!
—*Thos. Hood.*

While there is a lower class, I am in it.
While there is a criminal element, I am of it.
While there is a soul in jail, I am not free.
—*Eugene V. Debs.*

When Adam delved and Eve span,
Who was then the gentleman?

The vilest deeds, like poison weeds,
Bloom well in prison-air;
It is only what is good in man
That wastes and withers there:
Pale Anguish keeps the heavy gate,
And the Warder is Despair.
—*Oscar Wilde.*

ABBREVIATIONS AND CONTRACTIONS

485. There are a number of words which we abbreviate or contract, in our every-day use. A contraction is a shortened form of the word used to save time or space and is made by omitting a letter or letters. The apostrophe is used to indicate the omission in a contracted word. As, for example:

B'ld'g, B'l'v'd, M'f'g.

When the word is contracted in this way and the apostrophe is used, these contractions are not followed by the period but are used just as the completely written word would be used. There is no accepted list of these contractions. We devise them according to our need at the moment.

An abbreviation, however, is an authorized contraction of the word. It is the shortening of a term which is habitually used to save time and space. The apostrophe is not used and the abbreviation should be followed by a period. As for example:

Bldg. Blvd. Mfg.

These abbreviations and contractions are very helpful to us in saving time and space but should not be used too frequently. Too many contractions or abbreviations make writing ridiculous. Take time to write out the majority of words. Only use abbreviations or contractions for certain accepted words. Avoid an excessive use of abbreviations.

COMMONLY USED ABBREVIATIONS

486. We quite often abbreviate the names of the months, especially those which have long names. Short names like *March*, *April*, *May*, *June* and *July*, should never be abbreviated. For the other months we use in correspondence the abbreviations, *Jan.*, *Feb.*, *Aug.*, *Sept.*, *Oct.*, *Nov.*, *Dec.* Days of the week are also sometimes abbreviated as follows: *Sun.*, *Mon.*, *Tues.*, *Wed.*, *Thur.*, *Fri.*, *Sat.* Do not use these abbreviations too often. Spell out the names of the months and of the days of the week except in lists of dates or something that calls for abbreviations to save time or space.

Mr., *Mrs.*, *Messrs.*, *Jr.*, *Sr.*, are never spelled out, but are always written in the abbreviated form. You will often find *Doctor* and *Professor* abbreviated

to *Dr.*, *Prof.* This is permissible but it is always good form to write them out in full.

487. We have abbreviated forms for a number of names; as for example: *Geo.*, *Chas.*, *Thos.*, *Wm.*, etc. But it is always much better to write these names out in full: *George*, *Charles*, *Thomas*, *William*, etc.

Remember that nicknames are not abbreviations and do not require a period after them. *Jim*, *Charley*, *Tom*, and *Bill* are not abbreviations but nicknames.

In correspondence or in any circumstance that demands the saving of time or space, we abbreviate the names of states and territories, as follows:

Alabama, Ala.
Arizona, Ariz.
Arkansas, Ark.
California, Cal.
Colorado, Colo.
Connecticut, Conn.
Delaware, Del.
District of Columbia, D. C.
Florida, Fla.
Georgia, Ga.
Idaho, Ida.
Illinois, Ill.
Indiana, Ind.
Iowa, Ia.
Kansas, Kan.
Kentucky, Ky.
Louisiana, La.
Maine, Me.
Maryland, Md.
Massachusetts, Mass.
Michigan, Mich.
Minnesota, Minn.
Mississippi, Miss.
Missouri, Mo.
Montana, Mont.

Nebraska, Neb.
Nevada, Nev.
New Hampshire, N. H.
New Jersey, N. J.
New Mexico, N. M.
New York, N. Y.
North Carolina, N. C.
North Dakota, N. D.
Ohio, O.
Oklahoma, Okla.
Oregon, Ore.
Pennsylvania, Pa. or Penna.
Rhode Island, R. I.
South Carolina, S. C.
South Dakota, S. D.
Tennessee, Tenn.
Texas, Tex.
Vermont, Vt.
Virginia, Va.
Washington, Wash.
West Virginia, W. Va.
Wisconsin, Wis.
Wyoming, Wyo.

488. Use *a. m.* and *p. m.* after dates in lists of dates or schedules of trains or for any similar purpose, but in the text of a letter or manuscript it is better to write them out in full. As for example, do not say:

I will arrive tomorrow a. m., or, You may call about eight p. m.

Say rather:

I will arrive tomorrow morning. You may call at eight o'clock this evening.

The letters *a. m.* are the abbreviation for ante meridiem, Latin for before noon; and *p. m.* for post meridiem, meaning afternoon.

489. Two consecutive years may be written 1914-15, but use 1915 rather than '15. In the heading of letters it is better to write the date out in full, as, *May 28, 1915*, instead of 5-28-15.

In the back of your dictionary you will find a complete list of accepted abbreviations used in writing and printing. The list that follows contains abbreviations most commonly used, especially in business correspondence:

@ for at
acct. for account
agt. for agent
amt. for amount
ans. for answer
asst. for assistant
atty. for attorney
av. for average
bal. for balance
bbl. for barrel
bdl. for bundle
bro. for brother
bros. for brothers
blk. for black
bls. for bales
bu. or bush. for bushels
Co. for company
chgd. for charged
C. O. D. for "cash on delivery"
cr. creditor
cts. cents
cwt. for hundred weight
cu. for cubic
do. for the same
dr. for debtor
doz. for dozen
ea. for "each"
et al. for "and others"
e. g. for example

etc. for "and so forth"
ft. for foot or feet
frt. freight
f. o. b. "free on board"
gal. gallon
guar. for guaranty
hdkfs. for handkerchiefs
h. p. horse power
in. for inches
ins. for insurance
inst. for this month
i. e. for "that is"
Jr. for junior
lb. for pound
memo. for memorandum
Mon. for Monday
mo. for month
mos. for months
mdse. for merchandise
mfg. for manufacturing
Mss. for manuscript
no. for number
N. B. for take notice
O. K. for "all correct"
oz. for ounce
% for per cent
pp. pages
pr. for pair
pt. for pint
pk. for peck
prox. for next month
qt. for quart
recd. for received
sec. for second
Sec. for secretary
Sr. for senior
Supt. for superintendent

ult. for last month
via by way of
viz. namely
vol. for volume
wt. for weight
yd. for yard
yds. for yards
yr. for year

Exercise 4

Write the proper abbreviations for the following words:

Building
Charles
Boulevard
Tuesday
Arkansas
Mississippi
Foot
Virginia
Georgia
Senior
By way of
Per cent
Charged
Avenue
October
Delaware
Professor
Thursday
Colorado
Kansas
Handkerchiefs
January
Secretary
Superintendent

Received
That is
Free on board
Monday
Oklahoma
July
Thomas
California
Company
Account
Friday
Merchandise
Number
All correct
Cash on delivery
And so forth
Colonel
Maine
August
William
Missouri
Brothers
Amount
Wyoming

SPELLING

LESSON 28

There is no way to learn to spell except by constant application. Watch in your reading the spelling of all words. Whenever you wish to add a certain word to your vocabulary, master immediately the spelling as well as the meaning of that word. Keep your dictionary handy; use it constantly in the study of your lessons. Do not guess at the spelling of the word. You are not likely to forget quickly the spelling of any word which you have taken the trouble to look up.

Read your examinations over carefully before sending them in, watching closely for any error in spelling and in punctuation. When your papers are graded and returned you, make a list of all the words which are misspelled and master then and there the spelling of these words. Do not be guilty of the same error twice. Remember that correct spelling is a mark of intelligence and scholarship and that nothing will so detract from the influence of your written work as incorrect spelling.

While there is always a certain word which more aptly expresses our meaning than any other, we can usually find two or more words which express practically the same meaning.

Words which have nearly the same meaning are called synonyms.

It is always an interesting exercise and will add greatly to your vocabulary to select a certain paragraph and go through it replacing certain words with other words which have practically the same meaning. It is this mastery of synonyms which gives the great writers and orators their power. They do not use the same word over and over again until our ears have grown weary of it. With their wonderful mastery of language they are never at a loss for words in which to re-clothe their meaning.

For the first three days of this week's work in spelling we have words and their synonyms. For the words given in the lessons for the last three days, look up in your dictionary a suitable synonym.

Monday

Abundant
Plenty

Precarious
Uncertain

Behavior
Conduct

Tuesday

Abuse
Invective

Hateful
Odious

Praise
Applause

Wednesday

Sufficient
Enough

Refuge
Asylum

Achieve
Attain

Thursday

Insolent
Revenge
Curb

Repudiate
Censure
Regret

Friday

Prosperity
Subterfuge
Event
Observe
Portion
Destroy

Saturday

Talkative
Indolent
Profit
Volunteer
Cordial
Enormous

There are a number of nouns very similar in form, yet different in meaning, which we very often use incorrectly.

Cross out in these sentences the incorrect word. Look them up in the dictionary and be sure of the exact meaning:

Roger's *essay—assay* won him praise.
The *assay—essay* indicated the quantity of gold in the metal.
The *completion—completeness* of the course entitled me to a Diploma.
The *completion—completeness* of the arrangements fills us with hope of success.
Confidants—confidence often betray us.
The business world is built upon *confidants—confidence*.
The *conscience—consciousness* of a religious person is very sensitive.
The class struggle develops class *conscience—consciousness*.
The strikers listened to unwise *counsel—council*.

The *council—counsel* refused the franchise.
You knew he was a *cultured—cultivated* man, the moment you met him.
It is a highly *cultured—cultivated* plant.
I asked her for the *recipe—receipt* for making cake.
He gave her a *receipt—recipe* for the money.
Emigration—-immigration has reduced the population of Servia.
Emigration—immigration is flooding the United States with cheap labor.
Edison's *discovery—invention* of the storage battery was a momentous event.
The *discovery—invention* of gold in Alaska attracted the attention of the world.
The state placed a *limitation—limit* upon the sale of liquor within certain *limits—limitations*.

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 29

Dear Comrade:

The spirit of self-help is the root of all genuine growth in any man or woman. It is the things which we do for ourselves in any line of work that count the most for us. The things which come to us without any effort on our part do not stay with us very long nor do us much good while we have them.

Sometimes we feel discouraged because we have not had the opportunity to attend school as much as we would like. There is no gainsaying but that this is a tremendous handicap and yet, after all, it is not an insurmountable obstacle. It is much better to have the appetite without the food than to have the food without the appetite. There is always a chance of securing the food if we want it bad enough and will struggle hard enough. So in the matter of an education. Many a man who has never seen the inside of a college is better educated than those who have been through college.

These men have really wanted knowledge, have sought it early and late, and have found knowledge; and because they were in the work-a-day world, in constant contact with their fellow-men, they were able to relate the knowledge which they gained out of books to the world in which they lived and this is true education. This is, also, what many college-bred people lack. A student is half made as soon as he seeks knowledge for its own sake. If you are striving to learn, not to make grades or to pass examinations or to secure a degree, but simply for the sake of knowing things, then indeed you are on the way to become really educated.

Stimulate within yourself a desire for knowledge, observe the things about you, add to your store of information daily; read a good book each day, even if you have time to read only a page or two, and you will be surprised at the result in your life.

Take, for example, our spelling. Why should we continually misspell the words which we use every day and which we see every day on a printed page. If we are wide-awake and have our eyes open, we can soon learn to spell correctly all these common words, at least. Make a list this week of fifty things with which you come in contact in your daily work, then look these words up in your dictionary and see how many of them you have misspelled. There is no reason why we should not be learning constantly and the more we observe, the more acute becomes our power of observation.

Let us determine more than ever to feel that we are part of the great world movement, that we belong in the ranks of those who have caught the vision of what the world might be, and that we belong to that glorious army of those who are fighting for the dream; so we may take courage; so we may find joy in the struggle, bitter as it may be, and so we may do our part in the fight.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

PUNCTUATION

490. Marks of punctuation are very important in our written language. They take the place of the gesture and pause and inflection and intonation of the voice, by which we make our meaning clear in vocal speech. So the marks of punctuation do not become mere mechanical devices. They are marks full of meaning and necessary to express our thought.

Punctuation is a word derived from the Latin word *punctum* which means *a point*. We have other words from the same derivation, as puncture, etc.

Punctuation is the art of pointing off our written language so as to make its meaning clear.

Some very amusing errors have occurred because of the misplacing or the omission of punctuation marks. It is said, that a toast was one time given at a public dinner; "Woman! without her, man would be a savage." The next

day it appeared in print; "Woman, without her man, would be a savage." You can readily see that the punctuation in this instance made a very great difference in the meaning of the sentence.

491. In conversation, the tone of the voice which we use, has a great effect upon our meaning, for example I might say, *The International failed*, in such a tone of voice, that it would express despair and chagrin, and indicate that the International was a thing of the past; or I might say, *The International failed*, with such an inflection, that you would understand that even the suggestion was to be treated with contempt, that the International was still powerful and its triumph inevitable. And in writing, the only way we have of expressing these shades of meaning is by means of punctuation marks.

So these marks of punctuation are not thrown upon a page haphazardly, or put there simply for decoration; they have a meaning and a very great meaning. Those who use short, crisp sentences have less need for punctuation marks than those who use longer and more involved sentences. When we have learned to express ourselves directly and simply, we will naturally use fewer marks of punctuation.

492. You will find that, in writing in connection with business, there is much less need of punctuation than in literary and philosophical writings. Business writing is usually direct and simple in style. Its purpose is to state facts. The literary and philosophical writing, however, expresses more involved ideas and emotions, and in these, the punctuation is exceedingly important.

493. One of the great purposes served by punctuation is to indicate a pause or break in the thought. A very good rule to go by in punctuating is to repeat the sentence aloud, and whenever you pause for breath or because of a break in the thought, it is a pretty safe indication that in that place, you should have a punctuation mark.

494. The following are the chief marks of punctuation:

1. The Comma ,
2. The Semi-colon ;

3.	The Colon	:
4.	The Period	.
5.	The Interrogation Point	?
6.	The Exclamation Point	!
7.	The Dash	—
8.	The Parenthesis	( )
9.	The Bracket	[ ]
10.	The Quotation Marks	" "
11.	The Apostrophe	'
12.	The Hyphen	-

THE COMMA

495. The comma is the mark used to indicate a slight break in the thought.

There are a number of rules given for the use of commas. These rules, like the rules for the use of capitals, you cannot commit to memory; but, after repeated practice in your own writing and paying attention to your reading, you will gradually develop an instinctive sense of the use of the comma. Select some book which you are reading and go through it, noticing especially the use of the commas. See if you can determine the reason which prompted the author to place his commas where he did. Notice, also, what effect the placing or the omission of the comma would have upon the meaning of the sentence.

496. The Comma indicates the slightest degree of separation between the parts of a sentence.

RULE 1.

497. Words, phrases and clauses, forming a series and used in the same construction, should be separated from each other by commas when the conjunctions are omitted.

WORDS WHICH FORM A SERIES

498. The words which form a series, separated by a comma may be either nouns, adjectives, adverbs or verbs. The comma is only used where the conjunction is omitted. Note carefully the following sentences:

Love, laughter and happiness are the right of every child.
He visited every city, town and village.
The working class has been meek, humble, docile and gullible.
All the crushed, tortured, strangled, maimed and murdered ideals of the ages shall become an everlasting reality.
He struggled patiently, faithfully and fearlessly for the cause.
If labor thinks, dares, rebels, fights, it will be victorious.

PHRASES WHICH FORM SERIES

499. Phrases which are used in the same construction and form a series are separated by commas where the conjunction is omitted. For example:

Day after day, year after year, century after century, the class struggle has proceeded.
The struggle in the mines, in the fields, in the factories and in the shops, will go on until labor receives the product of its toil.

CLAUSES USED IN A SERIES

500. Sometimes clauses are used without the co-ordinate conjunction and a comma is used to indicate the omission. For example:

Do not moan, do not submit, do not kneel, do not pray, do not wait.
Speak as you mean, do as you profess, perform what you promise.

RULE 2.

501. Explanatory and introductory expressions, words in direct address, parenthetical words and phrases, are separated from the rest of the sentence by commas.

Note carefully the following examples:

Jaures, the great French Socialist, was the first martyr to peace.
War having been declared, the troops were mobilized.
No, I cannot believe you.
Mr. Chairman, I desire to speak to the convention.
We can, of course, give you the information you desire.

RULE 3.

502. Words, phrases or clauses written in the sentence out of their natural order should be separated from the rest of the sentence by commas.

These words, phrases and clauses are often written at the beginning of the sentences or at the end of the sentences, or in some place out of their natural order, for the sake of emphasis, instead of with the words they modify.

Notice in the following sentences how these words, phrases and clauses are separated from the rest of the sentence by commas. Rewrite these sentences, placing these words, phrases and clauses in their natural order and omit the commas.

Longingly and anxiously, he waited.
With this exception, the figures are correct.
The music, sweet and dreamy, floated upon the air.
The waves came rolling in, white with foam.
To deceive the men, he resorted to shameful tricks.
Before anyone else could speak, he was on his feet.

RULE 4.

503. Co-ordinate clauses, when closely related in meaning are separated by commas. The comma should precede the co-ordinate conjunction. For example:

I have not intended to detain you, but the matter required explanation.

RULE 5.

504. The omission of the verb in a sentence or a clause should be indicated by a comma. Sometimes in writing for effect or to give emphasis we omit the verb in the sentence; at other times we omit the verb when the same verb occurs in a series of brief sentences, and its continued use would mean a tiresome repetition. For example:

> Reading maketh a full man; conference, a ready man; writing, an exact man.

Here the verb is omitted in the last two clauses and the omission is indicated by the use of the comma.

RULE 6.

505. Short, direct quotations should be preceded by a comma. For example:

> Their slogan is, "An injury to one is the concern of all."
> Ferrer's last words were, "Long live the modern school."

RULE 7.

506. Separate the figures in large numbers into groups of three figures each by the use of commas. For example:

> The population of the United States has now reached 100,000,000.
> According to the census of 1900, there are 29,073,233 people engaged in gainful occupations in the United States.

Exercise 1

Supply commas in the following sentences in the proper places:

1. Food clothes and shelter are the fundamental needs of life.
2. We believe in education free from theocracy aristocracy or plutocracy.
3. Man is the master of nature of law of life.
4. We shall struggle rebel arise and claim all being for our own.

5. Sickness and suffering sorrow and despair crime and war are the fruits of poverty.
6. You should seek after knowledge steadily faithfully and perseveringly.
7. The most inspiring powerful and impressive oratory is the voice of the disinherited.
8. Through your united almighty strength order shall become equity law shall become liberty duty shall become love and religion shall become truth.
9. First let us consider the main question.
10. Mr. President I rise to a point of order.
11. We the workers of the world must unite.
12. The class struggle being a fact why should we hesitate to join our class?
13. You have not it seems understood the issue.
14. Of all our needs education is the greatest.
15. Regularly and monotonously the machine whirs to and fro.
16. Before any one can take special training he must have a good knowledge of English.
17. We plead for education universal and free.
18. The first ingredient in conversation is truth the next good sense the third good humor and the fourth wit.
19. The slogan of the People's College is The education of the workers by the workers.
20. According to the last census the enrollment of the schools of the United States is 18521002.
21. There are 4611000 in the first grade and 155000 in the last year of high school.

THE SEMI-COLON

507. The semi-colon indicates a break more complete than that of the comma. The period indicates a complete break in the thought. So the comma indicates a slight break, the semi-colon a greater break in the thought, and the period, the completion of the thought.

RULES FOR THE USE OF THE SEMI-COLON

508. The semi-colon is often used instead of the comma where a longer pause is desired or we wish to indicate a greater break in the thought. For example:

"The wind is chill;
But let it whistle as it will,
We'll keep our Christmas merry still."

509. As a rule we separate by semi-colons those parts of the sentences that are already punctuated by commas. For example:

After considerable delay, he came back to look for his friends; but, though he looked diligently, he could not find them.

510. The semi-colon is used to separate closely connected simple sentences when the conjunction is omitted. The continual repetition of the conjunction would become very tiresome and detract from the forcefulness of our sentences. So instead of continually repeating the conjunction we separate these simple sentences by semi-colons. For example:

Through the industrial revolution, the face of the earth is making over even as to its physical forms; political boundaries are wiped out and moved about as if they were indeed only lines on a paper map; population is hurriedly gathered into cities from the ends of the earth; habits of living are altered with startling abruptness; the search for the truths of nature is infinitely stimulated; and the application of these truths to life is made not only practicable, but commercially necessary.

511. The semi-colon should be used after each item in a series of specific statements. For example:

We quote you the following prices: Grade No. 1, $1.00; Grade No. 2, $2.90; poorer grades not in demand.

RULES FOR THE USE OF THE COLON

512. The colon is not used as much as it formerly was. The comma and the semi-colon and the period are now used in most of the places where older writers used the colon.

One authority in English says that, "in strict logic the colon is to the sentence in which it is used what the mark of equality is in mathematics."

513. The colon is used before a formal list of items. For example:

> Economics has three important divisions: production, distribution, consumption.

514. The colon is used after a salutation at the beginning of a letter. For example: *Dear Sir: Gentlemen: Comrades:*

In such cases the dash is also frequently used with the colon. For example: *My dear Sir:— Gentlemen:— Comrades:—*

515. The colon is more often used instead of the semi-colon after such expressions as, *thus: as follows: the following: for example:* etc.

The colon is also used to separate a series of sentences which are explanatory of the main clause. For example:

> The People's College has two great aims: the first is to bring education within the reach of every worker; the second is to teach from the viewpoint of the working class.
> We were advised to proceed thus: first, to be systematic in our work; second, to concentrate; third, to go slowly and surely; and last of all, to think for ourselves.

RULES FOR THE USE OF THE PERIOD

516. The period is a mark of punctuation that denotes the completion of a sentence.

517. The period is used at the close of all assertive and imperative sentences. For example:

> There is talk of peace but preparation for war.
> Claim your own at any hazard.

518. The period is used after all initials and all abbreviations, as for example: E. V. Debs; T. P. O'Connor; Mr., Dr., Co., Mass., N. Y., C. O. D., F. O. B., U. S. A., etc.

519. The period is used to separate whole numbers and decimal numbers. For example: 3.1416 9.342.

A period is used for the decimal point between dollars and cents; as: $4.50, $2.25, $16.54, $35926.72.

It is also used to separate the various denominations of sterling money, as: £14. 15s. 6d.

520. The period is used after letters used as numerals or after figures used to number paragraphs, notes, remarks, questions or any list of particulars. For example:

The letters which are used to denote sub-heads in the enumeration of rules as *a. b. c.*, etc., also the numerals and letters marking sections or sub-sections in chapters, as *Chapter 8. Paragraph 1. Rule 1. Page 4. Volume 2. Paragraph 3. P. 16.*

521. The period is also used after headings and titles, after dates and signatures to letters and other documents; also at the close of the address at the beginning of a letter, and of the name at the close of the letter; also after the last item in the direction of an envelope or package.

Exercise 2

In the following quotations place the commas, semi-colons, colons and periods in their proper places, and be able to give a reason for what you do:

> The man who stabs his brother to death is a criminal and is hanged the general who under a flag slays a regiment is a hero and is decorated with a cross
>
> The most thrilling oratory the most powerful and impressive eloquence is the voice of the disinherited the oppressed the suffering and the submerged it is the voice of poverty and misery of wretchedness and despair it is the voice of humanity crying to the infinite it is the voice that resounds throughout the earth and reaches heaven it is

the voice that wakens the conscience of the race and proclaims the truths that fill the world with life liberty and love

The number of lives lost in the great wars of the world have been as follows Napoleonic wars 1900000 our Civil War 656000 Franco-German War 290000 Boer War 90898 Russo-Japanese 555900 and in the present world-war untold millions

Walt Whitman who represents individualism at its best writes "I sing the song of myself" To this the Socialist replies "Inasmuch as my redemption is bound up in that of my class I sing the song of my class"

We believe with John Ruskin "whether there be one God or three no God or ten thousand children should be fed and their bodies should be kept clean"

My dear Mr Smith Your letter of the 15th has been received

Through the dreams of all the ages rings the voice of labor beginning as a murmur growing in volume and grandeur as it rolls round the world And this is the burden of its message By the sweat of no other's brow shalt thou eat bread

The sun of the new world is rising it is rising out of the solidarity of the working class Its rays of light are bursting through the dark horizon which ignorance and deceit have so long riveted upon us It is lighting up the faces of a new order of men and women supermen and women men and women not discouraged by defeat god-like men and women who have found the secret springs of life and are already drinking deep and glorious draughts men and women who are standing erect and whose joined hands encircle the world men and women who see the world's wretchedness and the world's poverty and are ready to throw away their lives with a song on their lips that such things shall not be

Exercise 3

Note the punctuation in the following poem and determine for yourself, in accordance with the rules we have studied, why the commas, semi-colons, colons and periods are used as they are:

JOHN BROWN

States are not great
Except as man may
make them;
Men are not great except they
do and dare.

But States, like men,
Have destinies that take them—
That bear them on, not knowing why or where.

The *why* repels
The philosophic searcher—
The *why* and *where* all questionings defy,
Until we find,
Far back in youthful nurture,
Prophetic facts that constitute the *why*.

All merit comes
From braving the unequal;
All glory comes from daring to begin.
Fame loves the State
That, reckless of the sequel,
Fights long and well, whether it lose or win.

And there is one
Whose faith, whose fight, whose failing,
Fame shall placard upon the walls of time.

He dared begin—
Despite the unavailing,
He dared begin, when failure was a crime.

When over Africa
Some future cycle
Shall sweep the lake-gemmed uplands with its surge;
When, as with trumpet
Of Archangel Michael,
Culture shall bid a colored race emerge;

From boulevards
O'erlooking both Nyanzas,
The statured bronze shall glitter in the sun,
With rugged lettering:
"JOHN BROWN
OF KANSAS:
HE DARED
BEGIN;
HE LOST,
BUT, LOSING,
WON."

—*Eugene Ware.*

SPELLING

LESSON 29

Last week we studied words which had the same, or nearly the same, meaning. There is always a slight distinction in the meaning of words, but some of them are so nearly the same that it makes very little difference which word we use. Some writers, however, are very careful and spend a great deal of time in the selection of just the right word to express their meaning.

Robert Louis Stevenson once said a good writer would wait half a day in order to secure the best word to convey a certain idea.

A very amusing story is told of Thomas Carlyle, who was very careful to use words expressing just the shade of meaning which he desired to express. He had a habit of writing in a note book these words as they occurred to him, so he would have them for ready reference and use. One day he had searched all day for a certain word which eluded him. Suddenly in the middle of the night he wakened with the word flashing in his mind. He wanted to write it down immediately lest he should forget it in the morning, but it was cold and he dreaded getting up in the cold to secure his note book so he nudged Jeanie, his wife, and said: "Jeanie, Jeanie, get up! I have thought of a good word, and I want you to write it down." Now it was equally cold for Jeanie, so Jeanie nudged Thomas and said: "Thomas, Thomas, get up yourself. I have thought of a bad one!"

Nevertheless, it is a good idea when these good words occur to you to write them down. Possibly to save trouble, you had better write them for yourself!

But in addition to words which have the same meaning, or almost the same meaning, there are also words which express just the opposite meaning, and it is well for us to be master of these words also.

These words which express opposite meaning are called antonyms. Words and their antonyms are given in this week's spelling lesson in the

words for the first three days' study. For the last three days, words only are given. Look these words up in your dictionary and determine upon the most suitable antonyms.

Monday

Legal
Illegal

Artificial
Natural

Assert
Deny

Tuesday

Civilized
Barbarous

Courage
Cowardice

Active
Passive

Wednesday

Initial
Final

Temporary
Permanent

History
Legend

Thursday

Addition
Cleverness
Assured
Genuine
Acquit
Increase

Friday

Affection
Composure
Enlarge
Anxious
Prompt
Discord

Saturday

Succeed
Describe
Winning
Wasteful
Superficial
Grieve

Write the proper word in the following blanks:

PATIENTS or PATIENCE

The Doctor has many.....
We have no.....with stupidity.

NEGLIGENCE or NEGLECT

The accident was due to the.....of the employer.
He has been guilty of.....of his family for he was injured by the criminal.....of the Railroad Company.

OBSERVANCE or OBSERVATION

The troops were concealed from.....
Trade Unions never fail in the.....of Labor Day.
A man's own.....will guide him in the.....of all good customs.

RELATIVES or RELATIONS

Taft and Roosevelt did not always have pleasant.....with each other.
He has gone to visit his.....
We do not always have pleasant.....with our.....

SECTS or SEX

There are many religious.....
Woman is refused the ballot because of her.....

STATUE or STATUTE

The law was placed upon the.....books.
The world will sometime erect a.....to the man of the people.

Do not fear to be thought a "high-brow" if you use these words in your every day speech. The very people who may laugh are in their hearts admiring you, and are, in all probability, envious. The man who has accused another of being a "high-brow" has by that very act, admitted his own inferiority.

Demand the best for yourself in words, as in everything else.

PLAIN ENGLISH

LESSON 30

Dear Comrade:

With this lesson we are finishing this course in Plain English. We have covered a great deal of ground and have studied the essentials of grammar. We have tried, as far as possible, to avoid the stupid conning of rules or learning by rote. We have attempted at least to make the reason and necessity for every rule apparent before the rule was stated.

We have also tried to weave into the lessons something of the romance of language, for language is a romance; in its growth is written the epic of the race. Our words portray the struggle of man from savage to sage. So, feeble as our efforts in this regard may have been, we trust that you have enjoyed and profited by this course and have caught a new vision of life. Most of us are forced so inexorably into the bitter struggle for existence that we have little time or opportunity to catch much of the beauty of life. That is the curse of a society that dooms its citizens to weary, toil-burdened lives, robbed of the joy and beauty of living.

Yet, if we know how to read we can always have access to books and through them we can escape the sordidness and ugliness of the life in which we are compelled to live and spend at least a little time each day in the company of great souls who speak to us from the printed page. The quotations in these lessons have been taken from these great writers.

Will you not pursue the acquaintanceship and become real friends with these men and women? Above all things they will bring you into the atmosphere of liberty and of freedom. For throughout all the pain of the struggle of the past and of the present, there has been the fight of man for freedom. We have gained the mastery over nature. Wild animals, which were a constant menace to savage man, have been destroyed. We have been freed from fear and superstition by the discovery of the laws of nature. With the invention of the machine, man has increased his ability to provide the

essentials of life,—food, clothing and shelter—a thousandfold. The past has seen revolution after revolution in the struggle for mastery.

We now stand on the threshold of another great revolution when man shall master the machines which he has invented and shall cease serving them and make them serve him. His increased facilities for food-getting and shelter-getting shall be made to serve all mankind. We have a part to play in that great revolution.

Whatever you may have gained from the study of this course; what increased facility of understanding or of expression may have come to you; may it be not only for the service of yourself but also for the service of the revolution that shall bring the worker into his own.

Yours for Education,

THE PEOPLE'S COLLEGE.

THE ETERNAL WHY

522. There is no more important mark of punctuation than the Interrogation Point. Asking questions is the foundation and beginning of all wisdom. Progress is based upon the eternal *Why*. If men had always been satisfied with the knowledge of their age and had not continually asked questions which they set themselves to answer, we would still be living in caves or dwelling in trees.

The natural child, that is, the child whose will has not been broken, is an animated Interrogation Point. He is full of questions. He wants to know *why* this and *why* that. This is a most natural trait and one that should not be destroyed. It may sadly interfere sometimes with the things that we wish to do, to stop and answer the child's questions as to why cats have tails or who made the world and what did he stand on while he was doing it; but it is decidedly important that some one should answer these questions which the child asks, in a manner to satisfy its present craving for knowledge. The fact that this trait has been quenched in so many children by the impatient grown-ups explains their stupidity in later years. Encourage every child to

ask questions. Encourage it also to be persistent until it finds somewhere the answer to its questions.

Cultivate also this trait yourself. Do not accept a thing simply because some one says it is so. Insist upon knowing for yourself. This is the secret of progress, that we should think for ourselves, investigate for ourselves and not fear to face the facts of life or to express our own ideas. The wise man does not accept a thing because it is old nor does he reject it because it is new. He inquires, demands, reasons and satisfies himself as to the merit of the question. So the Interrogation Point in the written language of man has a tremendous meaning. It stands for the open and inquiring mind; for the courage that dares question all things and seek the truth.

THE INTERROGATION POINT

523. An Interrogation Point should be placed after every direct question.

A direct question is one that can be answered. An indirect question is one that cannot be answered. If I say, *Why do you not study?*, I am asking a direct question to which you can give an answer; but if I say, *I wonder why you do not study*, I have asked an indirect question which does not require a direct answer.

Why do you not go? (*Direct*)
He asked why you did not go. (*Indirect*)

524. When an interrogative clause is repeated in the body of another sentence, use the interrogation point after the clause, and begin the clause with a capital letter. For example:

The question, *Shall we be involved in war?*, should be settled by the people.

THE EXCLAMATION POINT

525. The exclamation point should be placed after words, phrases or sentences that express strong emotion. For example:

Oh! When shall peace reign again?
Alas! I am undone!
To the firing line! the battle rages!

526. Ordinarily the exclamation point is placed immediately after the interjection or word used as an interjection, but frequently when the strong emotion continues throughout the expression, the exclamation point is placed at the close of the sentence instead of after the interjection, even though the interjection comes first in the sentence. For example:

On, Comrades, on!
Charge, Chester, charge!

THE DASH

527. The dash is a much abused punctuation mark. A great many writers who are not familiar with the rules of punctuation use a dash whenever they feel the need of some sort of a punctuation mark. Their rule seems to be, "whenever you pause make a dash." Punctuation marks indicate pauses but a dash should not be used upon every occasion. The dash should not be used as a substitute for the comma, semi-colon, colon, etc. In reality, the dash should be used only when these marks cannot be correctly used.

528. The chief use of the dash is to indicate a sudden break in the thought or a sudden change in the construction of the sentence. For example:

In the next place—but I cannot discuss the matter further under the circumstances.

529. The dash is frequently used to set a parenthetical expression off from the rest of the sentence when it has not as close connection with the sentence as would be indicated by commas. As for example:

The contention may be true—although I do not believe it—that this sort of training is necessary.

530. The dash is also used in place of commas to denote a longer or more expressive pause. For example:

The man sank—then rose—then sank again.

531. The dash is often used after an enumeration of several items as a summing up. For example:

Production, distribution, consumption—all are a part of economics.

532. A dash is often used when a word or phrase is repeated for emphasis. For example:

Is there universal education—education for every child beneath the flag? It is not for the masses of the children—not for the children of the masses.

533. If the parenthetical statements within dashes require punctuation marks, this mark should be placed before the second dash. For example:

War for defense—and was there ever a war that was not for defense?—was permitted by the International.

This sight—what a wonderful sight it was!—greeted our eyes with the dawn.

534. The dash is also used to indicate the omission of a word, especially such words as *as*, *namely*, *viz.*, etc. For example:

Society is divided into two classes—the exploited and the exploiting classes.

535. After a quotation, use the dash before the name of the author. For example:

Life only avails, not the having lived.—*Emerson.*

536. The dash is used to mark the omission of letters or figures. For example:

It happened in the city of M—.

It was in the year 18—.

PARENTHESIS

537. In our study of the comma and the dash we have found that parenthetical statements are set off from the rest of the sentence sometimes by a comma and sometimes by a dash. When the connection with the rest of the sentence is close, and yet the words are thrown in in a parenthetical way, commas are used to separate the parenthetical statement from the rest of the sentence.

538. When the connection is not quite so close, the dash is used instead of the comma to indicate the fact that this statement is thrown in by way of explanation or additional statement. But when we use explanatory words or parenthetical statements that have little or no connection with the rest of the sentence, these phrases or clauses are separated from the rest of the sentences by the parenthesis.

539. GENERAL RULE:—Marks of parenthesis are used to set off expressions that have no vital connection with the rest of the sentence. For example:

Ignorance (and why should we hesitate to acknowledge it?) keeps us enslaved.

Education (and this is a point that needs continual emphasis) is the foundation of all progress.

THE PUNCTUATION OF THE PARENTHESIS

540. If the parenthetical statement asks a question or voices an exclamation, it should be followed by the interrogation point or the exclamation point, within the parenthesis. For example:

We are all of us (who can deny it?) partial to our own failings.

The lecturer (and what a marvelous orator he is!) held the audience spellbound for hours.

OTHER USES OF THE PARENTHESIS

541. An Interrogation Point is oftentimes placed within a parenthesis in the body of a sentence to express doubt or uncertainty as to the accuracy of our statement. For example:

In 1858 (?) this great movement was started.
John (?) Smith was the next witness.

542. The parenthesis is used to include numerals or letters in the enumeration of particulars. For example:

Economics deals with (1) production, (2) distribution, (3) consumption.
There are three sub-heads; (a) grammar, (b) rhetoric, (c) composition.

543. Marks of parenthesis are used to inclose an amount or number written in figures when it is also written in words, as:

We will need forty (40) machines in addition to those we now have.
Enclosed find Forty Dollars ($40.00) to apply on account.

THE BRACKET

544. The bracket [ ] indicates that the word or words included in the bracket are not in the original discourse.

545. The bracket is generally used by editors in supplying missing words, dates and the like, and for corrections, additions and explanations. For example:

This rule usually applies though there are some exceptions. [See Note 3, Rule 1, Page 67].

546. All interpretations, notes, corrections and explanations, which introduce words or phrases not used by the author himself, should be enclosed in brackets.

547. Brackets are also used for a parenthesis within a parenthesis. If we wish to introduce a parenthetical statement within a parenthetical statement

this should be enclosed in a bracket. For example:

> He admits that this fact (the same fact which the previous witness [Mr. James E. Smith] had denied) was only partially true.

QUOTATION MARKS

548. Quotation marks are used to show that the words enclosed by them are the exact words of the writer or speaker.

549. A direct quotation is always enclosed in quotation marks. For example:

> He remarked, "I believe it to be true."

But an indirect quotation is not enclosed in quotation marks. For example:

> He remarked that he believed it was true.

550. When the name of an author is given at the close of a quotation it is not necessary to use the quotation marks. For example:

> All courage comes from braving the unequal.—*Eugene F. Ware.*

When the name of the author precedes the quotation, the marks are used, as in the following:

> It was Eugene F. Ware who said, "Men are not great except they do and dare."

551. When we are referring to titles of books, magazines or newspapers, or words and phrases used in illustration, we enclose them in quotation marks, unless they are written in italics. For example:

> "Whitman's Leaves of Grass" or *Whitman's Leaves of Grass*. "The New York Call" or *The New York Call*. The word "book" is a noun, or, The word *book* is a noun.

THE QUOTATION WITHIN A QUOTATION

552. When a quotation is contained within another, the included quotation should be enclosed by single quotation marks and the entire quotation enclosed by the usual marks. For example:

He began by saying, "The last words of Ferrer, 'Long live the modern school' might serve as the text for this lecture."
The speaker replied, "It was Karl Marx who said, 'Government always belongs to those who control the wealth of the country.'"

You will note in this sentence that the quotation within the quotation occurs at the end of the sentence so there are three apostrophes used after it, the single apostrophe to indicate the included quotation and the double apostrophe which follows the entire quotation.

PUNCTUATION WITH QUOTATION MARKS

553. Marks of punctuation are (except the interrogation point and the exclamation point which are explained later) placed inside the quotation marks. For example:

A wise man said, "Know thyself."

Notice that the period is placed after the word *thyself* and is followed by the quotation marks.

"We can easily rout the enemy," declared the speaker.

Notice that the comma is placed after *enemy*, and before the quotation marks.

554. The Interrogation Point and the Exclamation Point are placed within the quotation marks if they refer *only* to the words quoted, but if they belong to the entire sentence they should be placed outside the quotation marks. For example:

He said, "Will you come now?"
Did he say, "Will you come now"?
He said, "What a beautiful night!"

How wonderfully inspiring is Walt Whitman's poem, "The Song of the Open Road"!

555. Sometimes parenthetical or explanatory words are inserted within a quotation. These words should be set off by commas, and both parts of the quotation enclosed in quotation marks. For example:

"I am aware," he said, "that you do not agree with me."
"But why," the speaker was asked, "should you make such a statement?"
"I do not believe," he replied, "that you have understood me."

THE APOSTROPHE

556. The apostrophe is used to indicate the omission of letters or syllables, as: *He doesn't*, instead of *does not*; *We're*, instead of *we are*; *I'm*, instead of *I am*; *it's*, instead of *it is*; *ne'er*, instead of *never*; *they'll*, instead of *they will*, etc.

557. The apostrophe is also used to denote possession. In the single form of the nouns it precedes the *s*. In the plural form of nouns ending in *s* it follows the *s*. For example:

Boy's, man's, girl's, king's, friend's, etc.
Boys', men's, girls', kings', friends', etc.

Note that the apostrophe is not used with the possessive pronouns *ours*, *yours*, *its*, *theirs*, *hers*.

558. The apostrophe is used to indicate the plural of letters, figures or signs. For example:

Dot your *i's* and cross your *t's*.
He seems unable to learn the table of 8's and 9's.
Do not make your *n's* and *u's* so much alike.

559. The apostrophe is used to mark the omission of the century in dates, as: '87 instead of 1887, '15 instead of 1915.

THE HYPHEN

560. The hyphen is used between the parts of a compound word or at the end of a line to indicate that a word is divided. We have so many compound words in our language which we have used so often that we have almost forgotten that they were compound words so it is not always easy to decide whether the hyphen belongs in a word or not. As, for example; we find such words as *schoolhouse*, *bookkeeper*, *railway* and many others which are, in reality, compound words and in the beginning were written with the hyphen. We have used them so frequently and their use as compound words has become so commonplace, that we no longer use the hyphen in writing them. Yet frequently you will find them written with the hyphen by some careful writer.

561. As a general rule the parts of all words which are made by uniting two or more words into one should be joined by hyphens, as:

Men-of-war, knee-deep, half-hearted, full-grown, mother-in-law, etc.

562. The numerals expressing a compound number should be united by a hyphen, as; *forty-two*, *twenty-seven*, *thirty-nine*, etc.

563. When the word *self* is used with an adverb, a noun or an adjective, it is always connected by the hyphen, as; *self-confidence*, *self-confident*, *self-confidently*, *self-command*, *self-assertive*, *self-asserting*, etc.

564. When the word *fold* is added to a number of more than one syllable, the hyphen is always used, as; *thirty-fold*, *forty-fold*, *fifty-fold*, etc. If the numeral has but one syllable, do not use the hyphen, as; *twofold*, *threefold*, *fourfold*, etc.

565. When fractions are written in words instead of figures always use the hyphen, as; *one-half*, *one-fourth*, *three-sevenths*, *nine-twelfths*, etc.

566. The words *half* and *quarter*, when used with any word, should be connected by a hyphen, as; *half-dollar*, *quarter-pound*, *half-skilled*, *half-barbaric*, *half-civilized*, *half-dead*, *half-spent*, etc.

567. Sometimes we coin a phrase for temporary use in which the words are connected by the hyphen. For example:

It was a never-to-be-forgotten day.
He wore a sort of I-told-you-so air.
They were fresh-from-the-pen copies.

ADDITIONAL MARKS OF PUNCTUATION

There are a few other marks of punctuation which we do not often use in writing but which we find on the printed page. It is well for us to know the meaning of these marks.

568. The caret (^) is used to mark the omission of a letter or word or a number of words. The omitted part is generally written above, and the caret shows where it should be inserted. For example:

s
I cannot give you this permis^ion.
received
I have just ^a letter from him.
and all letters
Please write your matriculation number on all examination papers
^sent in to the College.

The above examples illustrate the use of the caret with the omission of a letter, a word or phrase.

569. If a letter or manuscript is not too long, it should always be rewritten and the omissions properly inserted. Occasionally, however, we are in a hurry and our time is too limited to rewrite an entire letter because of the omission of a single letter or word so we can insert it by the use of the caret. If, however, there are many mistakes, the letter or paper should be rewritten, for the too frequent use of the caret indicates carelessness in writing and does not produce a favorable impression upon the recipient of your letter or manuscript.

MARKS OF ELLIPSIS

570. Sometimes a long dash (————) or succession of asterisks (* * * * * *) or of points (. . . . . .) is used to indicate the omission of a portion of a sentence or a discourse. In printed matter usually the asterisks are used to indicate an omission. In typewritten matter usually a succession of points is used to indicate an omission. In writing, these are difficult to make and the omission of the portion of material is usually indicated by a succession of short dashes (— — — —).

MARKS OF REFERENCE

571. On the printed page you will often find the asterisk (*), or the dagger, (†), the section (§), or parallel lines (||), used to call your attention to some note or remark written at the close of the paragraph or on the margin, at the bottom of the page or the end of the chapter. It is advisable to hunt these up as soon as you come to the mark which indicates their presence, for they usually contain some matter which explains or adds to the meaning of the sentence which you have just finished reading.

Exercise 1

In the following exercise, note the various marks of punctuation and determine why each one is used:

THE MARSEILLAISE

Ye sons of toil, awake to glory!
Hark, hark, what myriads bid you rise;
Your children, wives and grandsires hoary—

Behold their tears and hear
their cries!
Shall hateful tyrants, mischief
breeding,
With hireling hosts, a
ruffian band,—
Affright and desolate the
land,
While peace and liberty lie
bleeding?

CHORUS

To arms! to arms! ye
brave!
Th' avenging sword
unsheathe!
March on, march on, all
hearts resolved
On Victory or Death.

With luxury and pride
surrounded,
The vile, insatiate despots
dare,
Their thirst for gold and
power unbounded,
To mete and vend the light
and air;
Like beasts of burden would
they load us,
Like gods would bid their
slaves adore,
But Man is Man, and who is
more?
Then shall they longer lash
and goad us?

(CHORUS)

O Liberty! can man resign thee,
Once having felt thy generous flame?
Can dungeons' bolts and bars confine thee,
Or whip thy noble spirit tame?
Too long the world has wept bewailing,
That Falsehood's dagger tyrants wield;
But Freedom is our sword and shield,
And all their arts are unavailing! (CHORUS)
—*Rouget de Lisle.*

THUS SPAKE ZARATHUSTRA

I teach ye the Over-man. The man is something who shall be overcome. What have ye done to overcome him?

All being before this made something beyond itself: and you will be the ebb of this great flood, and rather go back to the beast than overcome the man?

What is the ape to the man? A mockery or a painful shame. And even so shall man be to the Over-man: a mockery or a painful shame.

Man is a cord, tied between Beast and Over-man—a cord above an abyss.

A perilous arriving, a perilous traveling, a perilous looking backward, a perilous trembling and standing still.

What is great in man is that he is a bridge, and no goal; what can be loved in man is that he is a going-over and a going-under.

I love them that know how to live, be it even as those going under, for such are those going across.

I love them that are great in scorn, because these are they that are great in reverence, and arrows of longing toward the other shore! —*Nietzsche.*

SPELLING

LESSON 30

There are a great many words in English which are frequently mispronounced; the accent is placed upon the wrong syllable; for example, *thea'ter* instead of *the'ater*; the wrong sound is given to the vowel, for example, *hearth* is pronounced *hurth*. Sometimes, too, an extra letter is added in the pronunciation; for example, *once* is often pronounced as though it were spelled *wunst*.

The following is a list of common words that are frequently mispronounced, and there are many others which you may add to this list as they occur to you. Look up the correct pronunciation in the dictionary and pronounce them many times aloud.

In the second column in this list is given the incorrect pronunciation, which we often hear.

Acoustics	a-cow-stics
Aeroplane	air-e-o-plane
Apron	a-pron
Athlete	ath-a-lete
Autopsy	au-top'-sy
Awkward	awk-ard
Column	col-yum
Coupon	coo-pon
Deficit	de-fic'it
Diphtheria	dip-ther-y
Economic	ee'co-nom-ic
Errand	ur-rant
Faucet	fos-set

Figure	fig-ger
Film	fill-um
Finance	fi'nance
Guardian	guar-deen'
Height	heighth
Hostile	hos-tile'
Hundred	hund'erd
Idea	i-dee'
Inaugurate	in-aug-er-ate
Inquiry	in'qui-ry
Inventory	in-ven'-to-ry
Length	lenth
Magazine	mag'-a'zinn
Mischievous	mis-chie'-vi-ous
Municipal	mu-ni-cip'-al
Opponent	op'-ponent
Overalls	over-hauls
Rheumatism	rheumatiz
Stomach	stum-ick
Twice	twict
Vaudeville	vaw'de-ville

There are a number of words in English which sound very much alike and which we are apt to confuse. For example, I heard a man recently say in a speech that the party to which he belonged had taken slow poison and now needed an anecdote. It is presumed that he meant that it needed an antidote. Some one else remarked that a certain individual had not been expelled but simply expended. He undoubtedly meant that the individual had been suspended.

This confusion in the use of words detracts from the influence which our statements would otherwise have. There are a number of words which are so nearly alike that it is very easy to be confused in the use of them. In our spelling lesson for this week we have a number of the most common of these easily confounded words. Add to the list as many others as you can.

Monday

Lightening, *to make light*
Lightning, *an electric flash*
Prophesy, *to foretell*
Prophecy, *a prediction*
Accept, *to take*
Except, *to leave out*

Tuesday

Advice, *counsel*
Advise, *to give counsel*
Attendants, *servants*
Attendance, *those present*
Stationary, *fixed*
Stationery, *pens*, *paper*, *etc.*

Wednesday

Formerly, *in the past*
Formally, *in a formal way*
Addition, *process of adding*
Edition, *publication*
Celery, *a vegetable*
Salary, *wages*

Thursday

Series, *a succession*
Serious, *solemn*
Precedent, *an example*

President, *chief or head*
Partition, *a division*
Petition, *a request*

Friday

Ingenious, *skillful*
Ingenuous, *honest*
Jester, *one who jests*
Gesture, *action*
Lose, *to suffer loss*
Loose, *to untie*

Saturday

Presence, *nearness*
Presents, *gifts*
Veracity, *truthfulness*
Voracity, *greediness*
Disease, *illness*
Decease, *death*

THE END AND THE BEGINNING

As we look back over the study of these thirty lessons we find that we have covered quite a little ground. We have covered the entire field of English grammar including punctuation. But our study of English must not conclude with the study of this course. This is simply the foundation which we have laid for future work. You know when students graduate from high school or college the graduation is called the Commencement. That is a peculiarly fitting term, for the gaining of knowledge ought truly to be the commencement of life for us.

Some one has said that the pursuit of knowledge might be compared to a man's marriage to a charming, wealthy woman. He pursued and married her because of her wealth but after marriage found her so charming that he grew to love her for herself. So we ofttimes pursue wisdom for practical reasons because we expect it to serve us in the matter of making a living;

because we expect it to make us more efficient workers; to increase our efficiency to such an extent that we may command a higher salary, enter a better profession and be more certain of a job.

All this is well; but we often find that after we have pursued wisdom for these reasons, practical as they are, we have fallen in love with her for her own sake. We begin to take pleasure in her society; we begin to want to know things for the sake of knowing them, for the pleasure that it brings us, quite divorced from any idea of monetary gain.

So while we have urged upon you the study of English because of the great practical benefit that it will be to you, we trust that you have also grown to love the study for its own sake.

Make this but the beginning of your work in the study of English.

INDEX

Section No.

Abbreviations, 486-489
Absolute Construction, 399
Adjectives
  Defined, 36
  Classification of, 242-245
  Qualifying, 246
  Limiting, 246
  Descriptive, 248
  Numeral, 249-250
  Demonstrative, 251
  How to discover, 247
  Interrogative, 255
  Indefinite, 256-257
  Used as pronouns, 258-259
  Used as nouns, 261
  Comparison of, 264-271
  Participles used as, 272-274
  Participle phrases used as, 275
Adverbs
  Defined, 41, 282
  Use of, 279-281
  How to tell, 283
  Classes of, 284
  Interrogative, 285
  Of mode, 286, 397
  Phrase Adverbs, 287
  To Distinguish from Adj, 288-289
  Derivation of, 290
  Nouns used as, 291
  Comparison of, 292-294

Position of, 295
With Infinitive, 296
Common errors in use of, 297-298
Articles
A and An, use of, 252-253
The, use of, 254

Capital Letters
Need of, 464
Uses of, 22, 60, 465
Rules for, 466-484
Clauses
Defined, 406
Noun, 361-366, 371, 445
Adjective, 367-372, 446
With Conjunctions, 376
Introduced by as, 378
Adverb, 447
Dependent, kinds of, 444-447
Conjunctions
Defined, 52, 331
Uses of, 328
Classes of, 329-330
Co-ordinate, 332-334
Uses of, 336-345
Correlatives, 346
Subordinate, defined, 349
Use of, 347
Classes of, 350-359
Phrase Conjunctions, 360
Connective Words
Classes of, 379
Uses of, 380-385
Contractions, 485

Dictionary, Use of, 4

Exclamatory Words, 390-391
Explanatory Words, 398

Good English, defined, 2
Grammar, English, defined, 10

Independent Expressions, 393
Infinitives
  Use of, 151-167
  To, omitted, 153-155
  Forms of, 156
  Passive, 156-157
Interjections
  Defined, 57, 388
  Classes of, 389
Introductory Words, 394-396

Language
  Defined, 8
  Natural, 5
  Spoken, 6
  Written, 7

Nouns
  Defined, 26
  Classification of, 59
  Proper, defined, 60
  Common, defined, 60
  Collective, defined, 61
  Abstract, 62-66
  Concrete, 63
  Number, defined, 68
  Number, Singular, 68
  Number, Plural, 68

Formation of Plural, 69-84
Formation of Possessive, 89-90, 92
Compound, 91
Gender, defined, 85
Formation of Feminine, 86
Neuter, 87
Common, 88

Object
Direct, 100, 408-410, 427-430
Indirect, 408-410

Participle
Defined, 116
Active form, 114
Present form, 114, 148
Passive form, 115, 148
Past form, 115
Past irregular forms, 124
Used as nouns, 148
Used as adjective, 272-274
Phrase, 149-150
Phrase used as adjective, 275
Parts of Speech, 24
Phrases
Verb, 29, 413
Adverbs, 287
Prepositional, 300-305, 317-321
Prepositions, 308
Conjunctions, 360
Predicate
Defined, 17
Complete, 406, 425
Simple, 406
Simple Enlarged, 463
Complement, 411-412

Modifiers of, 461
Prepositions
Defined, 47, 305
Use of, 309-312
Object of, 304, 313
List of, 306
How to Distinguish from Adverbs, 307
Phrase prepositions, 308
Place of, 314-316
Common errors in use of, 322
With verbs, 327
Choice of, 323-326
Prepositional Phrases, 300-305
Use of, 317-321
Pronouns
Defined, 43, 202
Antecedent of, 203
Personal, 204
Compound personal, 205-208
Number forms of, 209
Object forms of, 214-215
Possessive forms of, 211-213
Gender forms of, 216
With verb "be", 217-218
Agreement of, 219-225
Personification, 226
Interrogative, 228-231
Relative, 232-236
What, 234, 236-240
Who, 234, 235, 240
Which, 234-236, 240
That, 234-236
Omitted, 239
Punctuation
Need of, 490-493
Marks of, 494
The Comma, 495-496

Rules for use of, 497-506
The Semi-colon, 407-511
The Colon, 512-515
The Period, 22, 516-521
The Interrogation Point, 22, 523-524
The Exclamation Point, 22, 525-526
The Dash, 527-536
The Parenthesis, 537-543
The Bracket, 544-547
The Quotation Marks, 548-555
The Apostrophe, 556-559
The Hyphen, 560-567
The Caret, 568
Marks of Ellipsis, 570
Marks of Reference, 571

Responsives, 392

Sentence
Defined, 15
Essentials of, 18
Use of, 19
Assertive, 20
Interrogative, 20
Imperative, 20
Exclamatory, 21
Elements, order of, 436-438
Analysis of, 456-457
Simple, defined, 404-406
Modifiers of, 434-435
Essentials of, 459
Analysis of, 402-405
Complex, 406, 443, 451
Analysis of, 448
Compound, defined, 406, 452
Kinds of, 453-455

Building of, 400
Classification of, 401
Summary of, 458
Subject of, 416-420
Subject
Defined, 16
Complete, 406
Simple, 406
Simple, enlarged, 462
Place of, 421-424
Thought, Complete, 12-14

Verb
Defined, 29
Complete, 95, 103, 131, 158
Incomplete, 95, 103, 131, 426
Classified, 99, 103
Complement of, 95, 102
Transitive, defined, 100, 103
Object of, 100, 141
Copulative, 102-103, 431-433
Time forms
Present, 104, 108, 111
Past, 104, 109, 111
Future, 118-120
Pres. Perf., 121-123, 145
Past Perf., 126
Future Perf., 128
Regular, 110
Irregular, 110
Progressive Form, 133
Present, 134, 146
Past, 135, 146
Future, 136, 146
Pres. Perf., 138, 146
Past Perf., 139, 146

Fut. Perf., 140, 146
Active, 142
Passive, 141-146
Helping, 168-184
Be, 186
Lay, lie, set, sit, raise, rise, 191-193
S-form, 106, 194-196
Phrase, 29, 413-414

Words
Defined, 8
Mastery of, 10
Use of, 23

TRANSCRIBER'S NOTE:

NOTE: Character encoding is UTF-8.

1. Punctuation errors such as incorrect or missing end-of-sentence punctuation, period for comma in mid-sentence, and missing end quotation marks have been corrected without comment. Inconsistency in the author's spelling of certain words, such as today/to-day have been retained.

2. The list broken across pp. 44-45 (section 80.) and the list of abbreviations broken across pp. 295-296 (section 489.) were rearranged to preserve alphabetical order when pages were joined.

3. The numbering of Exercise 4 on p. 110 has been corrected.

4. Commas were added to separate the abbreviations on p. 305.

5. Text and font corrections have been marked with a dotted gray underline. Holding the mouse cursor over the underlined word will display the original text or a note about font change.

*** END OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK PLAIN ENGLISH ***

Updated editions will replace the previous one—the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from print editions not protected by U.S. copyright law means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG™ concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for an eBook, except by following the terms of the trademark license, including paying royalties for use of the Project Gutenberg trademark. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the trademark license is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. Project Gutenberg eBooks may be modified and printed and given away—you may do practically ANYTHING in the United States with eBooks not protected by U.S. copyright law. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial redistribution.

START: FULL LICENSE

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG™ LICENSE

PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase “Project Gutenberg”), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg License available with this file or online at www.gutenberg.org/license.

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. “Project Gutenberg” is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation (“the Foundation” or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the

United States. If an individual work is unprotected by copyright law in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project Gutenberg License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country other than the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg work (any work on which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” appears, or with which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

> This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg™ License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United

States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg electronic work is derived from texts not protected by U.S. copyright law (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase “Project Gutenberg” associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg work in a format other than “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg website

(www.gutenberg.org), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original "Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg electronic works provided that:

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, "Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation."

- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg™ License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg™ works.

- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in

the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.

- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project Gutenberg™ works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the manager of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread works not protected by U.S. copyright law in creating the Project Gutenberg™ collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain "Defects," such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the "Right of Replacement or Refund" described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, and any other party distributing a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH 1.F.3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE

LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you 'AS-IS', WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, harmless from all liability,

costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg

Project Gutenberg is synonymous with the free distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg's goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation information page at www.gutenberg.org.

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non-profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's business office is located at 41 Watchung Plaza #516, Montclair NJ 07042, USA, +1 (862) 621-9288. Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's website and official page at www.gutenberg.org/contact

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg™ depends upon and cannot survive without widespread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine-readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations ($1 to $5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit www.gutenberg.org/donate.

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other

ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: www.gutenberg.org/donate.

Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg electronic works

Professor Michael S. Hart was the originator of the Project Gutenberg concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For forty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as not protected by copyright in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our website which has the main PG search facility: www.gutenberg.org.

This website includes information about Project Gutenberg, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.